PROJECT MANUAL

HISTORIC YATES MILL COUNTY PARK

4620 Lake Wheeler Road
Raleigh, NC 27603

ADVERTISEMENT, PROPOSAL, CONTRACT DOCUMENTS & SPECIFICATIONS

Prepared For:

Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

336 Fayetteville Street

Raleigh, NC 27601

Prepared By:

Kimley-Horn & Associates

1001 Winstead Drive, Suite 500

Cary, NC 27513

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 0 – CONTRACTING DOCUMENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS BD-2

CERTIFICATIONS AND SEALS BD-7

NOTICE TO BIDDERS BD-12

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS BD-13

ELECTRONIC CONTRACT LETTER BD-20

BID PROPOSAL FORM BD-21

BID BOND BD-27

CONSTRUCTION AGREEMENT BD-28

ATTACHMENT A BD-29

GENERAL CONDITIONS BD-30

SUPPLEMENTAL GENERAL CONDITIONS BD-78

APPENDIX A: DISPUTE RESOLUTION PROCEDURES BD-87

MEDIATOR LIST BD-93

APPENDIX B: CONTRACTOR'S SALES TAX REPORT BD-95

GEOTECHINCAL REPORT BD-96

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS ..... TS

DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000 SUMMARY

012100 ALLOWANCES

012200 UNIT PRICES

012300 ALTERNATES

012500 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

012600 CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

012900 PAYMENT PROCEDURES

013100 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

013200 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

013233 PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

013300 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

014000 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

015000 TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

015639 TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

016000 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

017300 EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS

017419 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

017700 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

017800 CLOSEOUT CHECKLIST

017823 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA

017839 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

017900 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

DIVISION 02 – EXISITNG CONDITIONS

024119 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION – SITE WORK

024119 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION – STRUCTURAL WORK

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

030513 CONCRETE WASHOUT STRUCTURE

031000 CONRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES

032000 CONCRETE REINFORCING

033000 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE – SITE WORK

033000 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE – STURUCTURAL WORK

DIVISION 05 – METALS

051200 STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

051213 ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

055000 METAL FABRICATIONS

DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

061000 ROUGH CARPENTRY

061063 EXTERIOR ROUGH CARPENTRY

061800 GLUED-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION

062013 EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

062023 INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

064101 ARCHITECURAL WOOD CASEWORK (NAAWS)

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

072119 FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

072500 WEATHER BARRIERS

072600 VAPOR RETARDERS

072613 GUTTER AND DOWNSPOUTS

074113.16 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

074646 FIBER CEMENT SIDING

076200 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

077253 SNOW GUARDS

DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS

081113 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

081119 STAINLESS-STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

081416 FLUSH WOOD DOORS

083323 OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

084113 ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

087100 DOOR HARDWARE

088000 GLAZING

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

092900 GYPSUM BOARD

095123 ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

096513 RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

096813 TILE CARPETING

099114 EXTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

099124 INTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

099301 STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINIHSING (MPI STANDARDS)

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

101423.16 ROOM-INDENTIFICATION PANEL SINGAGE

104413 FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

123661 SIMULATED STONE COUNTERTOPS

129300 SITE FURNISHINGS

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

220500 BASIC PLUMBING MATERIALS AND METHODS

220523 PLUMBING VALVES

220529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPE

220553 IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING

220700 PLUMBING PIPE INSULATION

221113 WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

221116 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

221119 PLUMBING SPECIALITIES

223300 ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

224000 PLUMBING FIXTURES

DIVISION 23 – HVAC

230500 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

233113 METAL DUCTS

233300 DUCT ACCESSORIES

233423 HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

233713 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

237620 ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

260100 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

260519 LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS

260526 GROUNDING AND BONDING

260529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

260533 RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

260553 IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

262200 DRY-TYPE TRANSFORMERS (600 V AND LESS)

262416 PANELBOARDS

262726 WIRING DEVICES

262816 ENCLOSED SWITCHES

265100 INTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRICAL

283111 DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

311000 SITE CLEARING

312000 EARTHWORK

312333 TRENCHING FOR UTILITIES

312500 SEDIMENT AND EROSION CONTROL

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

321216 ASPHALT PAVEMENT

321723 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

323113 POLYOELFIN COATED FENCES AND GATES

329200 TURF AND GRASSES

329300 EXTERIOR PLANTS

DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES

334100 SECONDARY STORM DRAINAGE

334100 STORM DRAINAGE

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS..... PSP

CERTIFICATION AND SEALS

Historic Yates Mill County Park Renovation
Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

Project Number: RFB #26-092

October 1, 2026

OWNER:

Wake County Facilities Design and Construction
336 Fayetteville Street
Raleigh, NC 27601

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT:

Kimley-Horn and Associates, Inc.
NC License #: F-0102
1001 Winstead Drive
Suite 500
Cary, NC 27513
Phone: (984) 275-4874
Attn: Melissa Brand, PLA, ASLA
Email: Melissa.Brand@Kimley-Horn.com
Phone: (919) 653-5841

Division 01 – Sections:	**011000, 012100, 012200, 012300, 012500, 012600, 012900, 013100, 013200, 013233, 013300, 014000, 015000, 015639, 016000, 017300, 017419, 017700, 017823, 017839, 017900**
Division 02 – Sections:	**024119**
Division 12 – Sections:	**129300**
Division 32 – Sections:	**321723, 323113, 329200, 329300**

Kimley»Horn
Expect More. Experience Better.

CERTIFICATION AND SEALS

Historic Yates Mill County Park Renovation
Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

Project Number: RFB #26-092

October 1, 2026

OWNER:

Wake County Facilities Design and Construction
336 Fayetteville Street
Raleigh, NC 27601

CIVIL ENGINEER:

Kimley-Horn and Associates, Inc.
NC License #: F-0102
1001 Winstead Drive
Suite 500
Cary, NC 27513
Phone: (984) 275-4874
Attn: Andie Altemeier, P.E.
Email: Andie.Altemeier@Kimley-Horn.com
Phone: (984) 389-1493

Division 03 – Sections: **030513, 033000**
Division 22 – Sections: **221113**
Division 31 – Sections: **311000, 312000, 312333, 312500**
Division 32 – Sections: **321216**
Division 33 – Sections: **334100**

CERTIFICATION AND SEALS

Historic Yates Mill County Park Renovation
Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

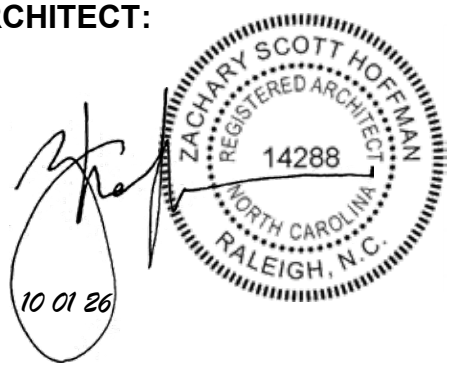
Project Number: RFB #26-092

October 1, 2026

OWNER:

Wake County Facilities Design and Construction
336 Fayetteville Street
Raleigh, NC 27601

ARCHITECT:



in situ Studio
NC License #:
704 N. Person Street
Raleigh, NC 27604
Attn: Zach Hoffman
Email: Zach@InsituStudio.us
Phone: (704) 301-4750

Division 02 – Sections: **024119**
Division 05 – Sections: **051213, 055000**
Division 06 – Sections: **061800, 062013, 062023, 064101**
Division 07 – Sections: **072119, 072500, 072600, 072613, 074113.16, 074646, 076200, 077253,**
Division 08 – Sections: **081113, 081119, 081416, 083323, 084113, 087100, 088000**
Division 09 – Sections: **092900, 095123, 096513, 096813, 099114, 099124, 099301**
Division 10 – Sections: **101423.16, 104413**
Division 12 – Sections: **123661**

CERTIFICATION AND SEALS

Historic Yates Mill County Park Renovation
Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

Project Number: RFB #26-092

October 1, 2026

OWNER:

Wake County Facilities Design and Construction
336 Fayetteville Street
Raleigh, NC 27601

MEP DESIGNER:

HDM Associates, Inc.
NC License #: 18043
106 Tarheel Court
Elizabeth City, NC 27909
Attn: Richard T Thorne Jr.
Email: HDMA@Mindspring.com
Phone: (252) 698-3003

Division 22 – Sections:	**220500, 220523, 220529, 220553, 220700, 221116, 221119, 223300, 224000**
Division 23 – Sections:	**230500, 233113, 233300, 233423, 233713**
Division 26 – Sections:	**260100, 260519, 260526, 260529, 260533, 260553, 262200, 262416, 262726, 262816, 265100**
Division 28 – Sections:	**283111**

CERTIFICATION AND SEALS

Historic Yates Mill County Park Renovation
Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

Project Number: RFB #26-092

October 1, 2026

OWNER:

Wake County Facilities Design and Construction
336 Fayetteville Street
Raleigh, NC 27601

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:

Lysaght and Associates, P.A. Structural Engineers
NC License #: 046123
120 St. Mary's Street
Raleigh, NC 27605
Attn: Mark R. Blankinship, PE
Email: markb@lysaghtassociates.com
Phone: (919) 833-0495

Division 03 – Sections: 03100, 03200, 033000
Division 05 – Sections: 051200,
Division 06 – Sections: 061000, 061063

NOTICE TO BIDDERS
Historic Yates Mill County Park Renovation
RFB #26-092

Sealed proposals will be received by Wake County Procurement Services, in Suite 2900, Wake County Justice Center, 301 McDowell Street, Raleigh, NC 27601, up to 3:00 p.m., Thursday, November 5, 2026, and immediately thereafter publicly opened and read for providing labor, material and equipment entering into the construction of Historic Yates Mill County Park Renovation, located in Raleigh, NC.

Complete contract documents will be open for inspection starting October 7, 2026 in the offices of the Landscape Architect, Kimley-Horn and Associates at 1001 Winstead Drive, Suite 500, Cary, NC 27513. An electronic copy of the contract documents (PDF) may be requested free of charge from the Landscape Architect by sending an email request to both Melissa Brand at melissa.brand@kimley-horn.com and Seth Brown at seth.brown@kimley-horn.com. An electronic copy of the contract documents (PDF) is also available from Dodge Construction Network by visiting https://www.construction.com/projects/ and North Carolina Institute of Minority Economic Development by visiting https://theinstitutenc.org. Printed copies maybe purchased from Accent Imaging by contacting Accent Imaging at production@accentimaging.com or by calling 919-782-3332 or by visiting https://www.planscope.com/. Contractors are responsible for distributing documents to all subcontractors.

A non-mandatory Pre-Bid Meeting will be held from 10:30 am to 11:30 am on October 15, 2026 at the Historic Yates Mill County Park Visitor Center Classroom at 4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC 27603.

This project consists of a renovation at the existing Historic Yates Mill County Park located at 4620 Lake Wheeler Road in Raleigh, North Carolina. The proposed renovations include renovations to the existing Visitor Center, a new Maintenance Facility with storage yard, a new picnic shelter and plaza, parking improvements with bus parking spaces, improved sidewalks throughout the site, overlooks along the pond, and other miscellaneous improvements. Refer to the Project Manual herein and associated Construction Drawings for the full scope of work.

No bid may be withdrawn for ninety (90) days after the scheduled closing time for bids.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all bids and to waive informalities.

Signed: COUNTY OF WAKE

By: Eric Staehle
Facilities Design & Construction

DESIGNER: Melissa Brand, PLA
Kimley-Horn and Associates, Inc.
1001 Winstead Drive, Suite 500
Cary, NC 27513

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

For a Proposal to be considered, it must be in accordance with the following instructions:

1. PROPOSALS

Proposals must be made on the Bid Proposal Forms provided herein, and all blank spaces for Bids, Alternates and Unit Prices, applicable to bidder's work, shall be properly filled in. When requested Alternates are not Bid, the Proposal may be considered non-responsive. The Bidders agree that Bids submitted on the specified Bid Proposal Forms, which are detached from specifications, will be considered and will have the same force and effect as if attached thereto. Numbers shall be stated both in writing and in figures for the Base Bids and Alternates.

Any modification to the Bid Proposal Forms (including Alternates and/or Unit Prices) may disqualify the Bid and may cause the Bid to be rejected.

The Contractor shall fill in the Bid Proposal Forms as follows:

A. If the documents are executed by a sole Owner, that fact shall be evidenced by the word "Owner" appearing after the name of the person.

B. If the documents are executed by a Partnership, that fact shall be evidenced by the word "Co-Partner" appearing after the name of the partner executing them.

C. If the documents are executed on the part of a Corporation, they shall be executed by either the President or the Vice-President and attested by the Secretary or Assistant Secretary. In either case the title of the office of such person shall appear after their signatures. The seal of the Corporation shall be impressed on each signature page of the documents.

D. If the Proposal is made by a Joint Venture, it shall be executed by each member of the Joint Venture in the above form for sole Owner, Partnership, or Corporation, whichever form is applicable.

E. All signatures shall be properly witnessed or attested as applicable.

F. Each proposal shall be addressed as indicated in the Advertisement for Bids and shall be delivered, enclosed in an opaque sealed envelope, marked "Proposal" and bearing the name of Project, name and address of the Bidder, the Bidder's license number and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Work for which Bid is submitted.

G. It shall be the specific responsibility of the Bidder to deliver the Bid to the proper official at the appointed place and prior to the announced time for the opening of Bids. Later delivery of a Bid for any reason, including delivery by the United States Mail, shall disqualify the Bid.

H. Modifications of previously deposited Bids or requests for withdrawal will be acceptable only if delivered in person or in writing to the place of the Bid opening prior to the time for opening Bids.

I. Unit Prices quoted in the Proposal shall include overhead and profit and shall be the full compensation for the Contractor's cost involved in the work.

2. EXAMINATION OF CONDITIONS

It is understood and mutually agreed that by submitting a Bid the Contractor acknowledges his careful examination of the Bidding Documents pertaining to the work, the location, accessibility and general character of the site of the work and all existing buildings and structures within and adjacent to the site; and has satisfied himself as to the nature of the work, the condition of existing buildings and structures, the conformation of the ground, the character, quality and quantity of the materials to be encountered; the character of the equipment, machinery, plant and any other facilities needed preliminary to and during prosecution of the work; the general and local conditions; the construction hazards; and all other matters, including but not limited to, the labor situation which can in any way affect the work under the Contract; and including all safety measures required by the latest edition of the Occupational Safety Health Act and all rules and regulations issued pursuant thereto. It is further mutually agreed that by submitting a Proposal, the Contractor acknowledges that he has satisfied himself as to the feasibility and meaning of the plans, drawings, specifications, and other Contract Documents for the construction of the work and that he accepts all the terms, conditions and stipulations contained therein; and that he is prepared to work in cooperation with the Owner and all other Contractors performing work on the site.

Reference is made to the Contract Documents for the identification of those surveys and investigative reports of subsurface or latent physical conditions at the site or otherwise affecting performance of the work which have been relied upon by the Licensed Professional who prepared the documents. Copies of all such surveys and reports are available to the Bidders, upon request. All Bidders are responsible for reviewing these documents prior to submission of their Bid Proposal.

Each Bidder may, at his own expense, make such additional surveys and investigations, as he may deem necessary to determine his Bid price for the performance of the work. Any on-site investigation shall be done at the convenience of the Owner. The Owner will honor any reasonable request for access to the site.

3. SUBSTITUTIONS

Material substitutions will be considered during the bidding phase until seven (7) days prior to the receipt of bids. No substitutions will be considered after seven (7) days prior to the receipt of Bids.

For proposed material substitutions submit the following information to the Licensed Professional who prepared the bidding documents:

Name of manufacturer
Address of manufacturer
Phone number of manufacturer

Trade name
Model or catalogue designation
Manufacturer's data including:
    Performance and test data
    Reference standards
Detailed comparison with specified product including:
    Performance
    Test results
    Warranties
    Gauge, thickness or strength or material
    Finish
    Other pertinent data
Other information requested by the Licensed Professional who prepared the bidding documents

Submittals relating to substitutions, which are not fully complete by seven (7) days prior to the receipt of bids, will not be reviewed.

If the Licensed Professional who prepared the bidding documents accepts a material substitution, Contractors will be notified by Addendum.

4. ADDENDA

Any Addenda to bidding documents issued during the time of bidding will be sent to each Bidder, and are to be considered covered in the Bid Proposal. It is the Contractor's responsibility to ascertain prior to Bid time, which Addenda have been issued and confirm that his Bid Proposal includes any changes covered by the Addenda.

Should the Bidder find discrepancies in, or omissions from, the drawings or documents or should he be in doubt as to their meaning, he shall at once notify the Licensed Professional who prepared said drawings or documents. Neither the Owner nor the Licensed Professional who prepared the bidding documents will be responsible for any oral instructions.

The Bidder on his Bid Proposal shall acknowledge all Addenda. Failure to do so may disqualify the Bid and may cause the Bid to be rejected.

5. BID SECURITY

Each Proposal shall be accompanied by a cash deposit, or a certified check drawn on some bank or trust company insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a Bid Bond in an amount equal to not less than five percent (5%) of the Proposal. Said deposit to be retained by the Owner (referred to as Obligee on the Bond Form) as liquidated damages in event of failure of the successful Bidder to execute the Contract within ten (10) days after the award or to give satisfactory Surety as required by law.

The Bid Bond shall be conditioned that the surety will, upon demand, forthwith make payment to the Owner (referred to as Obligee on the Bond Form) upon the said bond if the Bidder fails to execute the contract.

A Wake County Bid Bond form is included in the project manual. The language in the Bid Bond form is required. Your Bid may be considered non-responsive if your Surety uses a different Bid Bond form. Notify your Surety that the language in the Wake County Bid Bond form must be used.

6. RECEIPT OF BIDS

Bids and Bid Security shall be received in strict accordance with requirements of the North Carolina General Statutes. Prior to opening of any Bids on the Project, the Bidder will be permitted to change or withdraw his Bid as allowed by Item 1-H of these Instructions.

All copies of the Bid, the Bid security, if any, and any other documents required to be submitted with the Bid shall be enclosed in a sealed opaque envelope. The envelope shall be addressed to the party receiving the Bids and should be identified with the Project name, time and date of Bid Opening, the Bidder's name and address, Bidder's license number and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Work for which the Bid is submitted. If the Bid is sent by mail, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate mailing envelope with the notation "SEALED BID ENCLOSED" on the face thereof.

7. OPENING OF BIDS

Upon opening, all Bids shall be read aloud. Once any Bid is opened, the Owner may return no Bids to any Bidder.

After Bids are opened, a Bidder may request that his Bid be withdrawn without forfeiting his Bid deposit in certain limited circumstances. Withdrawal after opening is permitted only if all of the following conditions specified in North Carolina General Statutes §143-129.1 are met:

A. The Bid was submitted in good faith.

B. The price Bid "was based upon a mistake, which constituted a substantial error".

C. Credible evidence is submitted showing that the error (1) was clerical in nature, as opposed to a judgment error; and (2) was actually due to an unintentional and substantial arithmetic error or an unintentional omission of a substantial quantity of work, labor, material or services made directly in the compilation of the Bid.

D. The error can be clearly shown by objective evidence drawn from inspection of the original work papers, documents, or materials used in the preparation of the Bid.

E. The request to withdraw (1) is made in writing to the public agency that invited the Proposals, and (2) is made prior to the award of the Contract, but not later than seventy-two (72) hours after the opening of Bids.

8. REJECTION OF BIDS

The Owner reserves the unqualified right to reject any and all Bids. Reasons for rejection may include, but shall not be limited to, the following:

A. If the Form of Proposal furnished to the Bidder is not used or is altered.

B. If the Bidder fails to insert a price for all Bid items, Alternates and Unit Prices requested.

C. If the Bidder adds any provisions reserving the right to accept or reject any award.

D. If there are unauthorized additions or conditional Bids, or irregularities of any kind which tend to make the Proposal incomplete, indefinite, or ambiguous as to its meaning.

E. If the Bidder fails to complete the Proposal forms where information is requested so the Bid may be properly evaluated by the Owner.

F. If the Unit Prices contained in the Bid Schedule are unacceptable to the Owner.

G. If the Bidder fails to comply with other instructions stated herein.

9. BID EVALUATION

The award of the Contract will be made to the lowest responsible Bidder as soon as practical. Should the successful Bidder default and fail to execute a Contract, the Contract may be awarded to the next lowest and responsible Bidder.

Before awarding a Contract, the Owner may require the apparent low Bidder to qualify himself to be a responsible Bidder by furnishing any or all of the following data:

A. The latest financial statement showing assets and liabilities of the company or other information satisfactory to the Owner.

B. A listing of similar completed projects of similar size, with contact persons and telephone numbers.

C. Permanent name and address of place of business.

D. The number of regular employees of the organization and length of time the organization has been in business under present name and percentage of work typically performed by the contractor's firm.

(1) Qualifications of key employees assigned to this Project.

(2) References for key employees assigned to this Project.

E. The name and home office address of the Surety proposed and the name and address of the responsible local claim agent.

F. The names of members of the firm who hold appropriate trade licenses, together with license numbers.

G. Complete list of all subcontractors and suppliers proposed.

H. Any pending arbitration or mediation cases or lawsuits. This may include all arbitration, mediation and lawsuits settled or resolved within last ten (10) years.

Failure or refusal to furnish any of the above information if requested shall constitute a basis for disqualification of any Bidder.

In determining the lowest responsible Bidder, the Owner may consider the past performance of the Bidder on construction contracts for the County of Wake, Wake County Public School System, the State of North Carolina or other governmental agencies. Particular concern will be given to completion times, quality of work, cooperation with other Contractors, and cooperation with the Designer and Owner.

Should the Owner adjudge that the apparent low Bidder is not the lowest "responsible" Bidder by virtue of the above information, said apparent low Bidder will be so notified and his Bid Security shall be returned to him.

The Owner shall have the right to accept Alternates in any order or combination and to determine the low Bidder on the basis of the sum of the Base Bid and the Alternates accepted.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any and all Bids, to waive all technicalities and irregularities, and to make the award as considered to be in the best interest of the Owner.

10. PERFORMANCE BOND

The successful Bidder, upon award of Contract, shall furnish a Performance Bond in an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract price.

11. PAYMENT BOND

The successful Bidder, upon award of Contract, shall furnish a Payment Bond in an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract price.

12. PRE-BID CONFERENCE

Bidders are requested to attend a Pre-Bid Conference at the time and place stipulated in the Bidding Documents.

13. PROPOSALS TO BE BID

General Construction Work – Single Prime

14. INFORMATION TO BIDDER

All questions concerning the plans and specifications should be directed to the Licensed Professional who prepared said documents.

Facilities Design
& Construction

919 856 6350
919 856 6355

Waverly F. Akins Wake County Office Building
P.O. Box 550 • Raleigh, NC 27602
336 Fayetteville St., Room 1100 • Raleigh, NC 27601
wake.gov

Notice of Wake County
Electronic Contracting Processes for Construction Agreements

All Wake County contracts are now executed and processed electronically. The successful lowest responsive responsible bidder upon award of the construction contract must be a registered Wake County vendor to start the electronic contract process. Any company not registered as a Wake County vendor must register. The County will contact the low bidder and offer instructions on how to register as a vendor or update their existing vendor registration info if needed.

Upon notification of contract award, contractor will be issued instructions for processing Performance and Payment Bonds, Certificates of Insurance, and issuance of the Construction Agreement

Contracts will then be transmitted via DocuSign for signing, attesting, and execution.

Historic Yates Mill County Park Renovation

Project No. RFB #26-092

BID PROPOSAL FORM

(USE THIS FORM ONLY. Bids submitted on anything other than the form(s) provided may be considered non-responsive and subject to rejection)

SINGLE PRIME GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK
FORMAL CONTRACT

BIDDERS NAME

_____ License Number: _____

BASE BID PROPOSAL

The undersigned, as Bidder, hereby declares that the only person or persons interested in this Proposal as principal or principals is or are named herein and that no other person than herein mentioned has any interest in this Proposal or in the Contract to be entered into; that this Proposal is made without connection with any other person, company or parties making a Bid or Proposal; and that it is in all respects fair and in good faith without collusion or fraud.

The Bidder further declares that he has examined the site of the work and informed himself fully in regard to all conditions pertaining to the place where the work is to be done; that he has examined the specifications for the work and the Contract Documents relative thereto, including addenda, if any, and has read all special provisions furnished prior to the opening of bids; that he has satisfied himself relative to the work to be performed.

The Bidder proposes and agrees if this Proposal is accepted to contract with the County of Wake with a definite understanding that no money will be allowed for extra work except as set forth in the General Conditions and Contract Documents, for the sum of:

Base Bid _____
_____ Dollars ($_____).

SUBCONTRACTOR LISTING

PLUMBING CONTRACTOR

Name: _____ License Number: _____

$_____

HVAC CONTRACTOR

Name: _____ License Number: _____

$_____

ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR

Name: _____ License Number: _____

$_____

(OTHER CONTRACTOR)

Name: _____ License Number: _____

$_____

(OTHER CONTRACTOR)

Name: _____ License Number: _____

$_____

(OTHER CONTRACTOR)

Name: _____ License Number: _____

$_____

(OTHER CONTRACTOR)

Name: _____ License Number: _____

$_____

ALTERNATES

Should any of the alternates as described in the specifications be accepted, the amount written below shall be the amount to "add to" of "deduct from" the Base Bid. If to be "deducted from" Base Bid, put minus sign (-) in parentheses at head of alternate and plus sign (+) in parentheses if to be added. Refer to Section 012300 for description of alternates.

Add Alternate No. 1 (+) Observation Deck, 2 Benches, 1 Trash Receptacle and Concrete Pad, and Overlook Binoculars Dollars ($_____)

Add Alternate No. 2 (+) Natural Surface Overlook Pad and 1 Wood Backless Bench_____ Dollars ($_____)

Add Alternate No. 3 (+) Reinforced Turf_____ Dollars ($_____)

UNIT PRICES

Unit prices are complete for labor, equipment, material, overhead and profit. Base bid includes the stipulated allowance quantity of each item. Unused amount will be credited to the Owner by change order at the end of the project.

Description	Unit Price	Unit Measure	Allowance Units
No. 1: Removal of unsatisfactory soil, debris, and plastic/elastic soil excavation and disposal off-site and replacement with satisfactory soil material from off-site.		CY	100
No. 2: Removal of unsatisfactory soil, debris, and plastic/elastic soil and replacement with satisfactory structural soil material on-site.		CY	100
No. 3: Mass rock removal and replacement with satisfactory soil material.		CY	100
No. 4: Trench rock removal and replacement with satisfactory soil material.		CY	100
No. 5: Mirafi 500X geotextile, or approved equal.		SY	200
No. 6: Landscape Boulders		EA	N/A
No. 7: Canopy Tree		EA	N/A
No. 8: Asphalt Surface Standard Duty, 3” S9.5B		SY	N/A
No. 9: Aggregate Base Course, 6” – Standard Duty Asphalt		SY	N/A
No. 10: Asphalt Surface Heavy Duty, 2” S9.5B		SY	N/A
No. 11: Asphalt Binder Heavy Duty, 4” I19.0B		SY	N/A
No. 12: Aggregate Base Course, 8” – Heavy Duty Asphalt		SY	N/A
No. 13: 4” Concrete Sidewalk		SY	N/A

No. 14: Heavy Duty Concrete, 6" Depth		SY	N/A
No. 15: Aggregate Base Course, 6" – Heavy Duty Concrete		SY	N/A
No. 16: Gravel Pave 2 – Reinforced ABC Gravel		SY	N/A
No. 17: Grass Pave 2 – Reinforced Turf		SY	N/A
No. 18: Standard Duty Exposed Aggregate Concrete		SY	N/A
No. 19: Heavy Duty Exposed Aggregate Concrete		SY	N/A
No. 20: 8' Ht. Polyoelfin Coated Chain Link Fence		LF	N/A
No. 21: Mobilization for Removal of Mass Rock or Trench Rock		LS	1

ALLOWANCES

Allowances indicated shall be included in the Total Base Bid Amount. Refer to Section 012100 for description of allowances.

A. Allowance No. 1: Include an allowance of 100 CY for removal of unsatisfactory soil, debris, and plastic/elastic soil excavation and disposal off-site and replacement with satisfactory soil material from off-site.
$_____

B. Allowance No. 2: Include an allowance of 100 CY for removal of unsatisfactory soil, debris, and plastic/elastic soil and replacement with satisfactory structural soil material on-site. $_____

C. Allowance No. 3: Include an allowance of 100 CY of mass rock removal and replacement with satisfactory soil material. $ _____

D. Allowance No. 4: Include 100 CY of trench rock removal and replacement with satisfactory soil material. $_____

E. Allowance No. 5: Include 200 SY of Mirafi 500X geotextile, or approved equal. $_____

F. Allowance No. 6: Include an allowance of $100,000 for use according to the Owner's written instructions.

G. Allowance No. 7: Include an allowance of $145,000 for installation of security equipment on-site.

H. Allowance No. 8: Include an allowance of $50,000 for security fiber optic and telecommunications cabling installation.

CERTIFICATION OF PROPOSER:

The Bidder further proposes and agrees hereby to commence work under his Contract on a date to be specified in a written order of Wake County and shall fully complete all work thereunder within the number of consecutive calendar days stipulated in the Supplementary General Conditions. Applicable liquidated damages shall be as stated in Supplementary General Conditions.

The undersigned acknowledges receipt of the following addenda issued during the time of bidding and includes the changes therein in this Proposal:

Addendum Number _____, Dated _____

Addendum Number _____, Dated _____

Addendum Number _____, Dated _____

The undersigned agrees that this Proposal will not be withdrawn for a period of sixty (60) days.

The undersigned agrees to comply with the E-Verify requirements of the General Statutes of North Carolina, all contractors, including any subcontractors employed by the contractor(s), by submitting a bid, proposal or any other response, or by providing any material, equipment, supplies, services, etc., attest and affirm that they are aware and in full compliance with Article 2 of Chapter 64, (NCGS64-26(a)) relating to the E-Verify requirements.

The undersigned agrees not to discriminate in any manner on the basis of race, natural hair or hairstyles, ethnicity, creed, color, sex, pregnancy, marital or familial status, sexual orientation, gender identity or expression, national origin or ancestry, marital or familial status, pregnancy, National Guard or veteran status, religious belief or non-belief, age, or disability with reference to the subject matter of this Contract. The Parties agree to comply with the provisions and intent of Wake County Ordinance SL 2017-4. This anti-discrimination provision shall be binding on the successors and assigns of the Parties with reference to the subject matter of this Contract.

The undersigned further agrees that in the case of failure on his part to execute the said Contract and the Bond within ten (10) consecutive calendar days after written notice being given of the award of the Contract, the check, cash or Bid Bond accompanying this Bid shall be paid into the funds of Owner's Account set aside for this Project, as liquidated damages for such failure; otherwise the check, cash or Bid Bond accompanying this Proposal shall be returned to the undersigned.

Respectfully submitted this __ day of _____, 20__

PROPOSER SIGNATURE PAGE

_____
(Name of Firm or Corporation making Bid)

By: _____

WITNESS:

_____
(Proprietorship or Partnership)

Title: _____
(Owner, Partner, or Corporation President or Vice President only)

Address: _____
_____
_____

Affix Corporate Seal Above

License Number: _____

ATTEST:

By: _____

Title: _____
(Corporation Secretary or Assistant Secretary only)

BID BOND

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that we, _____,
(Bidder's Name)
_____, of _____
(Street Address) (City, State, Zip)
hereinafter called the Principal, and _____ of
(Surety's Name)
_____, a Corporation duly organized, and existing under the laws of the State of _____ and authorized to transact business in the State of North Carolina, as Surety, hereinafter called the Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the County of Wake as Owner, hereinafter called the Obligee, in the Penal sum of five percent (5%)of the amount bid, good and lawful money of the United States of America, for the payment for which the Principal and the Surety, bind ourselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents. This bid bond is submitted in lieu of submitting cash, a cashier's check, or a certified check pursuant to G.S. 143- 129.

WHEREAS, the Principal has submitted a Bid for the construction of _____.
(Project Name)

NOW THEREFORE, if the Obligee shall accept the Bid of the Principal and the Principal shall enter into a Contract with the Obligee in accordance with the terms of said Bid, and give such bond or bonds as may be specified in the Bidding and Contract Documents with good and sufficient surety for the faithful performance of such Contract and for the prompt payment of labor and materials furnished in the prosecution thereof, then this obligation shall be null and void; but if the Principal fails to so execute such Contract and give such bonds as required by G.S. 143-129, this obligation shall otherwise remain in full force and effect and the Surety shall, upon demand, forthwith pay to the Obligee the full amount set forth in the first paragraph hereof.

SIGNED AND SEALED this __ day of _____, 20__ in the presence of:

Witness _____	Witness _____
_____	_____
Principal (SEAL)	Surety (SEAL)
_____	_____
Title	Title

******USE OF BOND FORM OTHER THAN THIS MAY RESULT IN DISQUALIFICATION OF THE BIDDER******

CONSTRUCTION AGREEMENT

FOR

HISTORIC YATES MILL COUNTY PARK

THIS AGREEMENT, made as of the ___ day of _____, 20__, by and between _____, a corporation, hereinafter called the Contractor, and Wake County, a body corporate and politic and a political subdivision of the State of North Carolina, hereinafter called the Owner.

W I T N E S S E T H:

That the Contractor and the Owner, for the consideration herein named, agree as follows:

1. SCOPE OF WORK - The Contractor shall furnish and deliver all of the materials, and perform all of the work required by this Agreement and the following enumerated documents, which are attached hereto and made a part hereof as if fully contained herein: General Conditions, Supplemental Conditions, Contract Construction Schedule, Specifications, Drawings entitled "_____" which Drawings are listed in the Specifications, Performance Bond, Labor and Material Payment Bond, Insurance Certificates, and the following addenda:

Addendum No. _____ Dated _____

Addendum No. _____ Dated _____

Addendum No. _____ Dated _____

All of the documents listed, referenced or described in this paragraph, together with Modifications made or issued in accordance herewith are the Contract Documents, and the work, labor, materials and completed construction required by the Contract Documents and all parts thereof is the Work. The Contractor shall perform the Work in the time, manner and form required by the Contract Documents. The Contract Documents constitute the entire agreement between Owner and Contractor.

2. The Contractor agrees to commence work not later than three (3) days after the commencement date specified in the Notice to Proceed. The Contractor agrees to complete fully all Work hereunder on the dates specified in the Contract Documents, as may be adjusted in accordance with the terms thereof. Time is of the essence with respect to all dates specified in the Contract Documents as Completion Dates. Liquidated damages for failure(s) to complete in

accordance with the provisions of this paragraph shall be computed and assessed against the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3. The Owner hereby agrees to pay to the Contractor for the faithful performance of this Agreement, and the Contractor hereby agrees to perform all of the Work, for the sum of _____ Dollars ($_____) in the lawful money of the United States, subject to adjustments as provided for in the Contract Documents. Payment of the Contract Price shall be in accordance with Articles 20 and 21 of the General Conditions.

4. It is further mutually agreed between the parties hereto that if at any time after the execution of this Agreement and the Performance Bond and Labor and Material Payment Bond hereto attached for its faithful performance, the Owner shall deem the surety or sureties upon such Bonds to be unsatisfactory, or if, for any reason, such Bonds or either of them cease to be adequate to cover the performance of and payment for the Work, the Contractor shall, at its expense, within five (5) days after notice from the Owner so to do, furnish an additional bond or bonds in such form and amount and with such surety or sureties as shall be satisfactory to the Owner. In such event no further payment to the Contractor shall be deemed to be due under this Agreement until such new or additional security for the faithful performance of or payment for the Work shall be furnished in a manner and form satisfactory to the Owner.

5. Terms used in this Agreement which are defined in the Contract Documents shall have the meanings designated in those Contract Documents.

6. The Contractor agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Owner against liability for damages arising out of bodily injury including death, or property damage, to any person or persons only to the extent that the fault of the Contractor or its derivative parties is a proximate cause of the loss, damage, or expense to be indemnified. This obligation to indemnify includes the obligation to pay any attorney's fees, litigation expenses, or court costs actually incurred by Owner to the extent that the fault of the Contractor or its derivative parties is a proximate cause of the fees, expenses, or cost to be indemnified. It is the intent of this provision to require the Contractor to indemnify the Owner to the fullest extent permitted by North Carolina law. The language and definitions in this section shall be construed consistent with N.C.G.S. 22B-1 et seq. as it may be amended. The indemnification obligation under this paragraph shall not be limited in any way by any limitation of the amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or any subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefits acts or other employee benefit acts.

7. The laws of the State of North Carolina shall apply to the interpretation and enforcement of this Agreement. Any and all suits or actions to enforce, interpret or seek damages with respect to any provision of, or the performance or nonperformance of, this Agreement shall be brought in the General Court of Justice of North Carolina sitting in Wake County, North Carolina, or the United States District Court sitting in Wake County, North Carolina, and it is agreed by the parties that no other court shall have jurisdiction or venue with respect to such suits or actions.

8. To ensure compliance with the E-Verify requirements of the General Statutes of North Carolina, all contractors, including any subcontractors employed by the contractor(s), by submitting a bid, proposal or any other response, or by providing any material, equipment, supplies, services, etc, attest and affirm that they are aware and in full compliance with N.C.G.S. Chapter 64, Article 2 (N.C.G.S. 64-26(a)) relating to the E-Verify requirements.

9. By signing this agreement; accepting this contract/purchase order; or submitting any bid, proposal, etc., vendors and contractors certify that as of the date of execution, receipt, or submission they are not listed on the Final Divestment List created by the NC Office of State Treasurer pursuant to NCGS 147 Article 6E, Iran Divestment Act, Iran Divestment Act Certification. Vendors and contractors shall not utilize any subcontractor that is identified on the Final Divestment List.

Any organization defined under NCGS 147-86.80(2), Divestment from Companies Boycotting Israel, shall not engage in business totaling more than $1,000 with any company/business, etc. that boycotts Israel. A list of companies that boycott Israel is maintained by the NC Office of State Treasurer, pursuant to NCGS 147-86.81(a)(1). Any company listed as boycotting Israel is not eligible to do business with any State agency or political subdivision of the State.

10. If the source of funds for this contract is federal funds, the following federal provisions apply pursuant to 2 C.F.R. § 200.326 and 2 C.F.R. Part 200, Appendix II (as applicable):

Equal Employment Opportunity (41 C.F.R. Part 60); Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 3141-3148); Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (40 U.S.C. 3145); Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3701-3708); Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387); Debarment and Suspension (Executive Orders 12549 and 12689); Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352); Procurement of Recovered Materials (2 C.F.R. § 200.322); and Record Retention Requirements (2 CFR § 200.324).

11. In consideration of signing this Agreement, the Parties hereby agree not to discriminate in any manner on the basis of race, natural hair or hairstyles, ethnicity, creed, color, sex, pregnancy, marital or familial status, sexual orientation, gender identity or expression, national origin or ancestry, marital or familial status, pregnancy, National Guard or veteran status, religious belief or non-belief, age, or disability with reference to the subject matter of this Contract. The Parties agree to comply with the provisions and intent of Wake County Ordinance SL 2017-4. This anti-discrimination provision shall be binding on the successors and assigns of the Parties with reference to the subject matter of this Contract.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Parties hereto have executed this Agreement as of the day and date first above written in a number of counterparts, each of which shall, without proof or accounting for other counterparts, be deemed an original contract.

_____
Contractor: (Trade or Corporate Name)

By: _____

Title: _____
(President)

ATTEST: (CORPORATION)

By: _____

Title: _____
(Corporate Secretary)

(CORPORATE SEAL)

WITNESS:

_____
(Proprietorship or Partnership)

WAKE COUNTY
P. O. Box 550
Raleigh, N.C. 27602

By: _____
County Manager or Designee

This instrument has been pre-audited in the manner required by the local Government Budget and Fiscal Control Act.

_____
Wake County Finance Officer

This instrument has been reviewed by Wake County Facilities, Design & Construction

_____
Mark Forestieri
Director, Facilities Design & Construction

The person responsible for monitoring the contract performance requirements is

_____. _____ Department Head Initials

PAYMENT BOND

Date of Contract: _____

Date of Execution: _____

Name of Principal: _____
(Contractor) _____
_____

Name of Surety: _____

Name of Contracting Body: County of Wake
P.O. Box 550
Raleigh, N.C. 27602

Amount of Bond: _____
Dollars ($_____)

Project: _____
_____

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that we, the PRINCIPAL and SURETY above named, are held and firmly bound unto the above named owner, hereinafter called "Owner", in the penal sum of the amount stated above, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that whereas the Principal entered into a certain Contract with the Owner identified as shown above and hereto attached:

NOW THEREFORE, if the Principal shall promptly make payment to all persons supplying labor and material in the prosecution of the Work provided for in said Contract, and any and all duly authorized modifications of said Contract that may hereafter be made, notice of which modification to the Surety being hereby waived, then this obligation to be void; otherwise to remain in full force and virtue.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above-bounden parties have executed this instrument under their several seals on the date indicated above, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representatives, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

PAYMENT BOND

Executed in Four (4) Counterparts.

CONTRACTOR:

By: _____

Title: _____
(Corporation President or
Vice President Only)

ATTEST: (Corporation)

_____
(Corporation Secretary or Assistant
Secretary Only) (CORPORATE SEAL)

SURETY COMPANY:

WITNESS: By: _____

_____ Title: _____
(Attorney in Fact)

(SURETY CORPORATE SEAL)

COUNTERSIGNED:

_____

_____
(N.C. Licensed Resident Agent)

_____
_____
_____
Name and Address-Surety Agency

_____
_____
_____
Surety Company Name and N.C.
Regional or Branch Office Address

PERFORMANCE BOND

Date of Contract: _____

Date of Execution: _____

Name of Principal: _____
(Contractor) _____
_____

Name of Surety: _____

Name of Contracting Body: County of Wake
P.O. Box 550
Raleigh, N.C. 27602

Amount of Bond: _____
Dollars ($_____)

Project: _____
_____

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that we, the PRINCIPAL and SURETY above named, are held and firmly bound unto the named Contracting Body, hereinafter called the Contracting Body, in the penal sum of the amount stated above for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that whereas the Principal entered into a certain Contract with the Contracting Body, identified as shown above and hereto attached:

NOW THEREFORE, if the Principal shall well and truly perform and fulfill all the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions, and agreements of said Contract during the original term of said Contract and any extensions thereof that may be granted by the Contracting Body, with or without notice to the Surety, and during the life of any guaranty required under the Contract, and shall also well and truly perform and fulfill all the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions, and agreements of any and all duly authorized modifications of said Contract that may hereafter be made, notice of which modifications to the Surety being hereby waived, then, this obligation to be void; otherwise to remain in full force and virtue.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above-bounden parties have executed this instrument under their several seals on the date indicated above, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its countersigned representative, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

PERFORMANCE BOND

Executed in Four (4) Counterparts.

CONTRACTOR:

By: _____

Title: _____
(Corporation President or
Vice President Only)

ATTEST: (Corporation)

_____
(Corporation Secretary or Assistant
Secretary Only) (CORPORATE SEAL)

SURETY COMPANY:

WITNESS: By: _____

_____ Title: _____
(Attorney in Fact)

(SURETY CORPORATE SEAL)

COUNTERSIGNED:

_____

_____
(N.C. Licensed Resident Agent)

_____
_____
_____
Name and Address-Surety Agency

_____
_____
_____
Surety Company Name and N.C.
Regional or Branch Office Address

ATTACHEMENT A

TO THE

HISTORIC YATES MILL COUNTY PARK RENOVATION

MINORITY AND HISTORICALLY UNDERUTILIZED BUSINESS PARTICIPATION REQUIREMENTS

Session Law 2026-41, signed July 7, 2026, repealed N.C.G.S. §143-128.2, §143-128.3, §143-128.4, §143-48.4, §63A-19, §116D-4, and §143-131(b), and eliminated the Office for Historically Underutilized Businesses.

All provisions of the Contract Documents, including any document incorporated by reference and any prior addendum, that impose minority or historically underutilized business participation goals, good faith effort requirements, affidavit or documentation submissions, participation reporting, or related compliance obligations arising under the repealed statutes shall have no force or effect and shall not be enforced under this Agreement. The Contractor's failure to comply with any such provision shall not constitute a breach or default or a basis for withholding, reducing, or delaying payment. This Article controls over any conflicting provision of the Contract Documents.

Removal of the minority or historically underutilized business participation provisions does not alter the contract sum, the contract time, or any other term of this Agreement, and the Contractor waives any claim for adjustment arising from it. If the Project receives federal funding, Disadvantaged Business Enterprise requirements under 49 C.F.R. Part 26 and other applicable federal program requirements are unaffected by this Article.

GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION

Table of Contents

		Page
Article 1.	Definitions	3
Article 2.	Correlation, Interpretation and Intent of Contract Documents	7
Article 3.	Familiarity with Work, Conditions and Laws	8
Article 4.	Bonds	9
Article 5.	Insurance and Indemnity	9
Article 6.	Other Record Documents and Submittals	17
Article 7.	Contractor	19
Article 8.	Owner	27
Article 9.	Construction Manager	27
Article 10.	Designer	28
Article 11.	Testing and Surveying	28
Article 12.	Separate Contracts	29
Article 13.	Contract Time	29
Article 14.	Changes in the Work	33
Article 15.	Change of the Contract Price	34
Article 16.	Unforeseen Conditions	36
Article 17.	Correction of Work before Final Payment	37
Article 18.	Correction of Work after Substantial Completion; Warranties and Guaranties	37
Article 19.	Owner's Right to Do Work	39
Article 20.	Partial Payments	39
Article 21.	Final Payment	41
Article 22.	Contractor, Subcontractor and Supplier Affidavit	43

Article 23.	Assignments and Subcontracts	43
Article 24.	Measurements	43
Article 25.	Contractor and Subcontractor Relationships	43
Article 26.	Use of Premises	44
Article 27.	Cutting, Patching and Fitting	44
Article 28.	Dispute Resolution	44
Article 29.	Taxes	45
Article 30.	Operation of Owner's Facilities	45
Article 31.	Third Party Beneficiary Clause	46
Article 32.	Measurement of Quantities	46
Article 33.	Termination by the Owner for Cause	46
Article 34.	Termination or Suspension by the Owner for Convenience	47
Article 35.	General	48

ARTICLE 1. DEFINITIONS

1.1 Agreement - The Construction Agreement, these General Conditions, and any Supplementary Conditions.

1.2 AIA - The American Institute of Architects.

1.3 ASTM - The American Society for Testing and Materials.

1.4 Beneficial Occupancy – The point at which the Project can be occupied by the Owner for its intended purpose, upon achievement of Substantial Completion, as defined in 1.40.

1.5 Change Order - A written order to the Contractor signed by the Owner and the Designer authorizing an addition, deletion, or revision in the Work and/or an adjustment in the Contract Price and/or the Contract Time issued after execution of the Construction Agreement. See paragraph 14.1.

1.6 Completion Date - Those dates identified as Completion Dates in the Contract Construction Schedule or elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

1.7 Construction Agreement – The document executed by the Contractor and the Owner to formally memorialize their consent to the terms of the Agreement.

1.8 Construction Change Directive – A written order to the Contractor signed by the Owner and the Designer directing an addition, deletion, or revision in the Work after execution of the Construction Agreement, in circumstances when the parties have been unable to agree on an adjustment to the Contract Price or the Contract Time, but the Owner requests that the Contractor proceed with said Work subject to adjustment of the Contract Price and/or Contract Time under the procedures described herein.

1.9 Construction Manager(s) - The person or firm designated as the Construction Manager in the Contract Documents, or their authorized representatives. The Construction Manager(s), as referred to herein, will be referred to hereinafter as if each were of the singular number, masculine gender.

1.10 Contract Construction Schedule - That schedule described in Article 13 hereof and identified as the Contract Construction Schedule.

1.11 Contract Documents - All of the documents that make up the Agreement, plus the Drawings and Specifications that describe the scope of the Work, plus allowable Modifications to the Contract Documents.

1.12 Contract Price - The total monies payable to the Contractor under the Contract Documents pursuant to paragraph 15.1 of the Agreement.

1.13 Contract Time - The number of calendar days stated in, or computed from, the Contract Documents for the completion of the Work, or any portion thereof. See, particularly, Article 13 hereof and the Contract Construction Schedule. Time of completion as specified therein is of the essence. The time used and referred to on the Project will be that time which is

observed in Raleigh, North Carolina, being Eastern Daylight Savings Time (EDT), Eastern Standard Time (EST), or other as designated by the Designer.

1.14 Contractor - The Contractor shall be that party identified as such in the Agreement.

1.15 Days - Unless otherwise indicated, the term "days" shall mean consecutive calendar days.

1.16 Daylight Hours - The hours or portions of hours between sunrise and sunset local time.

1.17 Designer(s) – The person or firm designated as the Designer in the Contract Documents, or their authorized representatives. The Designer(s), as referred to herein, shall mean architect, landscape architect, and/or engineer. They will be referred to hereinafter as if each were of the singular number, masculine gender.

1.18 Drawings - The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents, wherever located and whenever issued, showing the design, location, and dimensions of the Work, and generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams. A list of the Drawings is contained in the Supplemental General Conditions.

1.19 Field Order - A written order issued by the Designer which clarifies or interprets the Contract Documents or orders minor changes in the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. See paragraph 14.2.

1.20 Final Completion - The point at which the Contractor has, as determined by the Designer, completed the Work, with the exception of guaranty and warranty obligations, and becomes entitled, upon the recommendation of the Designer and determination by the Owner, to final payment.

1.21 The words "furnish," "furnish and install," "install," and "provide" or words with similar meanings shall be interpreted, unless otherwise stated, to mean furnish and install complete, in place and ready for service.

1.22 Liquidated Damages – See paragraph 13.18 of these General Conditions.

1.23 Modification - (A) a written amendment to the Contract Documents signed by the Owner and the Contractor and identified therein as such, (B) a Change Order, (C) Construction Change Directive, or (D) a Field Order. A Modification may only be issued after execution of the Agreement.

1.24 Notice of Award - The written notice by the Owner to the Contractor that the Contractor is the successful Bidder and that upon compliance with the conditions precedent to be fulfilled by the Contractor within the time specified, the Owner will execute and deliver the Agreement to him.

1.25 Notice to Proceed - See paragraph 13.3.

1.26 Owner - The Owner is the person designated as such in the Agreement.

1.27 Owner's Authorized Representative - A person, or persons, employed by the Owner and designated from time to time by written notice to the Contractor to administer the Contract Documents, and to observe and monitor the Work on behalf of the Owner with authority and responsibility as herein specified.

1.28 Notice - The term "notice" or "written notice" as used herein shall mean and include all written notices, demands, instructions, and claims approvals and disapprovals furnished by the Owner or the Designer to obtain compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, as well as all written notices, demands, instructions and claims furnished by the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. Where notice is required under the terms of the Contract Documents written notice shall always be required, and oral or "constructive" notice shall be insufficient and ineffective as notice. Email or other electronic delivery shall be insufficient and ineffective as notice unless specifically allowed by the Supplementary Conditions or a Modification to the Agreement. Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served on the date that it is delivered in person to the individual or to a member of the firm, to an officer of the corporation for whom it is intended, to an authorized representative of such individual, firm, or corporation, or on the date that it is mailed by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, addressed to the last business address of such individual, firm, or corporation known to the person giving the notice. Written notice may also be given by facsimile transmission, provided that proof of delivery is obtained. In the case of delivery in person, such delivery shall not be effective unless and until a written and signed receipt showing the date and time of delivery is obtained.

1.29 Project - The total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part.

1.30 Project Expediter – As used herein, is an entity stated in the Contract Documents, designated to effectively facilitate scheduling and coordination of Work activities. For the purpose of a single prime contract, the single prime contractor is designated as the Project Expediter. For the purpose of a project involving separate prime contracts, the Contractor for general work shall be designated as the Project Expediter unless otherwise indicated in the Supplementary General Conditions. See paragraph 7.27.

1.31 Project Manager - That person designated by the Contractor in accordance with paragraph 7.2 who shall be in general charge of the Work and its performance and who shall have the authority set forth in the last sentence of paragraph 7.2.

1.32 Request for Information - A written communication from the Contractor to the Designer for any interpretation of, or information needed, required, or desired under the Contract Documents. The Owner reserves the right to determine the reasonable format and contents required for a Request for Information. In any Request for Information, the Contractor shall state a reasonable date by which a response is necessary in order to avoid delay in progress on the Work and shall make such request sufficiently in advance of such date as to avoid any such delay. The Designer shall respond in writing to the Request for Information by the date stated by the Contractor unless he cannot reasonably do so, in which case he shall prior to that date notify the Contractor of the date by which he can reasonably respond. The Contractor shall not be entitled to any additional time for the completion of the Work or any portion thereof by reason of the Designer's failure to respond if he has not submitted his

Request for Information sufficiently in advance to allow the Designer a reasonable time within which to respond.

1.33 Request for Payment - The form, in the form of AIA Document G702 (latest ed.) or other published document approved by Owner, which is to be used by the Contractor in requesting progress payments and which is to include a Schedule of Values as required by the Contract Documents and an affidavit of the Contractor that progress payments theretofore received from the Owner on account of the Work have been applied by the Contractor to discharge in full all the Contractor's obligations incurred in connection with Work covered by all prior applications for payment. See paragraph 20.2.

1.34 Resident Superintendent - That person designated by the Contractor in accordance with paragraph 7.2 who has day-to-day responsibility for the prosecution of the Work and the obtaining of proper materials and equipment, and adequate labor and who shall have the authority set forth in the last sentence of paragraph 7.2.

1.35 Schedule of Values - Any breakdown of the Contract Price which may be required by the Contract Documents, and designated as such. See paragraph 20.1.

1.36 Specifications - That portion of the Contract Documents consisting generally of the written requirements for materials, equipment, construction systems, standards, and workmanship for the Work and performance of related services.

1.37 Subcontractor - A person, firm, or corporation who has entered into a direct contract with the Contractor to perform any of the Work at the Project.

1.38 Submittal - Shop drawings, product data, samples, and other documents required by the Contract Documents to be submitted by the Contractor to the Designer.

1.39 Submittal Register - See paragraph 13.2 of these General Conditions.

1.40 Substantial Completion - The point at which the Work, and Work by other Contractors on or in connection with the Project, as determined by the Designer, is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents that it can be beneficially occupied by the Owner, and the Work can be utilized by the Owner for its intended use, and all necessary permits and permissions for Beneficial Occupancy and utilization having been obtained by the Contractor. All operations and maintenance manuals, Owner training, and as-built drawings must be submitted prior to Substantial Completion being achieved.

1.41 Sub-subcontractor - A person or entity that has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform any of the Work at the Project.

1.42 Work - The construction and services required by the Contract Documents, including all labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor’s obligations.

1.43 All references in the Contract Documents to the masculine shall be interpreted as including the feminine or neuter and all references in the Contract Documents to the singular or the

plural shall be interpreted as including the other, as may be appropriate in the reasonable interpretation of the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 2. CORRELATION, INTERPRETATION AND INTENT OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

2.1 It is the intent of the Specifications and Drawings and other Contract Documents to describe a complete Project in accordance with the Contract Documents.

2.2 The Contract Documents are complementary; what is called for by one is as binding as if called for by all. If the Contractor finds a conflict, error or discrepancy in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall notify the Designer in writing before proceeding with the Work affected thereby. In resolving such conflicts, errors and discrepancies, the Contract Documents shall be given preference in the following order: Construction Agreement, Modifications, Addenda, Supplemental Conditions, General Conditions, Specifications, and Drawings. Figure dimensions on Drawings shall govern over scale dimensions, and detailed Drawings shall govern over general Drawings. Any Work that may reasonably be inferred from the Contract Documents as being required to produce the intended result shall be supplied whether or not it is specifically called for. Work, materials or equipment described in words which, so applied, have a well known technical trade meaning shall be deemed to refer to such meaning and to incorporate any recognized standards which are a part of such meaning.

2.3 Miscellaneous items, accessories and work which are not specifically mentioned, but which are essential to produce a complete and properly operating installation, or useable structure or plant providing the indicated function shall be furnished and installed without change in the Contract Price. Such miscellaneous items and accessories shall be of the same quality standards, including material, style, finish, strength, class, weight and other applicable characteristics, as specified for the major component of which the miscellaneous item or accessory is an essential part, and shall be approved by the Designer before installation. This requirement is not intended to include major components not covered by or inferable from the Contract Documents.

2.4 The Work of all trades under the Contract Documents shall be coordinated by the Contractor in such a manner as to obtain the best workmanship possible for the entire Project and all components of the Work shall be installed or erected in accordance with the best practices of the particular trade.

2.5 The Contractor shall fully complete the Work and shall be responsible for all of the Work under the Contract Documents to which the Construction Agreement applies. If the Contractor is prevented from doing so by any limitation of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately give notice thereof to the Designer and the Owner in writing before proceeding with the construction in the area where the problem or limitation exists.

2.6 Standard specifications or manufacturers' literature, when referenced, shall be of the latest revision or printing unless otherwise stated and is intended to establish the minimum requirements acceptable.

2.7 For those materials specified without the use of brand names, the Contractor shall submit within thirty (30) days after his receiving the Construction Agreement for signatures, any product that meets the express requirements of the Specifications.

Such Submittal shall include manufacturer's data, test reports, performance data and certifications, samples, erection details, and other applicable information as required to permit determination by the Designer whether such proposed products are suitable. The Designer shall be the sole judge as to the suitability of any proposed product. The burden of proof of quality rests with the Contractor.

2.8 The Contractor is required to examine and read the complete set of Contract Documents for information concerning the Work, because some of the Work for which the Contractor will be responsible may be indicated on or in documentation applying primarily to the Work of one or more other separate prime contractors. No allowance will be made for the Contractor's failure to become familiar with the complete set of project documents.

2.9 Contractor's requests for clarification or information shall clearly define the cause(s) of Contractor's request and, as appropriate, shall include Contractor's interpretation and Contractor's proposed solution.

ARTICLE 3. FAMILIARITY WITH WORK, CONDITIONS AND LAWS

3.1 The Contractor has investigated prior to bidding and is satisfied with all conditions affecting the Work, including but not restricted to those bearing upon transportation, disposal, handling and storage of materials, availability of labor, water, electrical power, roads and uncertainties of weather, or similar physical conditions at the Project site, and the character of equipment and facilities needed prior to and during prosecution of the Work. The Contractor is satisfied as to the character, quality and quantity of surface and subsurface materials or obstacles to be encountered insofar as this information is reasonably ascertainable from inspection of the Project site, including all exploratory work done by the Owner, as well as from information presented by the Contract Documents, or any other information made available to the Contractor prior to receipt of bids. Any failure by the Contractor to become acquainted with the available information shall not relieve the Contractor from the responsibility for estimating properly the difficulty or cost of successfully performing the Work.

3.2 The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon all information furnished to the Contractor in writing by the Owner with respect to the Project site and to make all inferences from it that would reasonably be made by a contractor having knowledge and experience with similar work; however, the Contractor shall not be entitled to infer from Owner-supplied information any fact or condition which would not be inferred by a contractor having knowledge and experience with similar work and, if the Owner-supplied information is inadequate or insufficient in any respect, the Contractor shall be required to obtain independently such other information as a knowledgeable and experienced contractor would prudently obtain in order to evaluate any such condition.

3.3 The Contractor specifically acknowledges familiarity with all Federal, State, and local laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations which may in any manner affect those engaged or employed in the Work, or the materials or equipment in or about the Work, or in any way

affect the conduct of the Work and agrees that the Contractor and the Contractor's employees, subcontractors, and suppliers will, at all times, comply with same. If the Contractor shall discover any provisions in the Contract Documents which are contrary to or inconsistent with any such law, ordinance, rule, or regulation, the Contractor shall immediately give notice thereof to the Designer and the Owner in writing, identifying any items of Work affected, and the Contractor shall not proceed until the Contractor has received written direction from the Designer with respect to these items. If the Contractor performs contrary to or inconsistently with any such law, ordinance, rule, or regulation without giving such notice, the Contractor shall bear all costs which are a consequence of such performance.

3.4 At times selected by the Designer after execution by the Contractor of the Construction Agreement, a pre-construction conference shall be scheduled and conducted for the benefit of the Project.

ARTICLE 4. BONDS

4.1 A performance bond in the full amount of the Contract Price shall be required of the Contractor to guarantee the faithful performance of the Work in compliance with the Contract Documents, in such form as may be required by law and approved by the Owner. The bond shall be dated the same date as the Construction Agreement and must be accompanied by a current copy of the power of attorney for the attorney-in-fact executing such bond on behalf of a surety company licensed to do business in the state of North Carolina.

4.2 A payment bond in the full amount of the Contract Price shall be required of the Contractor to guarantee the payment of all labor and material costs or claims in connection with compliance with the Contract. The payment bond shall be in such form as may be required by law and approved by the Owner. Said bond shall be dated and executed in the same manner as the performance bond in paragraph 4.1.

ARTICLE 5. INSURANCE AND INDEMNITY

5.1 CONTRACTOR PROVIDED INSURANCE

The Contractor shall, without limiting its obligations or liabilities, procure, pay for and maintain such insurance as is required by law and as is required by this Agreement to protect the Contractor and the Owner from claims for damages for bodily injury, including death, and from claims for property damage which may arise from the Contractor's or its representatives', consultants', Subcontractors', agents', or employees' operations under this Agreement. Such insurance shall be of the kinds and have limits of liability and coverages not less than the minimum limits hereinafter specified or required by law, whichever is greater. The Owner makes no representation as to the adequacy or sufficiency of such coverages. The following requirements shall in no way be construed to limit or eliminate the liability of the Contractor, which arises from performance of Work under the Agreement. The Contractor is strictly responsible for any losses, claims, and costs of any kind which exceed the Contractor's limits of liability, or which may be outside the coverage scope of the policies.

The insurance specified shall be provided by an insurer approved by the Owner, authorized to do such business in the State of North Carolina, and on terms approved by the Owner.

Insurance companies utilized shall have a minimum rating of A- and Class VII as evaluated by the most current A.M. Best Rating Guide. If the insurer has a Best Rating less than A- and Class VII, the Contractor must receive specific written approval from the Owner prior to proceeding with any Work under the Agreement. All agents and brokers shall hold valid licenses from the State of North Carolina. Before commencing mobilization to the Project site and not later than 7 days after the receipt of the Construction Agreement by the Contractor for signatures, the Contractor shall furnish to the Owner a certificate or certificates of insurance in a form satisfactory to the Owner. Upon request of the Owner, the Contractor shall provide the Owner with certified copies of the insurance policies required by this Article, including without limitation declaration pages, conditions, exclusions and endorsements, and confirmation that each policy premium has been paid for the required term of this Agreement. A copy of the umbrella policy shall be provided to the Wake County Finance Department. Certificates shall be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. In the event of any such cancellation, non-renewal, reduction, restriction, or change in any insurance, the Contractor is obligated to replace such insurance within 7 days without a gap in coverage and file accordingly such notice with the Owner, and other interested parties. Failing immediate receipt of evidence of such replacement of insurance the Owner reserves the right to procure such insurance as the Owner considers desirable and the Contractor shall pay or reimburse the cost of the premium in respect thereof. It is expressly provided, however, that any action or inaction on the part of the Owner in this respect shall in no way change or reduce the Contractor's responsibilities and liabilities under this Agreement. Self-funded, policy fronting, or other non-risk transfer insurance mechanisms are not acceptable without prior written approval of the Owner. Full disclosure of such a program must be made prior to commencing mobilization to the Project site. Failure to make a full disclosure constitutes a material breach of the Agreement, justifying termination for default.

The Contractor shall name the Owner, the Designer, the Designer’s consultants, and the Construction Manager as additional insureds under all its insurance contracts (except workers' compensation) with respect to and including without limitation liability arising out of activities performed by or on behalf of the Contractor, products and completed operations of the Contractor, and automobiles owned, hired, leased, or borrowed by the Contractor. The coverage shall contain no special limitations on the scope of protection afforded to additional insureds.

For any claims related to this Project, the Contractor's insurance or self insurance shall be primary and noncontributory with respect to the Owner’s insurance. Any insurance or self-insurance maintained by the Owner shall be excess and noncontributory with respect to the Contractor's insurance.

All policies of insurance shall contain a clause waiving rights of subrogation against the Owner, unless the Owner approves otherwise in writing.

Limits of coverage are not to be amended by deductible clauses of any nature without the express written consent of the Owner. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for any deductible assumptions that may exist in any insurance policies required under this Agreement. In addition, the Contractor shall be responsible and shall not be reimbursed for any losses arising from any risk or exposure not insured as required herein, or not covered

as a result of a normal policy exclusion or that falls within the self insured retention, if Contractor self insured.

The Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whom claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the limits of the insurer's liability.

The claim provisions in the Contractor's insurance policies must specifically state the insurance company or Contractor's Third Party Administrator, if self insured, has both the right and duty to adjust a claim and provide defense.

The policies shall not contain any provision or definition which would serve to exclude or eliminate from coverage third party claims, including exclusions of claims for bodily or other injury to shareholders, partners, officers, directors, or employees of the insured, the premises owner, real estate manager, or the insured's Subcontractor, or any family relative of such persons.

If the policies contain any warranty stating that coverage is null and void (or words to that effect) if the Contractor does not comply with the most stringent regulations governing the Work, it shall be modified so that coverage shall be afforded in all cases except for the Contractor's willful or intentional noncompliance with applicable government regulations.

Any failure by any person to comply with reporting or other provisions of the policy including breach of warranties, shall not affect coverage provided to the Owner and its representatives, officials, and employees.

The insolvency or bankruptcy of the Insured or of the Insured's estate shall not relieve the insurance companies of their obligations under these policies. Any clauses to the contrary are unacceptable and must be stricken.

Failure to comply with these requirements shall be a material breach of this Agreement justifying termination for default.

5.1.1 Worker's Compensation and Employers' Liability Insurance

The Contractor and its Subcontractors shall procure and maintain Workers' Compensation Insurance in the amount and type required by the State of North Carolina and federal law for all employees employed under the Agreement who may come within the protection of Workers' Compensation Laws and covering all operations under the Agreement whether performed by the Contractor or by his Subcontractors. In jurisdictions not providing complete Workers' Compensation protection, the Contractor and his Subcontractors shall maintain employers' liability insurance in an amount, form, company, and agency satisfactory to the State of North Carolina and the Owner for the benefit of all employees not protected by Workers' Compensation Laws and covering all operations under the Agreement whether performed by the Contractor or by his Subcontractors.

The Contractor shall pay such assessments as will protect the Contractor and the Owner from claims under the Workers' Compensation Laws, workers' or workmen's compensation disability benefits, and other similar employee benefit acts. The current Experience Modification Factor shall be indicated on the Certificate of Insurance.

Coverage under this section shall be as required by federal and state Workers' Compensation and Occupational Disease Statutes, and shall have minimum limits as follows:

Coverage A:		Statutory, State of North Carolina
Employers' Liability:	Each Accident	$1,000,000
	Disease - Policy Limit	$1,000,000
	Disease - Each Employee	$1,000,000

Such insurance shall include Voluntary Compensation coverage, a Waiver of Subrogation in favor of the Owner as well as other endorsements that may be required by applicable jurisdictions, i.e. United States Longshoremen and Harbor Workers Act and maritime coverage (Jones Act).

5.1.2 Automobile Liability Insurance

The Contractor shall procure and maintain automobile insurance against liability for bodily injury and property damage as described below, that may arise with respect to the Work being performed under the Agreement, and as will provide protection from claims which may arise out of or result from the Contractor's performance of the Work and the Contractor's other obligations under the Agreement, whether such performance of the Work is by the Contractor, by any representative or Subcontractor, by anyone, both officially and personally, directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable.

This policy of insurance shall carry the following minimum Limit of Liability:

Combined Single Limit	$1,000,000

The policy of insurance shall contain or be endorsed to include the following:

a) owned, hired, and non-owned automobile liability.

b) If the policy contains a warranty stating that coverage is null and void (or words to that effect) if the transporter does not comply with the most stringent regulations governing the Work, it shall be modified so that coverage shall be afforded in all cases except for the transporter's willful or intentional noncompliance with applicable government regulations.

Any failure by any party to comply with reporting or other provisions of the policy including breach of warranties, shall not affect coverage provided to the Owner and its representatives, officials, and employees.

No subcontracting of waste hauling shall be permitted without prior, written approval of the Owner.

5.1.3 General Liability

This policy must be written on an Occurrence basis, with the following minimum Limits of Liability:

General Aggregate per project	$2,000,000.00
Products/Completed Operations Aggregate	$2,000,000.00
Bodily Injury and Property Damage csl/each occurrence	$1,000,000.00
Personal Injury and Advertising Injury	$2,000,000.00

The policy of insurance shall contain or be endorsed to include the following:

a) Blanket Contractual Liability covering Contractor's indemnification obligations under this Agreement, in accordance with ISO policy form CG 00 01. Modifications to the standard provision will not be acceptable if they serve to reduce coverage.

b) Premises/Operations Liability.

c) Explosion, collapse, and underground fault.

d) Independent Contractors and Independent Subcontractors coverage.

e) Broad Form Property Damage.

f) Personal Injury

g) Cross Liability/Severability of Interest clause.

h) Employer's Stop-Gap Liability endorsement, if applicable.

i) Amendment of the Pollution Exclusion Endorsement to allow coverage for bodily injury or property damage caused by heat, smoke, or fumes from a hostile fire.

j) Designated General Aggregate Limit Endorsement if required by the Supplemental General Conditions.

Coverage shall remain continuously in effect and without interruption for at least 6 years from the date of the Notice of Award and shall include coverage for exposures arising from operations that have been completed. The Contractor shall furnish the Owner and each other additional insured listed in the Agreement to whom the Certificates have been issued, evidence satisfactory to the Owner of continuation of such insurance at the date of Preliminary Acceptance and each year thereafter.

5.1.4 Pollution Legal Liability (PLL)

Pollution Legal Liability coverage will be provided if required by the Supplementary General Conditions.

5.1.5 Umbrella Liability

The Contractor shall maintain an occurrence basis (as distinguished from a “claims made” basis) Umbrella Liability policy (true follow form) over the underlying General Liability, Automobile Liability, and Employer's Liability, with the following limits of liability:

Each Occurrence	$3,000,000
Aggregate	$3,000,000

On a fully insured basis such coverage will be subject to a deductible no greater than $10,000 per occurrence where coverage is not provided by the underlying insurance, but is provided by the Umbrella Liability policy.

The Contractor may use any combination of primary and umbrella insurance policies to comply with the insurance requirements, provided the resulting insurance is equivalent to the insurance stated herein.

All Occupational Disease exclusions must be deleted. Any Pollution Exclusion must be amended to allow coverage for bodily injury or property damage caused by spill, upset, overturn, heat, smoke, or fumes from a hostile fire.

5.1.6 Property Insurance

The Contractor shall purchase All Risk Property Insurance on a Completed Value Form in the names of the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors as their interests may appear with limits as follows:

a) Full insurance value of the Work, or

b) Amount equal to the Contract Price for the Work, whichever is higher.

The Contractor is responsible for all physical damage to owned or rented machinery, tools, equipment, forms, and other items owned, rented or used by the Contractor and/or Subcontractor(s) in the performance of the Work. The insurance coverage evidencing such shall include a waiver of subrogation in favor of the Owner.

5.1.7 Valuable Papers And Records

The Contractor shall provide valuable papers and records insurance with coverage in an amount commensurate with project scope and set forth in the Supplementary General Conditions.

5.1.8 Claims

The Contractor shall notify the Owner within 24 hours of any claims or alleged claims received by the Contractor covered by any of the policies of insurance required in this Agreement. The Contractor shall provide a written copy of the claim or alleged claim to the Owner within 3 days of the Contractor's receipt of the claim or alleged claim. If a claim is

settled to the satisfaction of the claimant, the Contractor shall submit a copy of the claimant's release to the Owner.

If a claim or alleged claim is rejected by the Contractor and/or its insurance company, the Contractor shall immediately report this fact to the Owner.

Should 30 days elapse after the claim or alleged claim has been received by the Contractor, and the Contractor is not able to report a settlement or rejection of the claim, it shall report to the Owner the steps being taken with respect to the claim.

Without limiting the foregoing, he Contractor shall notify in writing the county risk manager of any paid or incurred claims which may impair annual aggregate or general liability.

5.1.9 Deductibles and Self-insured Retentions

Any deductibles or self-insured retentions must be declared to and approved by the Owner. At the option of the Owner, either: the insurer shall reduce to a maximum of $250,000 or eliminate such deductibles or self-insured retentions with respect to the Owner, or the Contractor shall provide evidence of collateral provided to insurers or procure a bond guaranteeing payment of losses and related investigations, claim administration, and defense expenses within the deductible or self-insured retention amount. Any self-insured retention or deductible amount on the policy shall not reduce the amount of collectible limits or liability.

5.1.10 Subcontractors

The Contractor shall include all Subcontractors as Insureds under its policies, or shall furnish separate certificates, policies, and endorsements for each Subcontractor the Contractor intends to use. If a Subcontractor does not take out insurance in his own name and the Contractor wishes to provide insurance protection for such Subcontractor and such Subcontractor's employees, the Contractor shall either (a) procure appropriate policies in the name of the Subcontractor, or (b) cause a rider or riders to be attached to the Contractor's policies which shall identify the Subcontractor thereby covered; provided, however, in the case of the latter option, such a rider need not be attached to the Contractor's workers' compensation policy if such policy by its terms is sufficiently broad to cover the employees of all Subcontractors performing Work under the Contract Documents. Except as otherwise approved by the Owner in writing, Limits of Liability and coverage scope must be at a minimum as stringent as required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents. All Work performed for the Contractor by any Subcontractor shall be pursuant to an appropriate agreement between the Contractor and the Subcontractor which shall contain provisions that waive all rights the contracting parties may have against one another for damages caused by fire or other perils covered by insurance as provided herein. Insurance monies received from any loss shall be divided as the respective interest of the parties affected shall appear.

5.2 OWNER CONTROLLED PROJECT SPECIFIC INSURANCE

In the event the Owner elects to purchase project-specific insurance affording coverage to the Contractor and Subcontractors, the terms and conditions of such coverage shall be set forth in the Supplementary Conditions.

5.3 CONTRACTOR AS JOINT VENTURE

If the Contractor is completing this Project on a joint venture basis, both joint venture partners retain all liabilities assumed by this Agreement, individually and collectively. This may include, but is not limited to, all premiums due, deductibles/self-insured retentions, coinsurance provisions, claim provisions, insurance policy conditions, and indemnification provisions hereunder.

Evidence of a Blanket Joint Venture Endorsement must be obtained from the General Liability and Contractor's Pollution Legal Liability carriers of each joint venture partner for a period of 6 years after completion of the Project, substantially as follows:

With respect to "your work", and the "products-completed operations hazard", you are an insured for your liability arising out of the conduct of any partnership or joint venture of which you were a partner or member, even though this partnership or joint venture is not shown as a Named Insured in the Declarations. This coverage is excess over any available liability purchased specifically to insure the partnership or joint venture. This coverage will not inure to the benefit of any other party except you."

5.4 INDEMNIFICATION

The Contractor, to the fullest extent not expressly prohibited by law, shall defend, indemnify, and save harmless the Owner, the Designer, the Construction Manager and their respective officials, officers, employees, and agents from and against any and all liabilities (foreseeable or unforeseeable), penalties, fines, forfeitures, demands, claims, causes of actions, suits, judgments, and costs and expenses incidental thereto, (including, without limitation, amounts paid pursuant to investigations, defense or settlements, and reasonable attorneys' fees), which any or all of them may hereafter suffer, incur, be responsible for, or pay out as a result of but not limited to:

a) bodily injury (including sickness, disease, or death) to any person including but not limited to, the Contractor's employees or its representatives while on the site of the Project; or

b) actual or alleged damage (including loss of use) to any property (public or private, including the Project or other property on the Project site); or

c) contamination of or adverse effects on the environment arising directly or indirectly out of or in connection with the performance of the Work, including but not limited to any hazardous or toxic waste, substance, or constituent of any substance subject to regulation under CERCLA, RCRA, TSCA, and other Federal and state authorities that is spilled, released, threatening to release, or disposed of or destroyed by the Contractor or its Subcontractors on or off the site of the Project or while in transport to or from the site; or

d) any violation or alleged violation of laws and regulations, arising out of or in any way connected with the Work,

caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, any Subcontractor or supplier or any representatives of the Contractor. The Contractor shall not be required to indemnify the Owner against losses resulting from a breach of this Agreement by the Owner or its other agents and contractors, or resulting from negligence, misconduct or violation of laws on the part of the Owner or its other agents and contractors.

The Contractor further agrees to obtain, maintain, and pay for such liability insurance coverages and endorsements as will insure the provisions of this paragraph. Furthermore, the Contractor agrees to be liable for and to indemnify and reimburse the Owner for all legal fees and disbursements paid or incurred to enforce the provisions of this paragraph. The indemnification obligations under this paragraph shall not be limited in any way by the amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable under worker's compensation acts, disability benefit acts, other employment benefit acts, or the amount of insurance carried or recovered.

The Owner acknowledges that hazardous or toxic waste, material, chemicals, compounds or substances, or other environmental hazards, contamination or pollution, (referred to hereinafter as “environmental hazards”) may be present at the Project site that were not created, generated, or released at the Project site by the Contractor or its Subcontractors, agents or employees, acting alone or in concert with others. Unless the remediation, abatement or handling of such environmental hazards is part of the scope of the Work under this Agreement, then upon the discovery of such environmental hazards, the Contractor shall immediately, and in no event more than three days later, give notice to the Owner of the environmental hazards before they are disturbed. The Owner and the Designer shall thereupon promptly investigate the environmental hazards, and make such changes in the Drawings and/or Specifications as they may find necessary to abate, remediate, isolate or handle the environmental hazards. Any increase or decrease in the Contract Price or the Contract Time resulting from such changes shall be adjusted in the manner provided herein for adjustments as to extra and/or additional Work and changes. It is agreed that the Contractor shall have no liability under this Agreement for any environmental hazards existing prior to the date that Work commences under this Agreement unless the Contractor or its Subcontractors, agents or employees, acting alone or in concert with others, by their own negligence or misconduct, release or expose the Owner or third parties to the environmental hazards.

The provisions of this paragraph shall survive the termination or cancellation or completion of this Agreement.

ARTICLE 6. OTHER RECORD DOCUMENTS AND SUBMITTALS

6.1 The Designer shall furnish to the Contractor the number of copies of Drawings and Specifications stated in the Supplementary General Conditions. Additional copies of Drawings and Specifications may be obtained at the cost of reproduction and handling.

6.2 The Contractor shall submit to the Designer all Submittals required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall submit three (3) reproducible prints of all shop drawings plus the number of copies sufficient for his requirements. The Contractor shall submit samples in quantities required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall submit product data in five (5) copies, plus the number of copies sufficient for the Contractor’s

requirements. All shop drawings shall be reviewed by the Contractor and shall bear the Contractor's stamp of approval before being forwarded to the Designer. Submittals shall be submitted in such time as to cause no delay to the Work or any part thereof and in accordance with the Contract Construction Schedule and Submittal Register. The Designer shall review the submittal with reasonable promptness, noting desired corrections, if any. The Designer shall retain two (2) copies of the submittal and shall return the balance of the reviewed submittal to the Contractor for action. The Contractor shall furnish any corrected submittal to the Designer. The Designer shall retain two (2) copies of the corrected submittal and will return the balance of the reviewed submittal to the Contractor.

No substitutions will be accepted after the bids have been received. All substitutions prior to the receipt of bids shall be in accordance with the Contract Documents. Refer to Instructions to Bidders, Paragraph 3, Substitutions.

The Contractor acknowledges that the processing of shop drawings and other submittals is directly impacted by the clarity, completeness, and accuracy of said documents and that it is the Contractor's responsibility to (i) review and coordinate each submittal with all other related or affected Work and (ii) approve each submittal before submitting same to the Designer for approval.

6.3 No substitutions and no deviations from any requirement of the Contract Documents shall be deemed allowed unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Designer and the Owner in writing of such deviations at the time of submittal and the Designer and the Owner have given written and specific approval to the substitutions or deviations. In proposing a deviation or substitution the Contractor warrants to the Owner, notwithstanding any review, allowance or approval by the Designer or the Owner that the deviation or substitution is at least equal to or better in quality and for the purpose intended, and that Contractor shall not by reason of any such review, allowance or approval be relieved from any obligation or responsibility contained in the Contract Documents.

6.4 Review of submittal by the Designer shall not be construed as relieving the Contractor from responsibility for compliance with terms or designs of the Contract Documents nor from responsibility for errors of any sort in the submittal.

6.5 The Contractor shall keep one record copy marked "As-Built" of all Specifications, Drawings, Addenda, Modifications, and Submittals at the Project in good order and annotated at least monthly to show all changes made during the construction process. Such monthly annotations and their approval by the Designer shall be a condition precedent to approval by the Designer of each monthly Request for Payment. Said record copy shall be stored at the Project and fully protected from damage by fire or other hazard. This record copy shall be available to the Designer and Owner for inspection at all times and shall be delivered to the Designer for the Owner's purposes prior to the Designer's certifying Substantial Completion of the Work.

6.6 At completion of the Project and before Final Payment, the Contractor shall assemble and deliver to the Owner one complete set of all as-built drawings and one complete set of all approved submittals, product data, and samples which were reviewed by the Designer. These drawings and submittals shall be on paper, or in electronic or other media if required

by the Supplementary Conditions. These drawings and submittals shall be categorized and packaged as directed by the Designer.

ARTICLE 7. CONTRACTOR

7.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work efficiently and with the Contractor's best skill and attention. Except as may be set forth specifically in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be solely responsible for the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction, and for safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work. The Contractor shall be responsible to see that the finished Work complies accurately with the Contract Documents.

7.2 The Contractor shall appoint a Project Manager and shall keep on the Project at all times during its progress a competent Resident Superintendent and necessary assistants who shall not be replaced without prior written approval by the Owner except under extraordinary circumstances, in which event immediate written notice shall be given to the Designer and the Owner. The Project Manager and the Resident Superintendent may be the same person or different persons. At any time, the Owner, in its sole and absolute discretion, may require the Contractor to replace the Project Manager or Resident Superintendent with an experienced and competent person or persons upon seven (7) days written notice from the Owner to the Contractor. Such replacement shall be at the Contractor's expense and at no cost to the Owner.

Both the Project Manager and the Resident Superintendent shall have authority to act on behalf of the Contractor, and instructions, directions or notices given to either of them shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

7.3 The Contractor shall provide sufficient competent and suitably qualified personnel, equipment, and supplies to lay out the Work and perform construction as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor will at all times maintain good discipline and order at the site, and will comply with all applicable OSHA standards.

Any person employed by the Contractor, any Subcontractor, or any sub-subcontractor who, in the opinion of the Designer or the Owner, does not perform his Work in a proper and skillful manner or is intemperate or disorderly shall, at the written request of the Owner or Designer, be removed forthwith by the Contractor, Subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor employing such person without cost to the Owner, and shall not be employed again in any portion of the Work without the written approval of the Owner or Designer.

Should the Contractor fail to remove such person or persons or fail to furnish suitable and sufficient personnel for the proper prosecution of the Work within three (3) days after written order, the Owner may withhold further payment by written notice until compliance with such order.

7.4 If, in the opinion of the Designer or the Owner, any Subcontractor on the Project is incompetent or otherwise unsatisfactory, he shall be replaced by the Contractor with no increase in the Contract Price if and when directed by the Designer or the Owner in writing.

7.5 The Contractor shall furnish all materials, equipment, labor, transportation, construction equipment and machinery, tools appliances, fuel, light, heat, and all other facilities and incidentals necessary for the execution, maintenance, initial operation, and completion of the Work, other than those specifically excluded by the Contract Documents and to be furnished by the Owner or others. When use or storage of hazardous materials or equipment or methods of more than ordinary risk are necessary in accomplishing the Work, the Contractor shall give the Owner and Designer reasonable advance notice.

If any materials are to be furnished or installed by the Owner or others under the terms of the Contract Documents, said materials shall be made available to the Contractor at the location(s) specified in the Contract Documents. All costs of handling, transportation from the specified location to the Project, storage, and installing of Owner-furnished materials shall be included in the Contract Price. The Contractor shall be responsible for any demurrage, damage, loss, or other deficiencies which may occur during the Contractor's handling, storage, or use of such Owner-furnished material. The Owner shall deduct from any monies due or to become due the Contractor any cost incurred by the Owner in making good any such damage, loss, or deficiency.

All equipment which is proposed to be used in the Work shall be of sufficient size and in such mechanical condition as to meet the requirements of the Work and produce a satisfactory quality of work. Equipment used on any portion of the Work shall be such that no injury to previously completed Work, adjacent property, or existing facilities shall result from its use.

When the methods and equipment to be used by the Contractor accomplishing the Work are not prescribed in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be free to use any methods or equipment that will accomplish the Work in conformity with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

When the Contract Documents specify the use of certain methods and equipment, such methods and equipment shall be used unless others are authorized by the Designer. If the Contractor desires to use a method or type of equipment other than specified in the Contract Documents, the Contractor may request authority from the Designer to do so. The request shall be in writing and shall include a full description of the methods and equipment proposed and of the reasons for desiring to make the change. If approval is given, it shall be on the condition that the Contractor shall be fully responsible for producing Work in conformity with the requirements of the Contract Documents. If, after trial use of the substituted methods or equipment, the Designer determines that the Work produced does not meet the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall discontinue the use of the substitute method or equipment and shall complete the remaining Work with the specified methods and equipment at no additional cost to the Owner. The Contractor shall remove any deficient Work and replace it with Work of specified quality, or take such other corrective action as the Designer may direct. No change in the Contract Price or in Contract Time shall be made as a result of authorizing a change in methods or equipment under this paragraph.

7.6 All materials and equipment shall be new, except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents. When special makes or grades of material which are normally packaged by the supplier or manufacturer are specified or approved, such materials shall be delivered to the Project site in their original packages or containers with seals unbroken and labels intact.

Materials shall be so stored as to assure the preservation of their quantity, quality and fitness for the Work. Stored materials, even though approved before storage, may again be inspected by the Designer or Owner prior to their use in the Work and shall meet the requirements of the Contract Documents at the time they are incorporated into the Work. Stored materials shall be located so as to facilitate their prompt inspection. The Contractor shall coordinate the storage of all materials with the Designer and the Owner. Materials to be stored at the Project or on the Owner's property shall not create an obstruction to the Owner's or other contractor's reasonable activities. Private property shall not be used for storage purposes without written permission of the owner or lessee of such property. The Contractor shall make all arrangements and bear all expenses for the storage of materials on private property. Upon request, the Contractor shall furnish the Owner a copy of the property owner's permission. All storage sites on private or the Owner's property shall be restored to their original condition by the Contractor at his entire expense, except as otherwise agreed to (in writing) by the owner or lessee of the property.

7.7 All materials and equipment shall be applied, installed, connected, erected, used, cleaned and conditioned in accordance with the instructions of the applicable manufacturer, fabricator, or processor, except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents.

7.8 The Contractor will be fully responsible for all acts and omissions of his Subcontractors and of persons directly or indirectly employed by them and of persons for whose acts any of them may be liable to the same extent that the Contractor is responsible for the acts and omissions of the Contractor’s own employees. Nothing in the Contract Documents shall create any contractual relationship between any Subcontractor or supplier and the Owner or the Designer, or any obligation on the part of the Owner or the Designer to pay or see to the payment of any money due any such Subcontractor or material furnisher except as may otherwise be required by law. The Owner or the Designer may furnish to any Subcontractor or supplier, to the extent practicable, evidence of amounts paid to the Contractor on account of specific Work done.

7.9 The divisions and sections of the Specifications and the identifications of any Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors.

7.10 The Contractor agrees to bind specifically every Subcontractor to the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents for the benefit of the Owner and to furnish written evidence thereof to the Designer and the Owner within seven (7) days after written request by the Owner.

7.11 The Contractor shall attend job progress conferences and all other meetings or conferences as directed by the Designer. The Contractor shall be represented at these job progress conferences by a representative having the authority of the Project Manager and by such other representatives as the Designer may direct. Job progress conferences shall be open to Subcontractors, suppliers and any others who may contribute beneficially toward maintaining required job progress, and such personnel shall be encouraged by the Contractor to attend. It shall be the principal purpose of job progress conferences to effect coordination, cooperation and assistance in every practical way toward the end of maintaining progress of the Project on schedule and to complete the Work and the Project by the specified Completion Dates. The Contractor shall be prepared to assess progress of the Work as required in the Contract Documents and to recommend remedial measures for

correction of progress as may be appropriate. The Designer shall preside as chairman and arrange for minutes to be taken and circulated.

In the event that the prosecution of the Work is discontinued for any reason, the Contractor shall notify the Designer and the Owner at least forty-eight (48) hours in advance of resuming operations.

Should the terms of the Contract Documents require completion of one or more portions of the Work for the Beneficial Occupancy of the Owner prior to completion of the entire Work, the Contractor shall complete such portion(s) of the Work on or before the date specified. Such completion shall include the obtaining of all government or other permits, permission, and/or approvals necessary to occupancy. The Contractor shall independently estimate the difficulties involved in arranging the Work to permit such Beneficial Occupancy and shall not claim any additional compensation or time extension by reason of any delay or increased cost due to completing such portion(s) of the Work. The Owner's possession and use of such portion(s) of the Work shall not be deemed an acceptance of any Work not completed in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for the security, maintenance, utilities, and insurance of all portions of the Work completed and beneficially occupied by the Owner.

7.12 The Contractor shall pay all license fees and royalties, and assume all costs incident to the use of any invention, design process, or device which is the subject of patent rights or copyrights held by others, except for inventions, design processes, or devices specified by the Designer in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, the Designer, and anyone directly employed by either of them, from and against all claims, damages, losses and expenses, including attorney's fees and costs of defense, arising out of any infringement or alleged infringement of such rights during or after completion of the Work, and shall defend all such claims in connection with any actual or alleged infringement of such rights.

7.13 The Contractor shall secure and pay for all permits, including without limitation construction permits and licenses, and will pay all governmental charges and inspection fees necessary for the prosecution of the Work.

7.14 The Contractor shall give all notices and comply with all laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations applicable to the Work and shall protect and indemnify the Owner and the Owner’s officers, agents, or servants against any claim or liability arising from or based on the violation of any such law, ordinance, regulation, order, or decree, whether by the Contractor or by the Contractor’s employees, Subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, or their employees.

7.15 The Contractor shall be responsible for the entire site of the Project and for its reasonable and necessary protection and security, as required by laws or ordinances governing such conditions, or by custom or sound construction practices, and shall share such responsibilities as may be agreed upon among them, or in the absence of such agreement, as may be directed by the Contract Documents, Owner, or Designer. The Contractor shall be responsible for any damage to the Owner's property, or that of others, by the Contractor or the Contractor’s employees, Subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, or their employees or

agents, and shall make good such damages. The Contractor shall be responsible for and pay for any such claims against the Owner.

7.16 The Contractor shall protect all landscaping designated to remain in the vicinity of the operations and barricade all walks, roads, and areas as necessary to keep the public away from the construction.

7.17 The Contractor shall provide cover and/or protect all portions of the Work and provide all materials necessary to protect the Work whether performed by the Contractor or any of the Subcontractors or sub-subcontractors. Any Work damaged through the lack of proper protection, or from any other cause, shall be repaired or replaced without extra cost to the Owner or extension to the Contract Time.

The Contractor shall maintain the Work during construction and until the Work is accepted. This maintenance shall constitute continuous and effective effort prosecuted day by day, with adequate equipment and forces so that the Work is maintained in satisfactory condition at all times. All costs of maintenance shall be included in the Contract Price and the Contractor will not be paid an additional amount for such effort. Should the Owner or Designer observe that the Contractor at any time has failed to maintain the Work as provided herein, the Designer may immediately notify the Contractor of such non-compliance. Such notification shall specify a reasonable time within which the Contractor shall be required to remedy such unsatisfactory maintenance condition. Should the Contractor fail to properly respond to the Designer's notification, the Owner may, at the Contractor's expense, take such action as it may deem appropriate to remedy the defective maintenance, including suspension of the Contractor's Work or any part thereof. Any such expense incurred by the Owner shall be deducted from monies due or to become due the Contractor.

Parking lots, streets, and walks connecting to the Project area shall be protected by the Contractor from deposits of mud, sand, stone, litter, or debris in any form.

Pedestrian traffic areas around the construction limits must be maintained in a clean and safe condition at all times with required barricades and covered walkways. When excavation or other operations outside the Project limits is required, the Contractor shall, immediately following that work, return the area to its original condition.

All catch basins and storm drain lines in the vicinity of the Project site shall be protected at all times from entry of dirt, rubble and other debris. The residue from the cleaning of trucks, wheelbarrows, concrete buggies, etc. must be prevented from entering the drainage system, and if cleaning is done, the residue must be contained and removed from the Project site with other refuse.

7.18 No burning of refuse or debris shall be allowed inside or around the Project during the course of construction without written authority from authorities having jurisdiction and the Owner.

7.19 The Contractor shall provide for and maintain necessary safety measures and safety programs for the protection of all persons involved with the Work. Such measures and programs shall include the requirements of the most current edition of the CAGC Safety and Health Manual [or the AGC Accident Prevention Manual in Construction], or equivalent requirements, and shall fully comply with all Federal, State, and local laws, rules, regulations,

and building code requirements relating to the prevention of accidents or injuries to persons on or about the location of the Work.

All trenches, excavations, or other hazards in the vicinity of the Work shall be well barricaded, and properly lighted at night. When Work requires closing of an area normally used by the Owner or the public, the Contractor shall furnish, erect, and maintain temporary barricades, and properly light the area. The Contractor shall comply with any directions and public authorities in this respect.

7.20 The Contractor shall designate a responsible officer or employee as safety inspector, whose duties shall include accident prevention on the Project as well as implementation of the Contractor's safety measures and safety programs on the Project. The name of the safety inspector shall be made known to the Designer and the Owner at the pre-construction conference.

7.21 In emergencies affecting the safety of persons, the Work, or property at the Project site or adjacent thereto, the Contractor is obligated to act in the Contractor's discretion to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. As soon as practicable, the Contractor shall notify the Designer and Owner of such emergency. The Contractor shall give the Designer and the Owner prompt written notice of any significant changes in the Work or deviations from the Contract Documents caused by such emergency. If the Contractor believes that additional work done in an emergency entitles the Contractor to an increase in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a claim therefore as provided in Articles 14 and/or 15.

7.22 The Contractor shall at all times keep the premises free from accumulation of waste materials or rubbish caused by the Work. At least weekly and at the completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove all waste materials and rubbish from and about the Project. At the completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove all tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials. The Contractor shall leave the Work in condition for occupancy by the Owner such that no cleaning or other operations are required. Material cleared from the Project and deposited on adjacent property shall not be considered as having been disposed of satisfactorily. If the Contractor fails to keep the Project clean of waste materials or rubbish, fails to satisfactorily clean-up weekly or at the completion of the Work, the Owner may do so and the costs thereof may be deducted from any amounts due the Contractor.

7.23 Utilities, temporary facilities, and signs shall be provided as described in the Contract Documents. Absent a contrary direction in the Supplementary Conditions, the Contractor shall pay all bills for water, electricity, or other public utility service to the Project site.

7.24 The Contractor shall indemnify and hold the Owner, the Designer, the Designer's consultants, and their officers, agents, and employees harmless against all costs, damages, and expenses, including attorney's fees and costs of defense, arising out of claims by any separate contractor or by any Subcontractor, sub-subcontractor, or supplier engaged by or employed by the Contractor or employed by any of the Subcontractors claiming through him, including without limitation damages, losses, and expenses arising out of or relating to any inconvenience, delay, interference, or other action or non-action of the Contractor or the Contractor's Subcontractors on the Project.

The Contractor acknowledges that should the Contractor or any of the Contractor's Subcontractors be damaged by any breach of contract by any other separate prime contractor on the Project, the Contractor may invoke applicable dispute resolution procedures with said other separate prime contractor or bring a direct civil action against said other separate prime contractor. The Contractor hereby expressly agrees that neither the Owner nor its officers, agents, or employees shall have any liability of any kind or nature whatsoever to the Contractor, its Subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, or suppliers arising out of or relating to any breach, inconvenience, delay, interference, or other action or non-action by any other separate prime contractor. The Contractor covenants not to sue the Owner for any loss or damage caused by any breach, inconvenience, delay, interference, or other action or non-action by any other separate prime contractor, notwithstanding whatever rights at law the Contractor might have to bring a civil action against the Owner for any breach, inconvenience, delay, interference, or other action or non-action of any other separate prime contractor. The Contractor agrees to look exclusively to the other prime contractor for relief or remedy.

Nothing contained herein or appearing anywhere in the Contract Documents shall obligate or require the Owner to exercise any right or privilege, or to take any action or to refrain from taking any action under any contract it may have with any other prime contractor or party to the Project for the benefit of the Contractor or any Subcontractor, sub-Subcontractor, or supplier claiming through the Contractor.

7.25 Prior to completion of the Work and Final Payment of the Contract Price, excepting only those portions of the Work deemed accepted in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall have charge and care of the Work, and shall take every precaution against injury or damage to any part due to the action of the elements or from any other cause, whether arising from the execution or from the non-execution of the Work. The Contractor shall as required by the Owner replace, rebuild, repair, restore, and make good all injury or damage to any portion of the Work occasioned by any of the above causes before Final Completion and shall bear the expenses thereof.

7.26 In the event that the Work, or any portion thereof, is suspended at any time pursuant to an order of the Owner, the Contractor shall obey all instructions of the Owner regarding storage of materials, drainage, protection of the Work, and erection of temporary structures during the suspension period.

7.27 The Project Expediter for the Project shall be responsible for the coordination of the Work of itself and any other separate contractors, both as to space and time. The Project Expediter shall coordinate the implementation of the Contract Construction Schedule, all construction activities and close-out of the Project, including but not limited to all testing, inspection, certifications, and approvals required by public agencies.

The Contractor and the Project Expediter shall each be required to notify the Designer and the Owner promptly of any event or condition which could affect the conduct or progress of the Work and shall cooperate fully with all other contractors on the Project site.

7.28 The Owner hereby delegates to the Project Expediter all of its duties to coordinate and to expedite the Work not expressly reserved to the Owner by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

7.29 All Work performed pursuant to the Contract Documents shall conform in all respects to the North Carolina State Building Code and all other state, local, and national codes in effect at the time of and applicable to this Work.

7.30 The Contractor shall provide for and maintain necessary safety measures and safety programs for the protection of all persons at the Project site, and shall comply at all times with the requirements of the most current edition of the CAGC Safety and Health Manual [or the AGC Accident Prevention Manual in Construction], or the equivalent requirements of the Contractor's safety program, and shall fully comply with all Federal, State, and local laws, rules, regulations, and building code requirements so as to prevent accidents or injuries to persons on or about the Project site. The Contractor shall clearly mark or post signs warning of existing hazards, and shall barricade excavations, elevator shafts, stairways, and similar hazards. The Contractor shall protect against damage or injury resulting from falling materials, and shall maintain all protective devices and signs throughout the progress of the Work.

7.31 The Contractor shall adhere to the rules, regulations, and interpretations of the North Carolina Department of Labor's Occupational Safety and Health Standards for the Construction Industry (29 CFR Part 1926 as adopted in 13 NCAC 07F.0201, including 29 CFR Part 1910 General Industry Safety and Health Standards applicable to construction) and N.C. Gen. Stat. §95-126 through 155 (Occupational Safety and Health) as well as all revisions and amendments to such standards or statutes as may occur throughout the performance of the Work.

7.32 Any land disturbing activity performed by the Contractor in connection with the Project shall comply with all erosion control measures set forth in the Contract Documents and any additional measures which may be required in order to ensure that the Project is in full compliance with the Sedimentation Pollution Control Act of 1973, as implemented by Title 15 North Carolina Administrative Code, Chapter 4, Sedimentation Control, Subchapters 4A, 4B and 4C, as amended (15 NCAC 4A, 4B, and 4C), and as may be revised or amended in the future. Upon receipt of notice that a land-disturbing activity is in violation of said Act, the Contractor shall be responsible for ensuring that all steps or actions necessary to bring the Project in compliance with said Act are promptly taken. The Contractor shall be responsible for all penalties assessed pursuant to N.C. Gen. Stat. 113A-64 with respect to its Work, and shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner from all costs and expenses, including attorney's fees and costs of defense arising out of or related to the enforcement of the Act against any party or person described in this Article.

7.33 Any mechanical or electrical work such as sleeves, inserts, chases, etc. located in the Work of the Contractor for general work shall be built in by that Contractor. On multiple prime projects, the mechanical and electrical contractors shall set all sleeves, inserts, and other devices built into the structure in cooperation and under the supervision of the Contractor for general work. The responsibility for exact location of such items shall be that of the mechanical, plumbing, or electrical prime contractor.

7.34 The Contractor shall be responsible for permanently fixed service facilities and systems in use during progress of the Work and shall strictly adhere to the following procedures:

a) Prior to acceptance of the Work by the Owner, the Contractor shall remove and replace any part of the permanent building systems damaged through use during construction.

b) Temporary filters shall be installed in each of the heating and air conditioning units, return air grilles, and other locations to prevent intrusion of dust, dirt, and debris during construction. Temporary filters shall be removed and replaced with new filters immediately prior to Substantial Completion.

c) Extra effort shall be maintained to keep the building clean and under no circumstances shall air systems be operated if finishing operations are creating dust in excess of what would be considered normal if the building were occupied.

d) When the permanent lighting system is used during construction, lamps shall be replaced and shall be new on the date of Substantial Completion.

ARTICLE 8. OWNER

8.1 The Owner shall issue communications and notices to the Contractor through the Designer to the extent contemplated by the Contract Documents.

8.2 In case of termination of the employment of the Designer, the Owner shall appoint as Designer a qualified person who shall have and assume all rights and duties held by the original Designer.

8.3 The Owner shall have the right to take possession of and use any portion of the Work notwithstanding the fact that the time for completion of such portion of the Work may not have expired, but such taking possession and use shall not be deemed an acceptance of any Work not completed in accordance with the Contract Documents.

8.4 A waiver on the part of the Owner of any breach of any part of the Contractor shall not be held to be a waiver of any other or subsequent breach.

8.5 The Owner shall pay all permanent acreage fees, governmental impact fees, and meter deposits for permanent utilities.

ARTICLE 9. CONSTRUCTION MANAGER

9.1 The Owner may employ one or more Construction Managers for the purpose of assisting the Owner, Designer, and Contractor in developing and administering budgets and cost controls, in evaluating constructability and value engineering proposals, in establishing and maintaining a critical path method (CPM) schedule, in coordinating and/or expediting the Work with other projects being constructed by the Owner or others adjacent or near the Work, or for such other purposes as the Owner may deem appropriate. From time to time the Owner may identify such Construction Managers(s) to the Contractor in writing identifying any tasks assigned to such Construction Managers(s).

ARTICLE 10. DESIGNER

10.1 The Designer is charged with the responsibility of interpretation of the Contract Documents. The Designer's decisions relating to aesthetic matters shall be final.

10.2 All Work completed under the Contract Documents shall be subject to review by the Designer. No Work is to be covered without the Designer's review or prior authorization. Any Work so covered without the Designer's review or prior authorization shall be uncovered at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor shall notify the Designer in writing at least twenty-four (24) hours in advance of covering any Work.

10.3 The Designer shall not be responsible for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, procedures, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto, and shall not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, but shall be entitled to enforce any requirements in the Contract Documents specifying particular means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

10.4 The Designer shall be an Owner's representative during the construction period. The duties, responsibilities and authority of the Designer as the Owner's representative during construction are as set forth in the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 11. TESTING AND SURVEYING

11.1 Laboratory and field tests to determine compliance of construction with the Contract Documents shall be made by the Owner or testing consultants employed by the Owner except those required elsewhere in the Contract Documents to be paid for by the Contractor. The costs and expenses of providing samples for and assistance in any testing shall be borne by the Contractor and are included in the Contract Price. Any Work in which untested materials are used without approval or written permission of the Designer shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Work found to be unacceptable or unauthorized will not be paid for and, if directed by the Designer shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Unless otherwise designated, tests in accordance with the cited standard methods of ASTM or other generally recognized or specifically authorized methods which are current on the date of advertisement for bids shall be made at the expense of the Owner; provided, however, in the event that after such testing any Work is found to be defective or does not meet the requirements of the Contract Documents, the costs of retesting such Work and the costs of inspection services shall be paid by the Contractor. Samples shall be taken by a testing laboratory employed by the Owner. All materials being used are subject to inspection, tests, or rejection at any time prior to or during incorporation into the Work. Copies of all Owner test reports will be furnished to the Contractor at his written request. Copies of Contractor test reports shall be furnished to the Designer upon written request.

11.2 The Owner shall have the right to deduct the costs of additional testing as described in paragraph 11.1 from any money due the Contractor; or if no money is due the Contractor, the Owner shall have the right to recover these costs from the Contractor, from its sureties, or from both.

11.3 All layouts and surveying shall be accomplished by properly qualified personnel duly licensed in the State of North Carolina.

ARTICLE 12. SEPARATE CONTRACTS

12.1 It is expressly understood that the Owner may deploy the Owner's own employees or engage other separate prime contractors to perform Work as a part of the Project whose work will be performed simultaneously and sequentially with the performance of the Work by the Contractor. It shall be necessary for the Contractor to coordinate construction activities with such other contractors, particularly with respect to access to work areas, storage of materials, and use of elevators and other common facilities. The Contractor shall diligently and in good faith cooperate with the Owner, the Designer, and all other contractors with respect to such matters and shall regularly and faithfully attend any and all meetings called by the Owner or the Designer with respect to such matters. Any disputes between the Contractor and any other separate prime contractor with respect to such matters shall be resolved in accordance with the claim and dispute resolution procedures in the Agreement.

ARTICLE 13. CONTRACT TIME

13.1 Within fourteen (14) days after receipt of the Construction Agreement by the Contractor for signatures, the Project Expediter shall prepare and submit to the Designer and Owner for review and approval a preliminary progress schedule for the Work pursuant to the requirements stated in the Contract Documents.

13.2 Within fourteen (14) days after initial receipt of the Construction Agreement for signatures the Contractor shall submit to the Designer a Submittal Register listing all Submittals the Contractor is required to make or proposes to make under the Contract Documents, the dates on which the Contractor proposes to make such Submittals and the dates by which the Contractor reasonably requires a response from the Designer with respect to each Submittal. The dates submitted shall be incorporated into the Contract Construction Schedule as Completion Dates when they have been approved or modified by the Owner. The Designer shall not be required to review any Submittal from the Contractor until a Submittal Register acceptable to and approved by the Owner has been submitted by the Contractor.

13.3 Not later than thirty (30) days following execution and delivery of the Construction Agreement by Owner to Contractor, the Owner shall deliver to the Contractor a Notice to Proceed. The Notice to Proceed shall state a commencement date on which it is expected that the Contractor will begin the Work to be performed under the Agreement. The Contract Time shall be measured from said specified commencement date. The commencement date stated in the Notice to Proceed shall not be earlier than three (3) days after the Notice to Proceed is served on the Contractor.

If, other than by mutual agreement, said specified commencement date is more than thirty (30) days after the date of execution and delivery of the Agreement from Owner to Contractor and the Contractor believes said delay justifies an increase in Contract Price and/or an extension of Contract Time, the Contractor may make a claim therefore as provided in Article 14 and/or Article 15.

No Work shall be done prior to the date specified in the Notice to Proceed.

A final Contract Construction Schedule shall be submitted for approval by the Contractor, Designer, and Owner no later than fourteen (14) days after Notice to Proceed. No payments shall be due the Contractor until this schedule is approved by all parties.

13.4 The Contract Construction Schedule is a Contract Document. The Contractor represents that the Contract Construction Schedule has been reviewed in detail, that the Contractor participated in its preparation, that all of the activities which impact, limit, or otherwise affect the time of completion of the Work are shown in the Contract Construction Schedule and that all of the activities of others which impact, limit, or otherwise affect the start, duration, or completion of the Contractor's activities are also shown. The Contractor further represents that the Contractor can and will complete each activity within the time shown for that activity. Time is of the essence with respect to each such activity and Completion Date.

13.5 If the Contractor submits a construction schedule, progress report, or any other document that indicates or otherwise expresses an intention to achieve completion of the Work prior to any Completion Date required by the Contract Documents or prior to expiration of the Contract Time, no liability of the Owner to the Contractor for any failure of the Contractor to so complete the Work shall be created or implied.

13.6 If the Contractor, for reasons beyond the Contractor's control, is delayed in beginning any activity, the Contractor shall, nevertheless, have the same number of days as is shown in the Contract Construction Schedule for the activity, and the affected activity and any succeeding activity that is dependent upon that activity shall be adjusted accordingly; provided that at any time the Owner, by means of a Change Order, may require the Contractor to work overtime, to increase labor forces or to take any necessary or appropriate action to decrease the time required for any activity, and the Contractor shall be entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Price computed in accordance with Article 15 of these General Conditions.

13.7 At any time, the Owner may order the Contractor, on seven (7) days written notice, to begin any activity earlier than the starting date shown on the Contract Construction Schedule.

13.8 Should the Contractor fail to start any activity on the start date shown in the Contract Construction Schedule or as it may have been adjusted in accordance with paragraphs 13.5 or 13.6 above, or become delayed, the Contractor shall, without being entitled to any increase in the Contract Price or other compensation, work overtime, increase labor forces or take such other action as may be necessary or appropriate to complete the activity by the Completion Date shown on the Contract Construction Schedule, or as such Completion Date may have been adjusted.

13.9 The Designer and Owner or his Construction Consultant shall monitor progress of the Work at all times and the Contractor shall cooperate with such monitoring and provide any and all information with respect to the progress of the Work and scheduling as the Owner may reasonably require.

13.10 On a monthly basis, the Contractor shall revise the Contract Construction Schedule, showing any adjustments made in accordance with paragraphs 13.5 or 13.6, above, by any Change Order, the progress of the Work, and any days gained or days lost with respect to any activity, and shall furnish copies thereof to the Owner and Designer.

13.11 Should any monthly revision of any Contract Construction Schedule show that the Contractor is behind on any activity, the late completion of which could delay Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner shall be entitled to withhold from the next Progress Payment due the Contractor an amount not exceeding the amount the Owner would be entitled to in Liquidated Damages, should Substantial Completion be delayed by the same number of days that the Contractor is currently behind schedule. If, subsequently, the Contractor's progress, as shown by any succeeding monthly revision to the Contract Construction Schedule, is such that the anticipated delay no longer exists, the Owner shall pay with the Progress Payment next due to the Contractor such amounts as have been withheld in accordance with this paragraph.

13.12 The Owner shall have the right to perform Work, hire and employ labor and craftsmen, rent equipment, subcontract with other parties, or do anything that the Owner deems necessary or appropriate to remedy or cure any delay by the Contractor in the progress of the Work. Such action by the Owner shall not, in any way, affect, void or limit any warranty, guaranty or other responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents. Such action may be taken by the Owner only after three (3) days written notice to the Contractor. All costs incurred by the Owner in taking any such action shall be charged to the Contractor and deducted from any amounts remaining due under the Agreement.

13.13 The Contractor may be entitled to an extension of the Contract Time (but no increase in the Contract Sum) for delays arising from unforeseen causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Owner, the Contractor or the Contractor's Subcontractors as follows:

a) Labor disputes and strikes that directly impact the critical path activities of the Contract Construction Schedule;

b) Acts of God, tornado, fire, hurricane, blizzard, earthquake, typhoon, or flood that damage completed Work or stored materials.

c) Acts of the public enemy; acts of the State, Federal, or local government in their sovereign capacities.

d) Abnormal inclement weather as defined in Article 13.14.

13.14 On any day that the Contractor considers that the Project is delayed by adverse weather conditions, the Contractor shall identify in writing to the Designer and the Owner the adverse weather conditions affecting each activity, the specific nature of the activity affected, the number of hours lost, and the number of and identity (by responsibility or trade) of workers affected and shall obtain from the Designer written recognition of the delay. The time for performance of this Contract includes an allowance for a number of calendar days which may not be suitable for construction Work by reason of adverse weather. The Contract Time will be extended only if the number of calendar days of adverse weather recognized by the Designer exceeds the number of inclement weather days set forth below, and the Contractor demonstrates how this adverse weather impacts activities on the critical path of the Contract Construction Schedule.

Month	Number of Inclement Weather Days
January	10
February	10
March	10
April	9
May	10
June	9
July	11
August	10
September	8
October	7
November	8
December	9

13.15 If the Contractor believes that the progress of the Work has been adversely affected by adverse weather recognized by the Designer during a particular month, the Contractor shall submit a written request for extension of time to the Designer. Such a request for time extension of the Contract Time shall be submitted by the tenth (10th) day of the month following that month in which the adverse weather is encountered. The request shall include, but is not limited to, the following information:

a) Detailed description of weather's effect on scheduled activities and its net effect on the critical path of the Project, and

b) Weather records from the official weather station nearest the Project site and records of actual observation as contained in daily reports, correspondence, or other documentation.

13.16 The Contractor specifically recognizes that a delay by the Contractor in achieving any Completion Date can have the effect of delaying the Substantial Completion of the Project, that such delay in Substantial Completion of the Project will necessarily cause damages, losses, and expenses to the Owner, including, but not limited to and by way of illustration only, increased capitalized costs and interests for the Project, increased and extended Project overhead, Designer's and Consultant's fees, increased costs of construction, increased and extended operation costs of other facilities, and inefficiency and loss of productivity, and that such damages, losses, and expenses may not be readily identifiable or ascertainable at the time they are incurred or at any time. Therefore, and in recognition of these factors and the likelihood that actual damages from his delay will not be readily ascertainable, the Contractor agrees to pay to the Owner, as Liquidated Damages and not as a penalty, the sum identified in the Supplemental Conditions hereto as the Liquidated Damages per Day, for each day by which the failure to meet any Completion Date shown in the Contract Construction Schedule, adjusted in accordance with this Article, delays the Substantial Completion of the Project.

13.17 The Contractor shall not be entitled to any adjustment in the Contract Price or other compensation from the Owner for any delay in the completion of or progress on the Work that is caused by a force majeure condition or is otherwise not caused by the sole and direct act or omission of the Owner and the Owner’s employees or agents.

13.18 The sum for Liquidated Damages is the amount stipulated in the Supplementary General Conditions per day per Prime Contractor as Liquidated Damages reasonably estimated in advance to cover the losses to be incurred by the Owner by reason of failure of said Contractor(s) to complete the Work within the time specified, such time being in the essence of this contract and a material consideration thereof.

ARTICLE 14. CHANGES IN THE WORK

14.1 Without invalidating the Contract Documents, the Owner may, at any time, or from time to time order additions, deletions, or revisions in the Work. Said additions, deletions, or revisions shall be authorized only by written Change Orders, Construction Change Directives or Field Orders. Upon receipt of a Change Order, Construction Change Directive or Field Order, the Contractor shall proceed with the Work involved. All such Work shall be executed under the applicable conditions of the Contract Documents. If any change causes an increase or decrease in the Contract Price and/or an extension or shortening of the Contract Time, adjustments shall be made as provided in Article 14 and/or Article 15.

In order to expedite the Work and avoid or minimize delay in the Work that might affect the Contract Price or Contract Time, the Designer may issue a Change Order in the form of a Construction Change Directive which when signed by the Owner and Designer, directs the Contractor to proceed promptly with the Work involved. Any claim for an adjustment in Contract Price or Time, if not defined in the Construction Change Directive, shall be promptly made in writing in accordance with the procedures defined in Article 15.2.

14.2 The Designer may authorize minor changes or alterations in the Work not involving change in the Contract Price or in the Contract Time and not inconsistent with the overall intent of the Contract Documents. These may be accomplished by a Field Order. Such alterations shall not invalidate the Contract Documents nor release the surety. If the Contractor believes that any minor change or alteration authorized by the Designer entitles him to an increase in the Contract Price and/or an extension of Contract Time, he may make a claim therefore as provided in Article 14 and/or Article 15.

14.3 Except in an emergency endangering life or property, no change shall be made by the Contractor except upon prior written Change Order, Directive or Field Order authorizing such Change.

14.4 Increases in the Contract Price and/or extensions of the Contract Time for additional Work performed by the Contractor shall only be in accordance with a written Change Order signed by the Owner and Designer. The Contractor shall not be entitled to additional time or to additional compensation for any Work performed or material supplied which is claimed to have been authorized or settled by an "oral" change, or by a "constructive" or "implied" change, or by a course of conduct, or by any action or non-action by the Owner, Designer, or any other persons, or by any means whatsoever other than by a written Change Order for such Work or material signed by the Owner and the Designer.

14.5 Changes in the Work resulting from emergency shall not invalidate the Contract Documents nor release the surety.

14.6 Neither the Owner nor the Designer shall be responsible for verbal instructions which have not been confirmed in writing, and in no case shall such instructions be interpreted as permitting a departure from the Contract Documents unless such instruction is confirmed in writing and supported by a proper Change Order, Construction Change Directive or Field Order, whether or not the cost is affected.

14.7 The Owner, in its sole discretion, may require that the Contractor notify the Contractor's sureties of any changes affecting the general scope of the Work or change in the Contract Price, and that the amount of applicable bonds shall be adjusted accordingly. If this requirement is exercised, the Contractor shall furnish proof of such adjustment to the Designer and the Owner.

If this requirement is exercised, the Change Orders shall require written consent of the Contractor's surety. At the time of signing a Change Order, the Contractor shall be required to certify as follows:

> "I certify that all sureties have been notified that my contract has been altered by the amount of this Change Order, and that a copy of the approved Change Order will be mailed to all sureties upon its receipt by me."

If this requirement is exercised, no payment to the Contractor on account of any Change Order shall become due or payable until written evidence of the surety's consent to the Change Order has been furnished to the Designer and to the Owner, and the furnishing of such written consent is a condition precedent to such payment.

14.8 The Contractor shall support all requests for Change Orders with a detailed cost breakdown showing cost of materials, labor, equipment, transportation, other items, Contractor's overhead and profit, and total cost, in accordance with methods defined in this Article, and, if the request seeks an extension of the Contract Time, with a time-related diagram which demonstrates specifically why an increase in construction time is needed.

14.9 When a request for a Change Order involves a Subcontractor, the Contractor shall provide quotation from same on Subcontractor's letterhead. The Subcontractor's quote shall list materials, equipment, and labor separately, and show overhead and profit in the manner provided in paragraph 14.8.

ARTICLE 15. CHANGE OF THE CONTRACT PRICE

15.1 The Contract Price constitutes the total compensation payable to the Contractor for performing all Work under the Contract Documents. All duties, responsibilities, and obligations assigned to or undertaken by the Contractor shall be at his expense without change in the Contract Price. The Contract Price may only be changed by a Change Order.

15.2 Any claim for an adjustment in the Contract Price shall be in writing and written notice of any event, action, or non-action which may become the basis of a claim shall be delivered to the Owner and the Designer within three (3) days of the occurrence, or the beginning of the occurrence, of any such event, action or non-action giving rise to the claim. Such written notice is a condition precedent to the making of a claim, and such notice shall describe the basis of the potential claim with reasonable detail and clarity.

A claim shall be made in writing and shall be delivered to the Designer and the Owner no later than fourteen (14) days after such notice. The claim shall describe in detail the basis for the claim, with specific reference to any provisions of the Contract Documents, by paragraph, drawing number, or other specific identification, and shall state the amount claimed and how it is calculated. If the Contractor, at the time the claim is made, is unable to state the amount claimed with accuracy, the Contractor shall so state and provide the estimated amount and the basis on which the amount is to be calculated. At the earliest date practicable, but in no event more than thirty (30) days after Contractor's notice of claim, the Contractor shall supplement the claim with an accurate statement of the amount claimed and how it has been calculated. The Contractor shall provide, in writing, in support of the claim all such explanations, arguments, data, receipts, expert opinions, or other documents or information as the Contractor deems appropriate to be considered in support of the claim. A claim may properly be rejected by the Owner by reason of the Contractor's failure to submit adequate or accurate documentation or information, except that within seven (7) days after being given notice that the claim has been rejected on this basis, the Contractor may submit additional documentation or information. No claim for a change of the Contract Price shall be considered or granted (except solely at the discretion of the Owner) unless a claim is so made, nor shall the Contractor be entitled to any increase in the Contract Price unless the Contractor has given notice and made such a written claim within the times required. The Owner shall decide, after obtaining the advice of the Designer, whether an increase in Contract Price is warranted, and the amount of such increase shall be determined as provided in paragraph 15.4 through 15.5, below. Any change in the Contract Price resulting from any such claim shall be incorporated in a Change Order.

The Owner shall advise the Contractor of its decision with respect to the claim within fourteen (14) days of its receipt, or of the receipt of additional documentation or information if the absence of such has previously been the basis of rejection of the claim; provided, however, that if, in its sole discretion, the Owner deems that review or consideration of any part of the claim or any matter related thereto by its governing Board is necessary or appropriate, it shall so advise the Contractor and shall provide its decision to the Contractor within seven (7) days after such Board consideration, review or action. Any claim on which the Owner has not provided its decision to the Contractor within the applicable time period shall be deemed denied.

If the Contractor is not satisfied with the decision of the Owner, the Contractor may within seven (7) days of receipt of the Owner's decision initiate the mediation process as described in Appendix A to the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

15.3 In determining the amount of a Contract Price adjustment, the parties shall apply the following methods, as appropriate:

(A) Change in Work: The Owner and Contractor shall negotiate in good faith and attempt to agree upon the value of any change (extra or decrease) in Work prior to the issuance of a Change Order covering said Work. Such Change Order shall set forth the corresponding adjustment to the Contract Price. In the event the Owner and the Contractor are unable to agree, the Owner shall grant an equitable adjustment in the Contract Price.

(B) Emergency Work: In the event of emergency endangering life or property, the Contractor may be directed by the Designer to proceed on a time and material basis, whereupon the Contractor shall so proceed and keep accurately, in such form as may be required by the Designer, a correct account of costs together with all proper invoices, payrolls, and supporting data therefore.

15.4 Where the Contract Price is to be adjusted, the following limitations shall apply in determining the amount of adjustment:

(A) In the case of extra or emergency work, the Contract Price shall not be increased by more than the reasonable, actual, and documented net cost of the extra or emergency work plus ten percent (10%) of such net cost on Work performed by the Contractor and five percent (5%) thereof on any subcontracted Work for overhead and profit combined.

(B) In the case of a decrease in Work, the Contract Price shall not be decreased by less than the net cost of the deleted Work plus five percent (5%) of such direct net cost for profit and overhead.

The term 'net cost' as used herein shall include, as applicable, and shall be limited to, all direct labor, direct material, direct equipment, labor burden, sales taxes, shipping and handling charges, permits and fees, and insurance and bond premium adjustments, if any, attributable to the change. All other items of cost shall be considered as overhead and covered by the percentages allowed in sections A and B of this paragraph.

The Contractor shall provide worksheets or tabulations describing the method by which the direct net cost was calculated, and shall provide all data needed to support the calculation of the direct net cost, all in a form acceptable to the Owner.

15.5 Where the Contract Price is to be adjusted by negotiation, the Owner may authorize and designate the Designer to negotiate with the Contractor on behalf of the Owner; provided, however, any agreement reached between the Contractor and Designer shall be subject to approval by the Owner.

ARTICLE 16. UNFORESEEN CONDITIONS

16.1 Should the Contractor encounter unforeseen conditions at the Project site materially differing from those shown on the Drawings or indicated in the Specifications or differing materially from those ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in work of the character provided for in this Agreement, the Contractor shall immediately, and in no event more than three days later, give notice to the Owner of such conditions before they are disturbed. The Owner and the Designer shall thereupon promptly investigate the conditions and if they find that they materially differ from those shown on the Drawings or indicated in the Specifications, they shall at once make such changes in the Drawings and/or Specifications as they may find necessary. Any increase or decrease in the Contract Price resulting from such changes shall be adjusted in the manner provided herein for adjustments as to extra and/or additional Work and changes. However, neither the Owner nor the Designer shall be liable or responsible for additional work, costs, or changes to the Work that could have been reasonably determined from any reports, surveys, and analyses made

available for the Contractor's review or that could have been discovered by the Contractor through the performance of its obligations pursuant to the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 17. CORRECTION OF WORK BEFORE FINAL PAYMENT

17.1 The Owner has the authority to stop or suspend work, and the Designer has the authority to order Work removed or to order corrections of defective Work or Work not in compliance with the Contract Documents where such action may be necessary to ensure successful completion of the Work.

Any work, materials, fabricated items, or other parts of the Work which have been found by the Designer to be defective or not in accordance with the Contract Documents shall be condemned and shall be removed from the Project by the Contractor, and immediately replaced by new Work in accordance with the Contract Documents at no additional cost to the Owner. Work or property of the Owner or others damaged or destroyed by virtue of such condemned Work shall be made good at the expense of the Contractor.

Correction of condemned Work described above shall be commenced by the Contractor within twenty-four (24) hours after notice from the Designer or the Owner and shall be pursued to completion. Should the Contractor fail to proceed reasonably with the above-mentioned corrections, the Owner may, three (3) days after the notice specified in the preceding sentence, proceed with correction, paying the cost, including costs of uncovering such condemned Work, of such corrections from amounts due or to become due to the Contractor.

Condemned Work removed shall be the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the Project by him within ten (10) days after notice to remove it, and if not then removed, thereafter may be disposed of by the Owner without compensation to the Contractor and the cost of such disposal shall be deducted from amounts due or to become due to the Contractor.

Should the cost of correction of the Work and, if applicable, disposal of the condemned Work by the Owner exceed amounts due or to become due the Contractor, then the Contractor and the Contractor’s sureties shall be liable for and shall pay to the Owner the amount of such excess.

ARTICLE 18. CORRECTION OF WORK AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION; WARRANTIES AND GUARANTIES

18.1 Neither the final certificate, Final Payment, occupation of the premises by the Owner, nor any provision of the Contract Documents, nor any other act or instrument of the Owner or the Designer shall relieve the Contractor from responsibility for negligence, defective material or workmanship, or failure to comply with the Contract Documents.

18.2 The Contractor shall, at the Contractor’s sole cost and expense, make all necessary repairs, replacements, and corrections of any nature or description, interior or exterior, structural or non-structural, that shall become necessary by reason of defective workmanship or materials which appear within a period of one (1) year from the date of Substantial Completion;

provided, however that notwithstanding the preceding, if any longer guarantee period is specified for any particular materials or workmanship under the Contract Documents, or under any subcontract, or in connection with any manufactured unit which is installed in the Project, or under the laws of the State of North Carolina, the longer guarantee period shall govern.

18.3 If, within any guarantee period, repairs or changes are required in connection with the Work, which are rendered necessary as the result of the use of materials, equipment, or workmanship which are inferior, defective, or not in accordance with the terms of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall, promptly upon receipt of notice from the Designer and without expense to the Owner:

a) Completely repair or replace the Work so that it conforms to the Contract Documents;

b) Correct all defects therein;

c) Make good all damage which, in the opinion of the Designer, is the result of the use of materials, equipment, or workmanship which are inferior, defective, or not in accordance with the terms of the Contract Documents; and

d) Make good any Work or material, or any equipment or contents disturbed in fulfilling any such guarantee.

If, in fulfilling the requirements of the Contract Documents or of any guarantee embraced therein or required thereby, the Contractor disturbs any work, facility, premises, or construction belonging to the Owner, the Contractor shall restore such disturbed work to a condition satisfactory to the Owner, and shall guarantee such restored work to the same extent as if it were Work under the Contract Documents.

If the Contractor, after notice, fails to proceed promptly to comply with the terms of the guarantee, the Owner may have the defects corrected, and the Contractor and the Contractor’s sureties shall be liable for all expenses incurred. "Promptly" is defined as within twenty-four (24) hours for systems necessary to normal operation of the building and within seventy-two (72) hours for all other items. All special guarantees applicable to definite parts of the Work that may be shown in or required by Contract Documents shall be subject to the terms of this paragraph during the first year of the life of such special guarantee. Manufacturer's standard guarantees or warranties which do not comply with the time limit specified herein shall be extended by the Contractor automatically without further action on the part of the Owner or the Designer.

18.4 In the eleventh calendar month after the date of Substantial Completion, and at the request of the Owner, the Contractor, the Owner and the Designer shall make an inspection of the Work for the purpose of identifying defective workmanship and/or materials. If the Contractor, having been requested to do so by the Owner, fails to participate in such inspection, the Contractor shall be conclusively bound by any decision or ruling by the Designer as to any defective workmanship or material and as to the Contractor's responsibility for its repair or replacement.

ARTICLE 19. OWNER'S RIGHT TO DO WORK

19.1 If, during the progress of the Work or during any period of guarantee, the Contractor fails to prosecute the Work properly or to perform any provision of the Contract Documents, the Owner, after three (3) days written notice to the Contractor from the Designer, or from the Owner after Final Payment, may perform or have performed that portion of the Work and may deduct the cost thereof from any amounts due or to become due the Contractor. Notwithstanding any action by the Owner under this paragraph, all warranties and bonds given or to be given by the Contractor shall remain in effect or shall be given by the Contractor.

19.2 Should the cost of such action by the Owner exceed the amount due or to become due the Contractor, the Contractor and his sureties shall be liable for and shall pay to the Owner the amount of such excess.

ARTICLE 20. PARTIAL PAYMENTS

20.1 Within thirty (30) days after his initial receipt of the Construction Agreement for signatures, the Contractor shall submit to the Designer a Schedule of Values. The Schedule of Values shall indicate the value of the Work, including applicable overhead and profit, for each Division and section of the Project Specifications. The Designer and Owner shall be provided with the Contractor's estimate papers, Subcontractor agreements, supplier quotes, or other documents substantiating these values if so requested in writing by the Designer. The Contractor shall provide the requested documentation within seven (7) days after receipt of the Designer's written request. The Schedule of Values shall be subject to approval by the Owner, and if the Owner and the Contractor cannot agree upon the Schedule of Values, the Designer shall prepare it, and the Schedule of Values as prepared by the Designer shall be binding on the Owner and the Contractor. No Request for Payment shall be certified by the Designer until the Designer has issued approval of said Schedule of Values.

20.2 Not later than the fifth (5th) day of each calendar month the Contractor shall submit to the Designer a Request for Payment for Work done during the previous calendar month. The Request for Payment shall be in form of AIA Document G702 (latest edition) and shall show substantially the value of Work done (including the value of material delivered to the Project or stored by the Contractor at another site, subject to the conditions hereinafter set forth) during the previous calendar month, and shall sum up the financial status of the Work with the following information:

a) Total Contract Price, including any adjustment thereto made pursuant to the Contract Documents.

b) Value of Work completed and materials properly stored to date.

c) Less amount retained.

d) Less previous payments.

e) Current amount due.

f) Balance remaining.

The Contractor, upon request of the Designer, shall substantiate the request with invoices, vouchers, payrolls, or other evidence.

20.3 When payment is requested or made on an account of stored materials, such materials must be stored on the Owner's property at such places and in such a manner as may be designated by the Designer. However, in the sole discretion of the Owner, with permission in writing from the Designer and Owner and under such circumstances as may be determined by the Owner, such materials may be stored in a bonded warehouse. The location and conditions for storage of such materials away from the Owner's property in a bonded warehouse shall be within the sole discretion of the Owner. Requests for Payment on account of stored materials shall be accompanied by paid invoices, bills of sale, warehouse receipts, or other documentary evidence establishing Owner's title to such materials, evidence that the stored materials are insured against loss and damage, and such other documentation as required by the Designer. Responsibility for the quantity, quality, and condition of such stored materials, whether stored on the Owner's property or away from the Owner's property, shall remain with the Contractor regardless of ownership or title. No payment shall be made on account of materials stored in a bonded warehouse unless the Contractor has acquired written permission from the Designer for such storage of materials and has complied with all conditions set forth in such permission regarding such storage of materials in a bonded warehouse.

20.4 Any Request for Payment received by the Designer on or before the fifth (5th) of the calendar month shall be certified for payment or returned for re-submission to the Contractor on or before the fifteenth (15th) of the calendar month. The Designer's certification shall be for the amount which was requested or that which the Designer has decided was justly due, and shall state in writing to the Contractor and Owner the reasons for withholding payment of any or all of the amount requested.

20.5 The Designer may fail to certify all or part of any payment requested for any of the following reasons:

a) Defective Work not corrected.

b) Suits, actions, or claims of any character filed against the Contractor, or due to the operations of the Contractor, or information or notice that a suit, action, or claim will be filed or has been made.

c) Information or notice that a Subcontractor or a supplier has not received payment.

d) The balance unpaid of the Contract Price is insufficient to complete the Work in the judgment of the Designer or Owner.

e) Damage to the Owner or another contractor.

f) Inability of the Contractor to meet a Completion Date, including an anticipated failure to meet a Completion Date entitling the Owner to withhold anticipated Liquidated Damages in accordance with paragraphs 13.16 and 13.18 hereof.

g) Failure to furnish Submittal as required by the Contract Documents on a timely basis in accordance with the Submittal Register.

h) Such other reason as to the Designer may appear prudent, proper, or equitable.

When grounds for withholding certification have been corrected, the Designer shall so certify to the Owner and the Owner shall make any payment due with respect to such certification as a part of his next payment after such certification.

20.6 No certificate issued or progress payment made shall constitute an acceptance of the Work or any part thereof.

20.7 The amount certified by the Designer for payment shall be ninety-five percent (95%) of the value of Work completed and materials stored since the Designer's last certification as shown on the Request for Payment, less any amounts not certified in accordance with paragraph 20.4, and this amount shall be paid by the Owner on or before the last business day of the month, but payment shall not be past due until not paid within fifteen (15) days thereafter.

20.8 After certification by the Designer that the Work is fifty percent (50%) complete, based on a determination that the Contractor's gross project invoices, excluding the value of materials stored off-site, equal or exceed fifty percent (50%) of the value of the Contract, (except the value of materials stored on-site shall not exceed twenty percent (20%) of the Contractor's gross project invoices for the purpose of determining whether the Project is fifty percent (50%) complete) and the Contractor has provided to the Owner the written consent of its sureties to the cessation of further percentage retention, the amount certified for payment with respect to subsequent Requests for Payment shall be one hundred percent (100%) of the value of Work completed and materials stored since the Designer's last certification as shown on the Request for Payment, less any amounts not certified in accordance with paragraphs 20.4 and 20.5; provided, however, that the aggregate of periodic payments shall not exceed ninety-seven and one half percent (97.5%) of the Contract Price. If the Owner determines that the Contractor's performance under the Contract is unsatisfactory, the Owner may resume withholding percentage retention from each subsequent periodic payment application up to the maximum amount of five percent (5%) of the Contract Price.

ARTICLE 21. FINAL PAYMENT

21.1 If the Work of the Contractor is limited to demolition, pilings, caissons and/or structural steel, the remaining unpaid balance of the Contractor’s Contract Price, less a sum equal to five-tenths percent (0.5%) of the Contract Price, shall be paid within sixty days following receipt of the following documents, all of which must be received before payment shall become due: (i) request for payment from the Contractor; (ii) receipt of consent from the Contractor’s surety to the payment; and (iii) approval or certification from the Designer that the work performed by the Contractor is acceptable and in accordance with the Contract Documents.

21.2 Except as set forth in paragraph 21.1, within forty five days after Substantial Completion of the Project, the remaining unpaid balance of the Contract Price shall be paid to the Contractor, less an amount equal to two and one-half times the value of punch list work or other work remaining to be completed or corrected, as reasonably estimated by the Owner.

21.3 Upon Substantial Completion, the Designer shall prepare and submit to the Contractor a deficiency list identifying all portions of the Work which are known by the Designer at that time to be incomplete or defective. Within thirty (30) days of receipt of this deficiency list, the Contractor shall complete and correct all items on that list along with all other Work required to achieve Final Completion of the Work. At any time prior to completion of the period of warranty, the Designer may submit to the Contractor a supplemental deficiency list, in which case the Contractor shall complete or correct any and all new items identified on the Supplemental deficiency list within the time period stipulated in paragraph 18.3.

21.4 Final Payment of any remaining balance of the Contract Price shall not be due to the Contractor until the Contractor achieves Final Completion of the Project.

21.5 The making and acceptance of Final Payment shall constitute a waiver of all claims by the Owner except:

a) Claims arising from unsettled liens or claims against the Contractor.

b) Defective Work or materials appearing after Final Payment.

c) Failure of the Contractor to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

d) As conditioned in the Performance Bond.

e) Claims made prior to Final Payment which remain unsettled.

f) Amounts due arising under Articles 18 and 28.

g) Claims for recovery of overpayment based upon incorrect measurement, estimate, or certificate.

21.6 The making and acceptance of Final Payment shall constitute a waiver of all claims by the Contractor except those claims previously made in writing pursuant to paragraph 15.2 and not finally resolved.

21.7 The Designer shall not authorize Final Payment until all of the Work under the Contract Documents has been certified by the Designer as completed, proper and suitable for occupancy and use, and has been approved by all federal, state and local agencies having jurisdiction.

21.8 The final Request for Payment shall be identified on its face as such and shall be presented by the Contractor to the Designer within thirty (30) days of completion of the Work. Final payment of the retained amount due the Contractor shall be made by the Owner within thirty (30) days after the later of (i) full and Final Completion of all Work required by the Contract Documents, and certification of such Work in accordance with paragraph 20.4; (ii) submission of the affidavits of other documentation required by Article 22; (iii) submission by the Contractor of a Request for Payment identified on its face as final and including the Designer's certification.

ARTICLE 22. CONTRACTOR, SUBCONTRACTOR AND SUPPLIER AFFIDAVIT

22.1 The Final Payment due the Contractor on account of the Contract Documents shall not become due until the Contractor has furnished to the Owner through the Designer: (A) an affidavit by the Contractor signed, sworn, and notarized to the effect that all payments for materials, services, or for any other reason in connection with the Work or performance of the Contract Documents have been satisfied and that no claims or liens exist against the Contractor in connection with the same; (B) affidavits from each Subcontractor and supplier signed, sworn, and notarized to the effect that (i) each such Subcontractor or supplier has been paid in full by the Contractor for all Work performed and/or materials supplied by him in connection with the Project, and (ii) that all payments for materials, services, and for any other reason in connection with the subcontract or supply contract have been satisfied and that no claims or liens exist against the Subcontractor or supplier in connection therewith; and (C) the written consent of the Contractor's sureties to Final Payment. In the event that the Contractor cannot obtain an affidavit, as required above, from any Subcontractor or supplier, the Contractor shall state in the Contractor's affidavit that no claims or liens exist against such Subcontractor or supplier to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, and that if any appear afterwards, the Contractor shall save the Owner harmless for all costs and expenses, including attorneys fees, on account thereof.

ARTICLE 23. ASSIGNMENTS AND SUBCONTRACTS

23.1 The Contractor shall not assign any portion of this Agreement nor subcontract the Work in its entirety without the prior written consent of the Owner. Except as may be required under terms of the bonds required by the Contract Documents, no funds or sums of money due or to become due to the Contractor under the Contract Documents may be assigned.

ARTICLE 24. MEASUREMENTS

24.1 Before ordering material or doing Work which is dependent for proper size or installation upon coordination with building conditions, the Contractor shall verify all dimensions and shall be responsible for the correctness of same. No consideration will be given for any claim based on differences between the actual dimensions and those indicated in the Contract Documents. Any discrepancies between the Contract Documents and the existing conditions shall be referred to the Designer for adjustment before any Work affected thereby is begun.

ARTICLE 25. CONTRACTOR AND SUBCONTRACTOR RELATIONSHIPS

25.1 Within thirty (30) days after initial receipt of the Construction Agreement for signatures the Contractor shall submit to the Designer and Owner for acceptance a current list of the names of Subcontractors and such other persons and organizations (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for any and all portions of the Work. The Contractor shall provide this list at this time even if the Contractor was required to submit a list of proposed Subcontractors with the Contractor's bid. The Designer shall promptly reply to the Contractor in writing stating whether or not the Owner or the Designer, after due investigation, has objection to any such proposed person or entity or if it needs additional information to evaluate the persons on the list. Failure of the Designer

to reply within ten (10) days after the Contractor has furnished all required information shall constitute notice of no objection.

The Contractor shall not contract with any such proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or the Designer has made reasonable objection. If the Designer or Owner has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity, the Contractor shall submit a substitute to whom the Owner and the Designer have no reasonable objection. The Contractor shall make no substitution for any Subcontractor, person, or entity previously allowed without first notifying the Designer and Owner in writing and no substitution may be made if the Owner or Designer makes a reasonable objection to such substitution.

25.2 The Contractor agrees that the terms of the Contract Documents, including all portions thereof, shall apply to all Subcontractors of the Contractor as if they were the Contractor, and that the Subcontractors of the Contractor shall, by means of their subcontracts, be bound by all the terms of the Contract Documents including, but not limited to, Article 26 of these General Conditions.

25.3 Payments to Subcontractors shall be made in accordance with the provisions of N.C. Gen. Stat. §143-134.1.

ARTICLE 26. USE OF PREMISES

26.1 The Contractor shall confine apparatus, the storage of materials, the operations of workers, and the disposal of material to limits indicated by law, ordinances, permits, and directions of the Designer, if any.

26.2 The Contractor shall not load or permit any part of the Work to be loaded with a weight that will endanger its safety, intended performance, or configuration.

26.3 The Contractor shall enforce all of the Designer's instructions, including, but not limited to, those regarding signs, advertisements, fires, and smoking.

ARTICLE 27. CUTTING, PATCHING AND FITTING

27.1 The Contractor shall do all cutting, fitting, and patching of the Work that may be required to make its several parts come together properly and fit it to receive or to be received by Work shown in or which can be reasonably implied from the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 28. DISPUTE RESOLUTION

28.1 The laws of the State of North Carolina shall apply to the interpretation and enforcement of this Agreement. Any and all suits or actions to enforce, interpret, or seek damages with respect to any provision of, or the performance or nonperformance of, this Agreement shall be brought in the General Court of Justice of North Carolina sitting in Wake County, North Carolina, and it is agreed by the parties that no other court shall have jurisdiction or venue with respect to such suits or actions. Appendix A shall be a part of the Contract Documents. Prior to initiating an action under this Article, any party to this Agreement shall initiate the

mediation process as provided in Appendix A to these General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

28.2 Any person or firm that expressly or impliedly agrees to perform labor or services or to provide material, supplies, equipment, work, performance or payment bonds, insurance or indemnification for the construction of the Project or the Work shall be deemed a party to this Agreement solely for the purpose of this Article 28. The Contractor, by means of its subcontracts, shall specifically require its Subcontractors to be bound by this Article.

ARTICLE 29. TAXES

29.1 The Contractor has included in the Contract Price and shall pay all taxes assessed by any authority on the Work or the labor and materials used therein. The Contractor shall maintain all tax records during the life of the Project and furnish the Owner with a complete listing of all taxes paid by taxing authority, invoice number, date, amount, etc. in a form acceptable to the Owner. The Contractor is required to maintain a file showing taxes paid on the Project for three (3) years after Final Payment or turn said documents over to the Owner for his files.

29.2 The following is a list of requirements to be followed by the Contractor in maintaining proper records and reporting the North Carolina Sales and Use Tax and Local Sales and Use Tax. The Contractor shall comply fully with the requirements outlined below, in order that the Owner may recover the amount of the tax permitted under the law.

a) It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to furnish the Owner documentary evidence showing the materials used and sales and use tax paid by the Contractor and each of his Subcontractors. Such evidence shall be transmitted to the Owner with each pay request irregardless of whether taxes were paid in that period.

b) The documentary evidence shall consist of a certified statement by the Contractor and each of the Contractor’s Subcontractors individually, showing total purchases of materials from each separate vendor and total sales and use taxes paid to each vendor. Certified statements must show the invoice number, or numbers, covered, and inclusive dates of such invoices.

c) Materials used from Contractor's or Subcontractor's warehouse stock shall be shown in a certified statement at warehouse stock prices.

d) The Contractor shall not be required to certify the Subcontractor's statements.

ARTICLE 30. OPERATION OF OWNER'S FACILITIES

30.1 The Contractor agrees that all Work done under the Contract Documents shall be carried on in such a manner so as to ensure the regular and continuous operation of the adjoining or adjacent facilities. The Contractor further agrees that the sequence of operations under the Contract Documents shall be scheduled and carried out so as to ensure said regular and continuous operation. The Contractor shall not close any areas of construction until so authorized by the Designer. The Contractor shall control operations to assure the least inconvenience to the public. Under all circumstances, safety shall be the most important consideration.

ARTICLE 31. THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY CLAUSE

31.1 It is specifically agreed between the parties executing the Agreement that, with the specific exception set forth paragraph 7.24 hereof, and that exception only, the Contract Documents and the provisions therein are not intended to make the public, or any member thereof, a third-party beneficiary of the Agreement, or to authorize anyone not a party to the Contract Documents to maintain a suit for personal injuries or property damage pursuant to the terms of provisions of the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 32. MEASUREMENT OF QUANTITIES

32.1 All Work completed under the Contract Documents shall be measured by the Contractor using United States customary units of measurement. The method of measurement and computations to be used in determination of quantities of material furnished and of Work performed under the Contract Documents shall be those methods set forth in the Contract Documents or, if not specifically set forth therein, the method generally recognized as conforming to good engineering practice.

ARTICLE 33. TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CAUSE

33.1 If the Contractor fails to begin or complete the Work under the Contract Documents within the time specified, or fails to perform the Work with sufficient labor and equipment or with sufficient materials to insure the prompt completion of said Work, or shall perform the Work unsuitably or shall discontinue the prosecution of the Work for three (3) days, or if the Contractor shall become insolvent, be declared bankrupt, commit any act of bankruptcy or insolvency, allow any final judgment to stand against the Contractor or its affiliated companies unsatisfied for a period of forty-eight (48) hours, make an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or for any other cause whatsoever shall not carry on the Work in an acceptable manner, the Owner may give notice in writing to the Contractor and the Contractor's sureties of such delay, neglect, or default, specifying the same, and if the Contractor within a period of three (3) days after such notice shall not proceed in good faith and with reasonable speed to correct such delay, neglect, or default in accordance with such notice, the Owner shall have full power and authority, to the extent permitted by law, without violating the Contract Documents, to take the prosecution of the Work out of the hands of the Contractor, to appropriate or use any or all materials and equipment at the Project as may be suitable and acceptable, and may enter into an agreement for the completion of the Work or pursue such other methods as in the Owner's opinion shall be necessary or appropriate for the completion of the Work in an acceptable manner. All costs and charges incurred by the Owner in proceeding in accordance with the preceding sentence, including attorney's fees, and all costs incurred by the Owner in completing the Work shall be deducted from any money due or which becomes due the Contractor. If such costs and expenses incurred by the Owner shall be less than the sum which would have been payable under Contract Documents if it had been completed by the Contractor, then the Contractor shall be entitled to receive the difference, but if such costs and expenses shall exceed the sum which would have been payable under the Contract Documents, the Contractor and the Contractor's surety shall be liable to the Owner for and shall pay to the Owner the amount of such excess.

ARTICLE 34. TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION BY THE OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE

34.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor to terminate, suspend, delay, or interrupt the Work in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

34.2 If the Contractor is subsequently ordered by the Owner to resume the Work, any cost or expenses to which the Contractor may be entitled by reason of the suspension, delay, or interruption shall be recovered by means of a Change Order in accordance with Articles 13 and 14 hereof and the Contract Construction Schedule shall be adjusted in accordance with Article 13 hereof.

34.3 The Owner shall terminate the Work or portion thereof by written notice when the Contractor is prevented from proceeding with the Work as a direct result of an executive order of the President with respect to the prosecution of war or in the interest of national defense.

34.4 In the event of termination by the Owner under this Article, the Contractor shall be entitled to receive the reasonable and documented direct costs incurred prior to termination, including the cost of materials purchased for the Work which purchases cannot be canceled or which material cannot reasonably be used by the Contractor on other work, and the cost of closing down the Project in a safe and efficient manner, plus ten percent (10%) thereof for overhead and profit, subject to the following conditions:

a) When the Contract is terminated before completion of all items of Work, payment shall be made for the actual number of units or items of Work completed at the applicable contract prices, or as mutually agreed for items of Work partially complete. If a mutual agreement cannot be reached, the Owner shall have the authority to make such equitable adjustment as it deems warranted and the Final Payment shall be made accordingly.

b) Reimbursement for organization of any Work and moving equipment to and from the job shall be considered when not otherwise provided for in the Contract Documents where the volume of completed Work is too small to compensate the Contractor for those expenses under unit prices. If a mutual agreement cannot be reached, the Owner will have the authority to make such equitable adjustments as it deems warranted and the Final Payment will be made accordingly.

c) Materials obtained by the Contractor for the Work that have been inspected and accepted by the Designer and that are not incorporated in the Work shall, at the request of the Contractor, be purchased from the Contractor at the Contractor's actual cost as shown by receipted bills and actual costs records at such points of delivery as may be determined by the Owner.

d) No payment shall be made by Owner to Contractor except as herein above provided. No claim for loss of anticipated profits shall be considered or allowed.

e) Termination of the Contract shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibilities for any completed portion of the Work nor shall it relieve his sureties of their obligation for and concerning any just claims arising out of the Work performed.

The Contractor shall not be entitled to any other compensation, including compensation for lost profit, lost opportunity, or any other direct or consequential cost, loss, or damage.

ARTICLE 35. GENERAL

35.1 If any provision of the Agreement shall be declared invalid or unenforceable, the remainder of the Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.

35.2 The titles to Articles herein are for convenience only, are not substantive parts of the General Conditions, and are not to be considered in interpreting the Contract Documents.

END OF GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE
CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION

SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS

GENERAL

These Supplementary Conditions contain changes and additions to the project "GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION", as published herein. Where any Article of the General Conditions is modified or any Paragraph, Subparagraph or Clause thereof is modified or deleted by these Supplementary Conditions, the unaltered provisions of the Article, Paragraph, Subparagraph or Clause shall remain in effect.

ARTICLE 1 - DEFINITIONS

Paragraph 1.13: At the end of the existing paragraph, add the following:

The Contract Time is **270** consecutive calendar days, beginning on the Date of Commencement as specified in the written Notice-to-Proceed.

Paragraph 1.18: Delete the last sentence in its entirety and substitute the following in lieu thereof:

"A list of the Drawings is contained in the "Supplementary General Conditions."

The Drawings applicable to this Contract are as follows:

<u>General:</u>	
C0.0	Cover Sheet
C0.1	General Notes
<u>Existing Conditions:</u>	
C1.0	Existing Conditions Key Plan
C1.1	Existing Conditions Enlargement – Mill Pond Pavilion
C1.2	Existing Conditions Enlargement – Mill Access Path
C1.3	Existing Conditions Enlargement – The Mill
C1.4	Existing Conditions Enlargement – Mill Pond Overlook
<u>Demolition:</u>	
C2.0	Demolition Plan Enlargement – Mill Pond Pavilion
C2.1	Demolition Plan Enlargement – Mill Access Path
C2.2	Demolition Plan Enlargement – The Mill
C2.3	Demolition Plan Enlargement – Mill Pond Overlook

Site:	
C3.0	Overall Site Plan
C3.1	Site Plan Enlargement – Mill Pond Pavilion
C3.2	Site Plan Enlargement – Mill Access Path
C3.3	Site Plan Enlargement – The Mill
C3.4	Site Plan Enlargement – Mill Pond Overlook
C3.5	Site Details
C3.6	Site Details
C3.7	Site Details
C3.8	Site Details
C3.9	Site Details
C3.10	Site Details
Civil:	
C4.0	Utility Plan
C4.1	Fire Access and Hose Lay Plan
C5.0	Overall Grading and Drainage Plan
C5.1	Grading and Drainage Plan Enlargement – Mill Pond Pavilion
C5.2	Grading and Drainage Plan Enlargement – Mill Access Path
C5.3	Grading and Drainage Plan Enlargement – The Mill
C5.4	Grading and Drainage Plan Enlargement – Mill Pond Overlook
C6.0	Overall Erosion Control Plan – Phase 1
C6.1	Erosion Control Plan – Phase 1 – Mill Pond Pavilion
C6.2	Erosion Control Plan – Phase 1 – The Mill Access Path
C6.3	Erosion Control Plan – Phase 1 – The Mill
C6.4	Erosion Control Plan – Phase 1 – Mill Pond Overlooks
C6.5	Overall Erosion Control Plan – Phase 2
C6.6	Erosion Control Plan – Phase 2 – Mill Pond Pavilion
C6.7	Erosion Control Plan – Phase 2 – The Mill Access Path
C6.8	Erosion Control Plan – Phase 2 – The Mill
C6.9	Erosion Control Plan – Phase 2 – Mill Pond Overlooks
C6.10	NPDES Stabilization Plan – Mill Pond Pavilion
C6.11	NPDES Stabilization Plan – The Mill Access Path
C6.12	NPDES Stabilization Plan – The Mill
C6.13	NPDES Stabilization Plan – Mill Pond Overlooks
C6.14	Erosion Control Details
C6.15	Erosion Control Details

C6.16	Erosion Control Details
C7.0	Storm and Utilities Details
C7.1	Storm and Utilities Details

Landscape:

L1.0	Landscape Plan Enlargement – Mill Pond Pavilion
L1.2	Landscape Plan Enlargement – Mill Access Path
L1.3	Landscape Plan Enlargement – The Mill
L2.0	Landscape Details
L2.1	Landscape Details

Architectural – Maintenance Building

MB.A0.0	Cover Sheet
MB.A0.1	Appendix B
MB.A0.2	Appendix B Cont'd + Life Safety Plan
MB.A2.0	Foundation Plan + Miscellaneous Details
MB.A2.1	Floor Plan + Schedules
MB.A2.2	Reflected Ceiling + Systems Layout Plan + Roof Plan
MB.A3.1	Building Elevations
MB.A4.1	Building Sections
MB.A5.1	Section Details
MB.A5.2	Section + Plan Details
MB.S1.0	General Structural Notes
MB.S1.1	Foundation Plan
MB.S1.2	Roof Framing Plan
MB.S2.1	Structural Details
MB.P1.0	Plumbing Floor Plan - Maintenance Building - New Work
MB.M1.0	Mechanical Floor Plan - Maintenance Building - New Work
MB.E0.1	Electrical Schedules
MB.E0.2	Electrical Details
MB.E1.0	Electrical Floor Plan - Maintenance Building - New Work
MB.E2.0	Electrical Site Plan
MB.E3.0	Electrical Site Plan
MB.E3.1	Electrical Details

Architectural – Mill Pond Pavilion

PP.A0.0	Cover Sheet

PP.A0.1	Appendix B
PP.A0.2	Appendix B Cont'd + Life Safety Plan
PP.A2.1	Floor Plan + Schedules + Building Section
PP.A2.2	Reflected Ceiling Plan
PP.A2.3	Roof Plan
PP.A3.1	Building Elevations
PP.A5.1	Section Details
PP.S1.0	General Structural Notes
PP.S1.1	Foundation Plan
PP.S1.2	Roof Framing Plan
PP.S2.1	Structural Details
PP.P1.0	Plumbing Floor Plan - Pavilion - New Work
PP.E0.1	Electrical Schedules
PP.E0.2	Electrical Details
PP.E1.0	Electrical Floor Plan - Pavilion - New Work

Architectural – Visitor Center

VC.A0.0	Cover Sheet
VC.A0.1	Appendix B
VC.A0.2	Appendix B Cont'd
VC.A0.3	Existing + Proposed Life Safety Plan
VC.A2.1	Existing Floor Plan + Reflected Ceiling Plan
VC.A2.2	Demolition Floor Plan + Reflected Ceiling Plan
VC.A2.3	Proposed Floor Plan + Reflected Ceiling Plan
VC.A3.1	Existing Building Elevations
VC.A3.2	Proposed Section + Interior Elevations + Window Schedule
VC.S1.0	General Structural Notes, Floor Plan & Notes
VC.M1.0	Mechanical Floor Plan - Visitor's Center
VC.E1.0	Electrical Floor Plan - Visitor's Center
VC.E1.1	Electrical Floor Plan - Visitor's Center
VC.FA1.0	Fire Alarm Floor Plan - Visitor's Center

ARTICLE 3. FAMILIARITY WITH WORK, CONDITIONS AND LAWS

Paragraph 3.3: At the end of the existing paragraph, add the following paragraph:

"To ensure compliance with the E-Verify requirements of the General Statutes of North Carolina, all contractors, including any subcontractors employed by the contractor(s), by submitting a bid, proposal or any other response, or by providing any material, equipment, supplies, services, etc., attest and affirm that they are aware and in full compliance with Article 2 of Chapter 64, (NCGS64-26(a)) relating to the E-Verify requirements."

"By signing this agreement; accepting this contract/purchase order; or submitting any bid, proposal, etc., vendors and contractors certify that as of the date of execution, receipt, or submission they are not listed on the Final Divestment List created by the NC Office of State Treasurer pursuant to NCGS 147 Article 6E, Iran Divestment Act, Iran Divestment Act Certification. Vendors and contractors shall not utilize any subcontractor that is identified on the Final Divestment List."
"Any organization defined under NCGS 147-86.80(2), Divestment from Companies Boycotting Israel, shall not engage in business totaling more than $1,000 with any company/business, etc. that boycotts Israel. A list of companies that boycott Israel is maintained by the NC Office of State Treasurer, pursuant to NCGS 147-86.81(a)(1). Any company listed as boycotting Israel is not eligible to do business with any State agency or political subdivision of the State."

"In consideration of signing this Agreement, the Parties hereby agree not to discriminate in any manner on the basis of race, natural hair or hairstyles, ethnicity, creed, color, sex, pregnancy, marital or familial status, sexual orientation, gender identity or expression, national origin or ancestry, marital or familial status, pregnancy, National Guard or veteran status, religious belief or non-belief, age, or disability with reference to the subject matter of this Contract. The Parties agree to comply with the provisions and intent of Wake County Ordinance SL 2017-4. This anti-discrimination provision shall be binding on the successors and assigns of the Parties with reference to the subject matter of this Contract."

Add the following paragraph:

"3.5 A Pre-Bid Conference will be held at the Historic Yates Mill County Park Visitor Center Classroom located at 4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC 27603 at 10:30 a.m., local prevailing time, on October 15, 2026. Purpose of conference is for prospective Bidders to familiarize themselves with the site and to ask questions pertaining to the Contract Documents. Bidders are reminded that no oral interpretations of meaning of Drawings and Specifications can be made. Conflicts in documents, if any, will be resolved by written addendum. (Reference "Instructions to Bidders, Paragraph 5)."

ARTICLE 5. INSURANCE AND INDEMNITY

Paragraph 5.1.2: In addition to all other endorsements required by the General Conditions, if the Contractor is required to transport, dispose of or otherwise handle hazardous or toxic waste, material, chemicals, compounds or substances, the policy of insurance shall be further endorsed to include the following:

Insurance Service Office (ISO) Form #CA 00 01 06 92 or its equivalent, amending exclusion 11 in the following manner:

i. Delete section a. (1) a.: (Pollution) "being transported or towed by, or handled for movement into, onto or from, the covered auto."

ii. Delete section a. (1) b.: "Otherwise in the course of transit by the insured."

The Contractor and transporter must comply with all applicable DOT and EPA requirements.

Paragraph 5.1.4: Add the following Paragraph [as necessary if the Contractor or its Subcontractor is required to consolidate, transfer, transport, dispose of, store or otherwise handle hazardous or toxic waste, material, chemicals, compounds or substances at any location]:

"Pollution Legal Liability (PLL)

A PLL policy must be provided for the Project. Coverage must be sudden and non-sudden, and include:

a) Bodily injury, sickness, disease, mental anguish, or shock sustained by any person, including death;

b) property damage including physical injury to or destruction of tangible property including the resulting loss of use thereof, cleanup costs, and the loss of use of tangible property that has not been physically injured or destroyed; and

c) Defense including costs, charges, and expenses incurred in the investigation, adjustment, or defense of claims for such compensatory damages.

The Owner must be named as Additional Insured, and a Non-Owned Disposal Site Endorsement must be provided, scheduling the appropriate landfill.

Minimum PLL limits of coverage shall be:

Per Loss	$1,000,000
All Losses	$2,000,000

ARTICLE 10. DESIGNER

Add the following paragraphs:

"10.5 As a part of its Basic Services under the Owner-Designer Agreement, the Designer will conduct a single site visit to determine Substantial Completion of the Work. If, after the performance of said site visit, the Designer determines that the Work is not substantially complete, successive site visits to determine Substantial Completion will be deemed Additional Services under the Owner-Designer Agreement. The Contractor shall be liable to the Owner for any Designer's fees incurred as a result of any such Additional Services of the Designer. Any funds due under this paragraph may be deducted by the Owner from the amounts due the Contractor for such additional Designer's fees and paid directly to the Designer. Should the cost for such Additional Services of the Designer exceed the amount due or to become due to the Contractor, then the Contractor and his sureties shall be liable for and shall pay to the Owner the amount of any such excess.

"10.6 As a part of its Basic Services under the Owner-Designer Agreement, the Designer will conduct a single site visit to determine Final Completion of the Work. If, after the performance of said site visit, the Designer determines that the Work is not complete, successive site visits to determine Final Completion of the Work will be deemed Additional Services under the Owner-Designer Agreement. The Contractor shall be liable to the Owner for any Designer's fees incurred as a result of any such Additional Services of the Designer. Any funds due under this paragraph may be deducted by the Owner from the amounts due the Contractor for such additional Designer's fees and paid directly to the Designer. Should the cost for such Additional Services of the Designer exceed the amount due or to become due to the Contractor, then the Contractor and his sureties shall be liable for and shall pay to the Owner the amount of any such excess."

ARTICLE 13 - CONTRACT TIME

Paragraph 13.18: Add the following:

"If the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work within the Contract Time and as otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall be entitled to retain or recover from the Contractor, as Step One Liquidated Damages and not as a penalty, the following per diem amount commencing upon the first day following expiration of the Contract Time and continuing until the actual date of

Substantial Completion. Such liquidated damages are hereby agreed to be a reasonable pre-estimate of damages the Owner will incur as a result of delayed Substantial Completion of the Work:

Five Hundred Dollars ($500) per consecutive calendar day

If the Contractor fails to achieve Final Completion of the Work within thirty (30) consecutive calendar days of the actual date of Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner shall be entitled to retain or recover from the Contractor, as Step Two Liquidated Damages and not as a penalty, the following per diem amount commencing upon the first day following the actual date of Substantial Completion and continuing until the actual date of Final Completion. Such liquidated damages are hereby agreed to be a reasonable pre-estimate of damages the Owner will incur as a result of delayed Final Completion of the Work:

Five Hundred Dollars ($500) per consecutive calendar day

The Owner may deduct liquidated damages described above from any unpaid amounts then or thereafter due the Contractor under this Agreement. Should the amount of any liquidated damages exceed the amount due or to become due to the Contractor, then the Contractor and his sureties shall be liable for and shall pay to the Owner the amount of any such excess."

ARTICLE 29 – TAXES

Paragraph 29.1: Add the following to the existing paragraph:

"The Contractor is to use the Sales Tax Reporting Form attached to the contract documents for reporting taxes paid.

Add the following paragraph under Article 29

29.3 This project is considered a "Capital Improvement" with respect to Real Property Contracts, and the collection of State sales and use tax, as referenced in North Carolina General Statutes and further clarified in sales and use tax bulletins issued by the North Carolina Department of Revenue. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to issue any affidavits of capital improvement to their subcontractors as necessary.

ARTICLE 36. GENERAL

Add the following paragraph:

"36.3 Any specific requirement in this Contract that the responsibilities or obligations of the Contractor also apply to a Subcontractor is added for emphasis and is also hereby deemed to include a Subcontractor of any tier. The omission of a reference to a Subcontractor in connection with any of the Contractor's responsibilities or obligations shall not be construed to diminish, abrogate, or limit any responsibilities or obligations of a Subcontractor of any tier under the Contract Documents or the applicable subcontract."

END OF SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS

APPENDIX A
TO GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION

DISPUTE RESOLUTION PROCEDURES FOR WAKE COUNTY BUILDING CONSTRUCTION RENOVATION AND REPAIR PROJECTS

Table of Rules

Rule

1. Initiating Mediated Settlement Conferences
- A. Purpose of Mandatory Settlement Conferences
- B. Initiating the Dispute Resolution Process

2. Selection of Mediator
- A. Mediator Listing
- B. Selection of Mediator
- C. Disqualification of Mediator

3. The Mediated Settlement Conference
- A. Where Conference is to be Held
- B. When Conference is to be Held
- C. Request to Modify Deadline for Completion
- D. Recesses
- E. Project Delay

4. Duties of Parties and Other Participants in Formal Dispute Resolution Process
- A. Attendance
- B. Finalizing Agreement
- C. Payment of Mediation Fee
- D. Failure to Compensate Mediator

5. Authority and Duties of Mediators
- A. Authority of Mediator
- B. Duties of Mediator

6. Compensation of the Mediator

7. Rule Making

8. Definitions

9. Time Limits

RULE 1 INITIATING MEDIATED SETTLEMENT CONFERENCES

A **Purpose of Mandatory Settlement Conferences.** Pursuant to G.S. §143-128(f1) and 143-135.26(11), these Rules are promulgated to implement a mediated settlement program designed to focus the parties' attention on settlement rather than on claim preparation and to provide an opportunity for orderly settlement negotiations to take place. Nothing herein is intended to limit or prevent the parties from engaging in settlement procedures voluntarily at any time prior to or during commencement of the dispute resolution process.

B **Initiating the Dispute Resolution Process**

Any party to a County public construction contract (referred to herein generally as the "Contract") governed by Article 8. Ch. 143 of the General Statutes and identified in G.S. § 143-128(f1) and who is a party to a dispute arising out of the Contract and the construction process in which the amount in controversy is at least $15,000 may submit a written request to the County for mediation of the dispute.

Prior to submission of a written request for mediation to the County, the parties should give notice of any and all claims in accordance with their respective contracts, obtain decisions on the claims as required or allowed by their respective contracts, and attempt to resolve the dispute according to the terms and conditions in their respective contracts. The Mediator may adjourn any mediated settlement conference if the Mediator believes, in his or her sole discretion, that the parties have not satisfied all of the terms and conditions of their respective contracts and that doing so will enhance the prospects for a negotiated settlement.

C **Condition Precedent to Litigation.** Before any party to a Contract may commence a civil action against the County seeking remedies for breach or non-performance of the Contract by the County, said party must first initiate the dispute resolution process under these rules and attend the mediated settlement conference.

RULE 2 SELECTION OF MEDIATOR

A **Mediator Listing.** A list of Mediators acceptable to the County is attached to and incorporated by reference into these Rules. The party requesting mediation shall select a Mediator from the designated list. If the County fails to provide a list of acceptable mediators, the list of Mediators shall be deemed to be the list of mediators certified by the North Carolina Dispute Resolution Commission to conduct mediated settlement conferences in the North Carolina Superior Courts.

B **Selection of a Mediator.** The party requesting mediation shall select a Mediator from the County's list of Mediators and shall file, with the County, a Notice of Selection of Mediator within 21 days of the request for mediation. Such notice shall state the name, address, and phone number of the Mediator selected. If the Mediator selected is not available or declines to participate for any reason, the requesting party shall select

another person from the County's list of Mediators. If the party requesting mediation does not select and designate a mediator within 21 days of the request for mediation, the County shall have the right in its absolute discretion to appoint a mediator from its list of Mediators.

C **Disqualification of Mediator.** Any party may request replacement of the Mediator for good cause. Nothing in this provision shall preclude Mediators from disqualifying themselves.

RULE 3 THE MEDIATED SETTLEMENT CONFERENCE

A **Where Conference is to be Held.** Unless all parties and the Mediator otherwise agree, the mediated settlement conference shall be held in Wake County. The Mediator shall be responsible for reserving a place, making arrangements for the conference, and giving timely notice of the time and location of the conference to all attorneys, unrepresented parties and other persons or entities required to attend.

B **When Conference is to be Held.** The mediation shall be completed within 90 days after selection of the Mediator.

C **Request to Accelerate or Extend Deadline for Completion.** Any party or the Mediator may request the County to accelerate or extend the deadline for completion of the conference. Such request shall state the reasons the extension is sought and shall be served by the moving party upon the other parties and the Mediator. Objections to the request must be promptly communicated to the County and to the Mediator.

The County, with the concurrence of the designated Mediator, may grant the request by adjusting the time for completion of the conference.

D **Recesses.** The Mediator may recess the mediation conference at any time and may set times for reconvening. If the Mediator determines the time and place where the conference is to reconvene before the conference is recessed, no further notice is required to persons present at the conference.

E **Project Delay.** The mediated settlement conference that results from a construction contract dispute shall not be cause for the delay of the construction project.

RULE 4 DUTIES OF PARTIES AND OTHER PARTICIPANTS IN FORMAL DISPUTE RESOLUTION PROCESS

A **Attendance**

1. All parties to the dispute must designate an official representative to attend the mediation.

2. "Attendance" means physical attendance, not by telephone or other electronic means. Any attendee representing a party must have authority from that party to bind it to any agreement reached as a result of the mediation.

3. Attorneys representing parties may attend the mediation, but are not required to do so.

4. Sureties and insurance company representatives are required to physically attend the mediation unless the Mediator and all of the other parties to the mediation excuse their attendance or consent to their attendance by telephone or other electronic means.

5. The parties who attend a duly scheduled mediation conference shall have the right to recover their share of the Mediator's compensation from any party or parties who fail to attend the conference without good cause.

B **Finalizing Agreement.** If an agreement is reached in the conference, the terms of the agreement shall be confirmed in writing and signed by all parties.

C **Mediation Fees** charged by the Mediator shall be paid in accordance with G.S. § 143-128(f1).

D **Failure to compensate Mediator.** Any party's failure to compensate the Mediators in accordance with G.S. § 143-128(f1) shall subject that party to a withholding of said amount of money from the party's monthly payment by the County.

Should the County fail to compensate the Mediator, it shall hereby be subject to a civil cause of action from the Mediator for the 1/3 portion of the Mediator's total fee as required by G.S. § 143-128(f1).

RULE 5 AUTHORITY AND DUTIES OF MEDIATORS

A Authority of Mediator

1. Control of Conference. The Mediator shall at all times be in control of the conference and the procedures to be followed.

2. Private Consultation. The Mediator may communicate privately with any participant or counsel prior to and during the conference. The fact that private communications have occurred with a participant shall be disclosed to all other participants at the beginning of the conference.

3. Scheduling the Conference. The Mediator shall make a good faith effort to schedule the conference at a time that is convenient with the participants, attorneys and Mediator. In the absence of agreement, the Mediator shall select the date for the conference.

4. Determining good cause for a party's failure to appear at a scheduled mediation conference.

B Duties of Mediator

1. The Mediator shall define and describe the following at the beginning of the conference:
   a. The process of mediation.
   b. The difference between mediation and other forms of conflict resolution.
   c. The costs of the mediated settlement conference.
   d. That the mediated settlement conference is not a trial, the Mediator is not a judge, and the parties retain their legal rights if they do not reach settlement; however, the Mediator will advise all parties that failure to appear at mediation without good cause may result in imposition of sanctions and may be asserted as a bar to lawsuits by claimants who have failed to exhaust this administrative remedy.
   e. The circumstances under which the Mediator may meet and communicate privately with any of the parties or with any other person.
   f. Whether and under what conditions communications with the Mediator will be held in confidence during the conference.
   g. The inadmissibility of conduct and statements as provided by GS §7A-38.1(1).
   h. The duties and responsibilities of the Mediator and the participants.
   i. That any agreement reached will be reached by mutual consent.

2. Disclosure: The Mediator has a duty to be impartial and to advise all participants of any possible bias, prejudice or partiality.

3. Declaring Impasse: The Mediator may determine at any time during the mediation conference that an impasse exists and that the conference should end.

4. Reporting Results of Conference. The Mediator shall submit a written report to the County and the other parties within 10 days of the conference stating whether or not the parties reached an agreement. The Mediator's report shall indicate the absence of any party from the mediated settlement conference without permission or good cause.

5. Scheduling and Holding the Conference. It is the duty of the Mediator to schedule the conference and conduct it prior to the deadline of completion set by the rules. The Mediator shall strictly observe deadlines for completion of the conference unless said time limit is changed by agreement of the parties.

RULE 6 COMPENSATION OF THE MEDIATOR

A The parties shall compensate the Mediator for mediation services at the rate proposed by the Mediator and agreed to by the parties at the time the Mediator is selected.

RULE 7 RULE MAKING

A These Rules may be amended by the County at any time. Amendments will not affect mediations where claims and/or requests for mediation have been filed at the time the amendment takes effect

RULE 8 DEFINITIONS

A "County" shall mean the County of Wake, North Carolina

B "Project Designer" is that person or firm stipulated as project designer in the Contract Documents for the project.

C "Claim" is a demand or assertion by a party seeking adjustment or interpretation of Contract terms, payment of money, extension of time or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the parties to a Contract involved in the County's building construction renovation and repair projects arising out of or relating to the Contract or the construction process. Claims must be initiated by a written notice. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim.

D "Good Cause" generally includes any circumstance beyond the control of a party, which prevents that party from meeting obligations. When good cause is asserted as an excuse for a party's failure to appear at a mediation conference or to otherwise comply with the requirements of these Rules, the Mediator, in his or her sole discretion, will determine whether good cause exists to excuse the party's failure to appear or otherwise comply with these rules.

RULE 9 TIME LIMITS

A Any time limit provided for by these Rules may be waived or extended at the sole discretion of the County if no Mediator has been selected and at the discretion of the County with concurrence of the Mediator if a Mediator has been selected.

MEDIATOR LIST

Name	Bar #	Address	Phone	Fax	Email
David M. Barnes	12854	PO Box 10096 Raleigh, NC 27605	919-783-2812	919-783-1075	dmbarnes@poynerspruill.com
Robert Beason	5502	PO Box 52270 Durham, NC 27717	919-419-8979	919-403-8533	rbeason@beasonellis.com
William A. Blancato	12729	633 W. 4TH Street, Suite 150 Winston-Salem, NC 27101	336-725-9416	336-725-5129	blancato@bdl-law.com
Richard T. Boyette	7623	PO Box 27808 Raleigh, NC 27611	919-828-5100	919-828-2277	rtb@cshlaw.com
Jacqueline R. Clare	10277	1011 Vance Street Raleigh, NC 27608	919-755-9979	919-755-9512	jclare@mindspring.com
Thomas C. Duncan	1255	PO Box 989 Greensboro, NC 27402	910-379-1390	910-379-1198	duncan@hillevans.com
Sidney Smith Eagles	1271	PO Box 27525 Raleigh, NC 27611	919-755-8771	919-755-8800	sid.eagles@smithmoorelaw.com
Rene Stemple Ellis	DC/PA	PO Box 52270 Durham, NC 27712	919-417-9979	919-403-8533	rellis@beasonellis.com
Marshall Gallop	6626	PO Box 7100 Rocky Mount, NC 27804	252-937-2200	252-937-8100	mgallop@bwsw.com
Allen Holt Gwyn		PO Box 20744 Greensboro, NC 27420	336-691-9222	336-691-9259	ahgwyn@cgspllc.com
Jonathan R. Harkavy	5238	PO Box 29269 Greensboro, NC 27429	336-370-4200	336-274-8490	jharkavy@aol.com
Joseph R. John	2361	11800 Black Horse Run Raleigh, NC 27613	919-676-8796	919-676-8796	jo638sr@aol.com
J. Anderson Little	6730	PO Box 16205 Chapel Hill, NC 27514	919-967-6611	919-967-3212	jandersonlittle@nc.rr.com
James D. Llewellyn	2732	PO Box 567 Atlantic Beach, NC 28512	252-559-2714	252-726-1973	judgelew@embarqmail.com

Name	Bar #	Address	Phone	Fax	Email
Charles K. McCotter		PO Box 12800 Newbern, NC 28561-2800	252-635-1005	252-635-5050	ckm@justice.com
Peter M. McHugh	6269	915 Country Club Drive Reidsville, NC 27320	336-361-9557	336-361-9569	pmchugh@triad.rr.com
Charles E. Nichols	10448	PO Box 20389 Raleigh, NC 27619-0389	919-787-8800	919-781-0811	nichols@manningfulton.com
Jeffrey B. Parsons	16006	PO Box 30933 Raleigh, NC 27622	919-789-9242	919-789-9242	jparsons@cgspllc.com
J. Dickson Phillips	8941	PO Drawer 4825 Chapel Hill, NC 27515	919-967-8989	919-419-1429	dphillips@lapgh.com
Lacy M. Presnell	7272	PO Box 10867 Raleigh, NC 27605	919-782-1441	919-782-2311	lpresnell@bdppa.com
John L. Shaw	3950	PO Box 10096 Raleigh, NC 27605	919-783-6400	919-783-1075	jshaw@poynerspruill.com
Edwin M. Speas	4112	PO Box 10096 Raleigh, NC 27607	919-783-6400	919-783-1075	espeas@poynerspruill.com
Odes L. Stroupe	4983	3105 Glenwood Ave., Suite 300 Raleigh, NC 27612	919-881-0338	919-881-9548	stroupe@bcs-law.com
Arthur A. Vreeland	6899	4 Parkmont Court Greensboro, NC 27408	336-288-7500	336-288-7500	aavreeland@aol.com
Charles P. Younce	4891	PO Box 3486 Greensboro, NC 27402	336-379-0123	336-379-9894	cyounce@jymmlaw.com
Julia F. Youngman	21320	PO Box 33550 Raleigh, NC 27636	919-865-7000	919-865-7010	julie_youngman@elliswinters.com

APPENDIX B
CONTRACTOR'S SALES TAX REPORT
N.C. STATE & LOCAL SALES TAXES PAID

OWNER: Wake County

CONTRACTOR/SUBCONTRACTOR: _____

ADDRESS: _____

PROJECT: Historic Yates Mill County Park

FOR PERIOD: _____

TO: _____

VENDOR	MATERIAL PURCHASED	ADDRESS (City & State)	INVOICE NUMBER	DATE	INVOICE SUBTOTAL	N.C. TAX	COUNTY TAX	TRANSIT TAX	NAME OF COUNTY WHERE GOODS WERE RECEIVED

TOTALS _____

I hereby certify that, during the period stated above, North Carolina sales and use taxes were paid as listed above, with respect to building materials, supplies, fixtures, and equipment which have become a part of, or annexed to, a building or structure erected, altered or repaired for the County of Wake, and that the vendors from whom the property was purchased, the dates and numbers of the invoices covering the purchases, the total amount of the invoices of each vendor, the North Carolina sales and use taxes paid thereon, and the cost of property withdrawn from warehouse stock and North Carolina sales or use taxes paid thereon are as set forth above.

Sworn to and Subscribed before me, this _____ day of _____, 20__.

By: _____

_____ Notary

My Commission expires_____.

Title: _____

Historic Yates Mill County Park

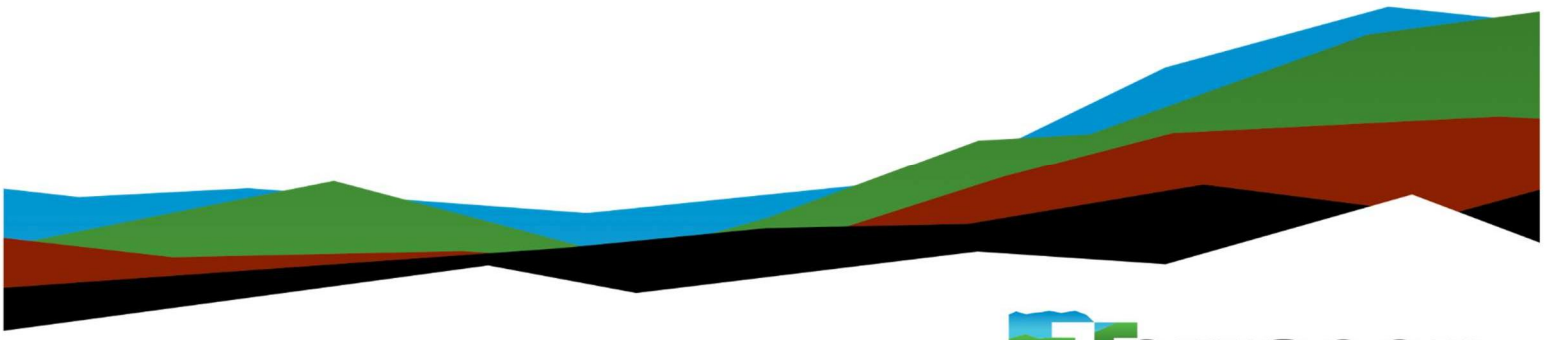
Geotechnical Engineering Report

Raleigh, North Carolina

December 12, 2025 | Terracon Project No. 70255183

Prepared for:

Wake County
Wake County Office Building, 11th Floor
Raleigh, North Carolina 27602



Terracon
Explore with us

Nationwide
Terracon.com

- Facilities
- Environmental
- Geotechnical
- Materials

3150 Spring Forest Road, Suite 100
Raleigh, NC 27616
P (919) 873-2211
North Carolina Registered Firm: F-0869
Terracon.com

December 12, 2025

Wake County
Wake County Office Building, 11th Floor
Raleigh, North Carolina 27602

Attn: Eric Staehle
E: eric.staehle@wake.gov

Re: Geotechnical Engineering Report
Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road
Raleigh, North Carolina
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Dear Mr. Staehle:

We have completed the scope of Geotechnical Engineering services for the above-referenced project in general accordance with Terracon Proposal No. P70255183 dated October 27, 2025. This report presents the findings of the subsurface exploration and provides geotechnical recommendations for the proposed project.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of service to you on this project. If you have any questions concerning this report or if we may be of further service, please contact us.

Sincerely,

Terracon

NORTH CAROLINA PROFESSIONAL SEAL 061130 ENGINEER RACHEL E. LUJAN

12/12/2025

Rachel Lujan, P.E.
Department Manager I

Tom Schipporeit, P.E., BC.GE
Senior Geotechnical Engineer

Table of Contents

Introduction **1**
Project Description **1**
Site Conditions **2**
Geotechnical Characterization **3**
Soil Conditions 3
Groundwater Conditions 4
Seismic Site Class **4**
Geotechnical Overview **4**
Earthwork **5**
Site Preparation 5
Subgrade Preparation 6
Excavation Considerations 6
Fill Material Types 7
Fill Placement and Compaction Requirements 8
Pipe Bedding and Trench Backfill 9
Grading and Drainage 10
Subgrade Protection and Repair 10
Construction Observation and Testing 10
Shallow Foundations **11**
Design Parameters – Compressive and Lateral Loads 11
Design Parameters – Overturning and Uplift Loads 12
Foundation Construction Considerations 13
Floor Slabs **14**
Floor Slab Design Parameters 14
Floor Slab Construction Considerations 15
Site Retaining Walls **16**
Pavements **19**
General Pavement Comments 19
Design Traffic 20
Pavement Design Parameters 20
Pavement Sections 20
Pavement Drainage 21
Gravel-Surfaced Drives and Parking Areas **21**
Subgrade Preparation 21
Design Recommendations 22
General Comments **23**

Figures

GeoModel

Attachments

Exploration and Testing Procedures
Site Location and Exploration Plans
Exploration and Laboratory Results
Supporting Information

Note: This report was originally delivered in a web-based format. **Blue Bold** text in the report indicates a referenced section heading. The PDF version also includes hyperlinks which direct the reader to that section and clicking on the Terracon logo will bring you back to this page. For more interactive features, please view your project online at **client.terracon.com**.

Refer to each individual Attachment for a listing of contents.

Introduction

This report presents the results of our subsurface exploration and Geotechnical Engineering services performed for the proposed park additions to be located at 4620 Lake Wheeler Road in Raleigh, North Carolina. The purpose of these services was to provide the following information and recommendations:

- Site Location and Exploration Plans
- Subsurface exploration procedures
- Exploration logs
- Stratification based on visual soil classification
- Groundwater levels measured in the explorations
- Seismic site class per ASCE 7-16
- Earthwork recommendations
- Recommended foundation type, recommended engineering design parameters, and estimated foundation settlements
- Recommendations for design and construction of floor slabs
- Recommendations for the design of site retaining walls, including lateral earth pressure soil parameters
- Recommended pavement soil subgrade design parameters and pavement section thicknesses.

The geotechnical engineering Scope of Services for this project included the advancement of Standard Penetration Test (SPT) borings, laboratory testing, engineering analysis, and preparation of this report.

Drawings showing the site and exploration locations are shown on the **Site Location** and **Exploration Plan**, respectively. The results of the laboratory testing performed on soil samples obtained from the site during our field exploration are included in the **Exploration and Laboratory Results** section.

Project Description

Our initial understanding of the project was provided in our proposal and was discussed during project planning. A period of collaboration has transpired since the project was initiated, and our final understanding of the project conditions is as follows:

Item	Description
Information Provided	▪ Site Plans and Grading and Drainage Plan prepared by Kimley Horn dated October 29, 2025. ▪ Aerial map with proposed boring locations and depths provided by Wake County on August 4, 2025.
Project Description	The project includes additional parking areas, a pavilion, and a maintenance building at Historic Yates Mill County Park.
Building Construction	Not provided; we anticipate that the buildings will be constructed using a wood-frame or steel-frame and slab-on-grade construction techniques.
Finished Floor Elevation	We understand the finished floor elevation for the maintenance building is 316.50 and for the pavilion is 306.00 feet.
Maximum Unfactored Service Loads	Anticipated structural loads were provided as: ▪ Columns: 20 kips ▪ Walls: 2 kips per linear foot (klf) ▪ Slabs: 200 pounds per square foot (psf)
Allowable Foundation Settlements	We assume that tolerable building settlements are 1 inch total and ½ inch differential within a horizontal distance of 50 feet.
Grading/Slopes	The grading plan indicates maximum cut depths of about 8 feet and maximum fill depths of about 9 feet.
Site Retaining Walls	Retaining walls will be constructed as part of site development to achieve final grades. Wall heights of up to 9 feet are anticipated.
Pavements	We assume that primarily flexible (asphalt) and gravel pavement sections will be used for this project. Pavements will include private parking areas and drive aisles.
Building Code	2024 North Carolina Building Code

Terracon should be notified if any of the above information is inconsistent with the planned construction, as modifications to our recommendations may be necessary.

Site Conditions

The following description of site conditions is derived from information provided to us, our site visit on November 19, 2025, and our review of publicly available information.

Item	Description
Parcel Information	The project site is located at 4620 Lake Wheeler Road in Raleigh, North Carolina. 2.8 acres Latitude/Longitude (approximate) 35.7212°N, 78.6867°W See **Site Location**
Existing Improvements	Grassed field, paved parking and drive areas and sidewalks
Current Ground Cover	Bare ground, grass, weeds, bushes, tress, hardscaped, mulch
Existing Topography	Based on the publicly available topographic information obtained from Wake County GIS, the ground surface elevations range from 300 feet to 320 feet (relative to local mean sea level) in the proposed construction areas.

Geotechnical Characterization

Soil Conditions

We have developed a general characterization of the subsurface conditions based upon our review of the subsurface exploration, laboratory data, geologic setting and our understanding of the project. This characterization, termed GeoModel, forms the basis of our geotechnical calculations and evaluation of the site. Conditions observed at each exploration point are indicated on the individual logs. The individual logs can be found in the **Exploration and Laboratory Results** and the GeoModel can be found in the **Figures** attachment of this report.

As part of our analyses, we identified the following model layers within the subsurface profile. For a more detailed view of the model layer depths at each boring location, refer to the GeoModel.

Model Layer	Layer Name	General Description
1	**Residuum 1**	Stiff to Very Stiff Silt, Medium Dense Silty and Clayey Sand
2	**Residuum 2**	Soft to Stiff Clay and Silt, Loose to Medium Dense Silty and Clayey Sand

Borings B-6 and B-7 generally encountered 2 to 4 inches of asphalt at the surface underlain by 4 inches of crushed stone aggregate. The remaining borings generally encountered 12 inches of topsoil just below the ground surface. However, based on our experience with construction on similar sites, root mat in wooded areas likely extends down through the topsoil into the underlying soils to an average depth of approximately 12 inches.

Groundwater Conditions

The borings were advanced in the dry using hollow stem augers, which allows for short-term groundwater observations to be made at the completion of drilling. Groundwater seepage was not encountered within the maximum drilling depth at the time of our field exploration in Borings B-4 and B-5. The remaining borings encountered groundwater or indications of groundwater at depths of about 8.5 to 16 feet. Borehole cave-ins were measured at depths of 1.6 to 8.7 feet. Mapping by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) indicates a seasonal high groundwater level approximately 6 to 7 feet below the ground surface.

Groundwater conditions may be different at the time of construction. Groundwater conditions may change because of seasonal variations in rainfall, runoff, and other conditions not apparent at the time of exploration. Installation of piezometers and long-term groundwater level monitoring were outside the scope of services for this project.

Seismic Site Class

The seismic design requirements for buildings and other structures are based on Seismic Design Category. Site Classification is required to determine the Seismic Design Category for a structure. The Site Classification is based on the upper 100 feet of the site profile defined by a weighted average value of either shear wave velocity, standard penetration resistance, or undrained shear strength. Based on the materials encountered in the explorations and the standard penetration test N-values, we recommend use of **Seismic Site Classification D** for this project per ASCE 7-16. Subsurface explorations at this site were extended to a maximum depth of 20 feet. The site properties below the maximum exploration depth to 100 feet were estimated based on our experience and knowledge of geologic conditions of the general area.

Geotechnical Overview

Based on the subsurface conditions encountered and provided/assumed loads, the proposed maintenance building can be supported on conventional continuous or spread footings.

The on-site soils are suitable for use as backfill for gravity and mechanically stabilized earth (MSE)site retaining walls less than 5 feet high. The on-site soils are unsuitable for use as reinforced zone fill or backfill for the fill site retaining wall at the maintenance facility building. Imported select granular fill should be used as reinforced backfill for that wall.

The recommendations contained in this report are based upon the results of field and laboratory testing (presented in the **Exploration Results**), engineering analyses, and our current understanding of the proposed project. The **General Comments** section provides an understanding of the report limitations.

Earthwork

The following sections provide recommendations for use in the preparation of site drawings and specifications for this project. Recommendations include critical quality criteria, as necessary, to render the site in the state considered in our geotechnical engineering evaluation for the project.

Site Preparation

Vegetation, topsoil, and root mat should be removed completely from the proposed construction areas. Topsoil was encountered in the explorations to a depth of approximately 12 inches. We anticipate that root mat extends to an average depth of approximately 12 inches in the wooded areas of the site.

The Geotechnical Engineer should field-verify the stripping depth during construction.

Stripped materials consisting of soil with organic material should be removed from the site or placed in non-structural areas to be landscaped. Roots from the excavated root mat zone material can be removed by raking or screening if the material is to be re-used as topsoil in areas to be landscaped.

Although no evidence of existing fill was observed and no below-grade obstructions were encountered during the exploration and site reconnaissance, existing fill, obstructions, and/or debris could be encountered during construction. If unexpected fills, debris, underground facilities, or obstructions are encountered, such materials and features should be removed, with the resulting excavations backfilled with structural fill.

Subgrade Preparation

Proofrolling should be performed after stripping and prior to placing fill in fill areas. The subgrade should be proofrolled with an adequately loaded vehicle such as a fully loaded tandem-axle dump truck. The proofrolling should be performed under the observation of the Geotechnical Engineer.

Areas excessively deflecting and/or pumping under the proofrolling should be delineated and subsequently addressed by the Geotechnical Engineer. Such areas should be stabilized by overexcavation of unsuitable or unstable soil and replacement with structural fill. If unstable subgrade soils with elevated moisture content are relatively shallow, then disking and drying might be an option to undercut and replace.

Excavation Considerations

Excavatability

We anticipate that excavation of soil can generally be accomplished with conventional earthmoving equipment.

Excavation Safety

As a minimum, excavations should be performed in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR, Part 1926, Subpart P, "Excavations" and its appendices, and in accordance with any applicable local and/or state regulations.

Excavations or other activities resulting in ground disturbance have the potential to affect nearby structures, pavements, and utilities. Our scope of services does not include review of available final grading information or consider potential temporary grading performed by the contractor for potential effects such as ground movement beyond the project limits. A preconstruction/ precondition survey should be conducted to document nearby property/infrastructure prior to any site development activity. Excavation or ground disturbance activities should be monitored or instrumented for potential ground movements that could negatively affect nearby structures, pavements, and utilities.

Excavation should not be conducted below a downward 1H:1V projection from the bottom edges of existing wall footings or column footings without engineering review of shoring/underpinning requirements and geotechnical observation during construction.

Construction site safety is the sole responsibility of the contractor who controls the means, methods, and sequencing of construction operations. Under no circumstances shall the information provided herein be interpreted to mean Terracon is assuming responsibility for construction site safety or the contractor's activities; such responsibility shall neither be implied nor inferred.

Construction Dewatering

We anticipate that temporary construction excavations for this project could encounter groundwater, especially perched water during seasonal high water table conditions.

The contractor should design, furnish, install, test, operate, monitor, and maintain a dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of groundwater and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades. The contractor should accomplish dewatering without damaging any existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to and near the excavations.

Typical temporary dewatering measures used on similar projects in the project area consist of temporary ditches, sump excavations, and sump pumps. Dewatering wells and/or well points are sometimes needed for excavations more than about 3 to 5 feet below the groundwater levels, depending on soil types and ability of excavations and the site to drain by gravity.

The responsibility for dewatering construction excavations and preventing excessive damage of existing and new buildings, structures, utilities, and other site improvements due to dewatering should lie solely with the contractor. This information is provided only as a service and under no circumstance should Terracon be assumed to be responsible for the effectiveness of the construction dewatering method(s) selected by the contractor.

Fill Material Types

Fill required to achieve design grade should be classified as structural fill and general fill. Structural fill is material used below or within 10 feet of structures, pavements, retaining walls, utilities, or constructed slopes. General fill is material used to achieve grade outside of these areas. Additional recommendations for retaining wall backfill are provided in **Site Retaining Walls.**

Fill Properties: Material property requirements for on-site soil and imported soil for use as general fill and structural fill are given in the following table:

Property	General Fill	Structural Fill
Composition	Free of deleterious material	Free of deleterious material
Maximum particle size	6 inches (or 2/3 of the lift thickness)	3 inches
Fines content	Not limited	Not limited
Plasticity	Not limited	Maximum liquid limit of 50 Maximum plasticity index of 30
Standard Proctor Maximum Dry Unit Weight	Not limited	At least 90 pcf

Regardless of its source, compacted fill should consist of approved materials that are free of organic matter and debris. Frozen material should not be used, and fill should not be placed on a frozen subgrade.

A sample of each material type should be submitted to the Geotechnical Engineer for evaluation prior to use on this site. Additional geotechnical consultation should be provided prior to use of uniformly graded gravel (GP) on the site.

Reuse of On-Site Materials: Excavated on-site soil may be selectively reused as general fill and structural fill with the previously listed limitations regarding deleterious materials, fines content, plasticity, maximum particle size, and dry unit weight. Please note, however, that moisture-conditioning (drying and/or wetting) of on-site soils will likely be required to achieve adequate compaction. Existing fill, if present at the site, may be selectively reused as structural fill or general fill, provided it is free of deleterious material (e.g., organics, debris) and is segregated to meet the maximum particle sizes and plasticity values given in the table below.

Imported Fill Materials: Imported fill materials should meet the material property requirements previously given for Structural Fill. In some cases, imported select granular fill may be needed for retaining wall backfill or subgrade stabilization. If used, select granular fill should consist of NCDOT Class II, Type 1 Select Material, which is a fine aggregate material consisting of crushed stone screenings (washed or unwashed) meeting the grading requirements in Table 1016-1 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications.

Fill Placement and Compaction Requirements

Structural and general fill should meet the following compaction requirements.

Item	Structural Fill	General Fill
Maximum Lift Thickness	10 inches or less in loose thickness when heavy, self-propelled compaction equipment is used 6 inches in loose thickness when hand-guided equipment (e.g., trench roller, jumping jack, or plate compactor) is used	Same as structural fill
Minimum Compaction Requirements [1,2]	95% of the material's standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D698) more than 1 foot below subgrade. 98% of the material's standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D698) in upper 1 foot of structural fill.	92% of the material's standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D698).
Water Content Range [1]	Low plasticity fine-grained soil (PI<30): -3% to +3% of optimum Coarse-grained soil (SM, SC): -3% to +3% of optimum Coarse-grained clean sand (SP, SW): -5% to +5% of optimum	As required to achieve min. compaction requirements

1. Maximum density and optimum water content as determined by the standard Proctor test (ASTM D698).
2. Materials not amenable to density testing should be placed and compacted to a stable condition observed by the Geotechnical Engineer or representative.

Where fill is placed on existing slopes steeper than 5H:1V, benches should be cut into the existing slopes prior to fill placement. The benches should have a minimum vertical face height of 1 foot and a maximum vertical face height of 3 feet and should be cut wide enough to accommodate the compaction equipment. This benching will help provide a positive bond between the fill and natural soils and reduce the possibility of failure along the fill/natural soil interface.

Pipe Bedding and Trench Backfill

Pipe bedding and trench backfill should be in accordance with the applicable public works agency's standard details and specifications for the type of pipe to be supported. (For example, the NCDOT has published standard pipe bedding and backfilling details for flexible and rigid pipe for normal earth foundation, rock foundation, and unsuitable material foundation conditions.) Backfill materials, placement, and testing should be in accordance with the publics works agency's specifications or the earthwork recommendations given in this report, whichever are more stringent.

If open-graded materials, such as No. 78 or No. 57 stone, are used, they should be completely wrapped in a woven geotextile that can be used for both separation and filtration (e.g., Mirafi HP270).

Grading and Drainage

All grades must provide effective drainage away from the building(s) during and after construction and should be maintained throughout the life of the structure(s). Water retained next to the building(s) can result in soil movements greater than those discussed in this report. Greater movements can result in unacceptable differential floor slab and/or foundation movements resulting in cracked slabs and walls.

Subgrade Protection and Repair

Upon completion of filling and grading, care should be taken to maintain the subgrade water content prior to construction of grade-supported improvements such as floor slabs and pavements. Construction traffic over the completed subgrades should be avoided. The site should also be graded to prevent surface water from ponding on the prepared subgrades or in excavations. Water collecting over or adjacent to construction areas should be removed. If the subgrade freezes, desiccates, saturates, or is disturbed, the affected material should be removed, or the materials should be scarified, moisture conditioned, and recompacted prior to floor slab and pavement construction.

Construction Observation and Testing

Terracon should be retained during the construction phase of the project to observe earthwork and to perform necessary tests and observations during subgrade preparation, proofrolling, placement and compaction of structural fill, backfilling of excavations, and just prior to construction of building floor slabs and pavements.

The earthwork efforts should be observed by the Geotechnical Engineer (Terracon). Observation should include documentation of adequate removal of surficial materials (vegetation, topsoil, and pavements) as well as proofrolling and mitigation of unsuitable areas delineated by the proofrolling.

Each lift of compacted fill should be tested, evaluated, and reworked, as necessary, as recommended by the Geotechnical Engineer prior to placement of additional lifts. Each lift of fill should be tested for density and water content at a frequency of at least one test for every 2,500 square feet of compacted fill in the building areas and 5,000 square feet in pavement areas. Where not specified by local ordinance, one density and water content test should be performed for every 100 linear feet of compacted utility trench backfill and a minimum of one test performed for every 12 vertical inches of compacted backfill.

In areas of foundation excavations, the bearing subgrade should be evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineer. A representative of the Geotechnical Engineer should use a combination of hand auger borings and dynamic cone penetrometer (DCP) testing to determine the suitability of the bearing materials for the design bearing pressure. DCP testing should be performed to a depth of 3 to 5 feet below the bottom of the foundation excavation. If unanticipated conditions are observed, the Geotechnical Engineer should recommend mitigation options.

In addition to the documentation of the essential parameters necessary for construction, the continuation of the Geotechnical Engineer into the construction phase of the project provides the continuity to maintain the Geotechnical Engineer's evaluation of subsurface conditions, including assessing variations and associated design changes.

Shallow Foundations

The proposed building can be supported by shallow foundations. If the site has been prepared in accordance with the requirements noted in **Earthwork**, the following design parameters are applicable for shallow foundations.

Design Parameters – Compressive and Lateral Loads

Item	Description
Maximum Net Allowable Bearing Pressure [1, 2]	3,000 psf
Required Bearing Stratum [3]	Undisturbed low-plasticity (PI<30) native soils or structural fill.
Minimum Foundation Dimensions [4]	Footings: 16 inches Turn-down Slabs: 12 inches
Sliding Resistance [5]	0.30 ultimate coefficient of friction
Minimum Embedment below Finished Grade [6]	12 inches
Estimated Total Settlement from Structural Loads [2]	Less than about 1 inch under sustained gravity loads
Estimated Differential Settlement [2, 7]	Less than about 1/2 inch under sustained gravity loads

1. The maximum net allowable bearing pressure is the pressure in excess of the minimum surrounding overburden pressure at the footing base elevation. The allowable bearing pressure can be increased by ⅓ for use with the alternative load combinations given in

Item	Description

Section 1605.3.2 of the 2018 North Carolina Building Code. Please note, however, that additional foundation settlement will occur under these load combinations. The project structural engineer should select the appropriate footing width to maintain a bearing pressure not exceeding that recommended in this table, and to maintain an appropriate clear distance between footings to prevent overlap of soil stress distributions. Values assume that exterior grades are no steeper than 20 percent within 10 feet of structure(s).

2. Values provided are for maximum unfactored service loads noted in **Project Description**. Additional geotechnical consultation will be necessary if higher loads are anticipated.
3. Unsuitable, unstable, very soft to soft soil, and/or very loose to loose soil should be overexcavated and replaced per the recommendations presented in **Earthwork**.
4. Minimum footing dimensions required to achieve recommended allowable bearing pressure with a factor of safety of at least 2.5.
5. Can be used to compute sliding resistance where foundations are placed on suitable soil/materials. Frictional resistance is dependent on the bearing pressure which may vary due to load combinations. Horizontal movement of the foundation must occur to mobilize the frictional resistance.
6. Embedment necessary to minimize the effects of frost (12-inch design frost depth for this site), and to achieve recommended allowable bearing pressure with a factor of safety of at least 2.5. Finished grade is the lowest adjacent grade for perimeter footings and final building pad grade for interior footings. For sloping ground, maintain depth below the lowest adjacent exterior grade within 5 horizontal feet of the structure.
7. Differential settlements are for equivalent-loaded foundations and bearing elevation as measured over a span of 50 feet.

Design Parameters – Overturning and Uplift Loads

Shallow foundations subjected to overturning loads should be proportioned such that the resultant eccentricity is maintained in the center-third of the foundation (e.g., e < b/6, where b is the foundation width). This requirement is intended to keep the entire foundation area in compression during the extreme lateral/overturning load event. Foundation oversizing may be required to satisfy this condition.

Uplift resistance of spread footings can be developed from the effective weight of the footing and the overlying soils with consideration to the IBC basic load combinations.

Item	Description
Soil Moist Unit Weight	115 pcf
Soil Effective Unit Weight[1]	53 pcf
Soil weight included in uplift resistance	Soil included within the prism extending up from the top perimeter of the footing vertically to ground surface

Item	Description

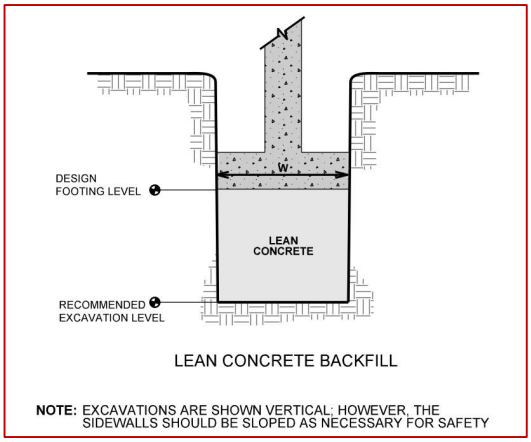
1. Effective (or buoyant) unit weight should be used for soil above the foundation level and below a water level. The high groundwater level should be used in uplift design as applicable.

Foundation Construction Considerations

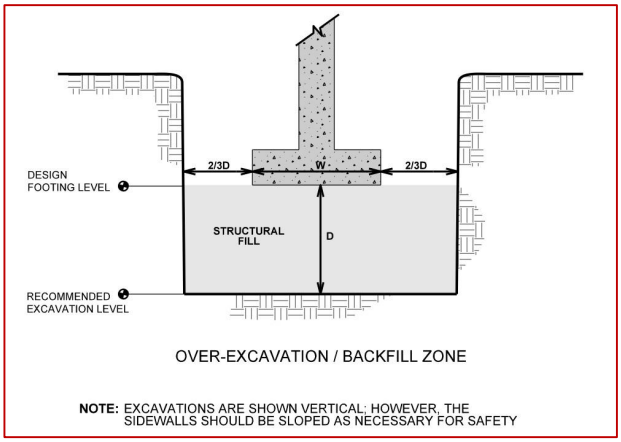
As noted in **Earthwork**, the footing excavations should be evaluated under the observation of the Geotechnical Engineer. The base of all foundation excavations should be free of water and loose/soft soil prior to placing concrete. Concrete should be placed soon after excavating to reduce bearing soil disturbance. Care should be taken to prevent wetting or drying of the bearing materials during construction. Excessively wet or dry material or any loose/disturbed material in the bottom of the footing excavations should be removed/reconditioned before foundation concrete is placed.

Very loose to loose soil exposed at the surface of footing excavations may require surficial compaction with hand-held dynamic compaction equipment prior to placing structural fill, steel, and/or concrete. Very loose to loose soil that cannot be adequately compacted should be remediated as described in the following paragraphs.

If unsuitable bearing soils are observed at the base of the planned footing excavation, the excavation should be extended deeper to suitable soils, and the footings could bear directly on these soils at the lower level. Alternatively, the footings could bear on lean concrete backfill placed in the excavations. The lean concrete replacement zone is illustrated in the sketch below.



Another option is overexcavation for structural fill placement below footings, which should be conducted as shown below. The overexcavation should be backfilled up to the footing base elevation with structural fill placed as recommended in the **Earthwork** section. If poorly-graded gravel (e.g., No. 57 stone) is used, it should be wrapped in a woven geotextile that can be used for both separation and filtration (e.g., Mirafi HP270).



Floor Slabs

Design parameters for floor slabs assume the requirements for **Earthwork** have been followed. Specific attention should be given to positive drainage away from the building(s).

Floor Slab Design Parameters

Item	Description
Floor Slab Support	Subgrade compacted to recommendations in **Earthwork** For slabs above exterior grades, use 4 inches of base course meeting material specifications of ACI 302 and the 2018 North Carolina Building Code[1]. The base course material should consist of compactable, easy-to-trim granular fill that will remain stable and support construction traffic. Suitable materials include SP, SW, SM, and well-graded gravel (GW or ABC)[2].
Estimated Modulus of Subgrade Reaction [3]	125 pounds per square inch per inch (psi/in) for point loads

1. A base course is not required by 2018 NC Building Code nor ACI 302 for floor slabs above exterior grade. However, it is good design and construction practice to include a base course to provide uniform support and improve constructability, especially over fine-grained subgrade soils.
2. Per ACI 360R-12, ABC produces more uniform support and provides an all-weather working surface to speed construction during inclement weather.

Item	Description
	3. Modulus of subgrade reaction is an estimated value based upon our experience with the subgrade condition, the requirements noted in **Earthwork**, and the floor slab support as noted in this table. It is provided for point loads only. For large area loads the modulus of subgrade reaction would be lower.

The use of a vapor retarder should be considered beneath concrete slabs on grade covered with wood, tile, carpet, or other moisture sensitive or impervious coverings, when the project includes humidity-controlled areas, or when the slab will support equipment sensitive to moisture. When conditions warrant the use of a vapor retarder, the slab designer should refer to ACI 302 and/or ACI 360 for procedures and cautions regarding the use and placement of a vapor retarder.

Saw-cut contraction joints should be placed in the slab to help control the location and extent of cracking. For additional recommendations, refer to the ACI Design Manual. Joints or cracks should be sealed with a waterproof, non-extruding compressible compound specifically recommended for concrete floor slabs and wet environments.

Floor slabs should be structurally independent of footings to reduce the possibility of floor slab cracking caused by differential movements between the slab and footings (unless the slab is structurally designed to accommodate the stresses from the potential differential footing-slab settlements).

Where floor slabs are tied to perimeter walls or turn-down slabs to meet structural or other construction objectives, our experience indicates differential movement between the walls and slabs will likely be observed in adjacent slab expansion joints or floor slab cracks beyond the length of the structural dowels. The Structural Engineer should account for potential differential settlement through use of sufficient control joints, appropriate reinforcing or other means.

Floor Slab Construction Considerations

On most project sites, the site grading is generally accomplished early in the construction phase. However, as construction proceeds, the subgrade may be disturbed due to utility excavations, construction traffic, desiccation, rainfall, etc. As a result, the floor slab subgrade may not be suitable for placement of base course and concrete, and corrective action will be required to repair the damaged areas.

Finished subgrade, within and for at least 10 feet beyond the floor slab, should be protected from traffic, rutting, or other disturbance and maintained in a relatively moist condition until floor slabs are constructed. If the subgrade should become damaged or desiccated prior to construction of floor slabs, the affected material should be removed, and structural fill should be added to replace the resulting excavation.

Final conditioning of the finished subgrade should be performed immediately prior to placement of the floor slab support course.

The Geotechnical Engineer should observe the condition of the floor slab subgrades immediately prior to placement of the floor slab base course, reinforcing steel, and concrete. Attention should be paid to high traffic areas that were rutted and disturbed earlier, and to areas where backfilled trenches are located.

Site Retaining Walls

The site retaining walls that will be constructed by raising existing grades (i.e., fill walls) with sufficient room for reinforcement and temporary sloping, can consist of MSE segmental retaining walls (SRWs). They should be designed to withstand the internal stresses exerted on the block facing and reinforcement by the fill soil used in the reinforced zone, in addition to the lateral earth pressures exerted by the retained zone of soil behind the reinforced zone. They should also be designed to achieve an adequate bearing capacity, in addition to tolerable total and differential settlements, based on the condition and properties of the foundation bearing soils.

MSE SRWs are typically designed as walls that are free to deflect by using the "Active" (k_a) soil condition in the wall design and evaluation. This is typically acceptable where landscaping features will be placed on the design grade above the reinforced zone.

However, this movement could result in settlement of the reinforced zone and cracking of pavements, hardscapes, buildings, etc. constructed near the walls. In this case, higher quality backfill in the reinforced zone along with stronger and/or closer spaced geogrid should be utilized to limit the risk of wall movement and potential settlement and cracking of pavements, hardscapes, buildings, etc. to tolerable amounts.

The site retaining wall design engineer should select the soil type to be used for retaining wall backfill and provide notes on the design drawings which specify retaining wall backfill material type and required properties (minimum friction angle, minimum cohesion, and nominal unit weight).

Reinforced Zone: For MSE walls less than or equal to 20 feet high, the reinforced zone fill should meet the gradation and plasticity requirements given in Table 3.3-1 of the NCMA's 2016 Segmental Retaining Walls Best Practices Guide for the Specification, Design, Construction, and Inspection of SRW Systems. The on-site silty sands may be suitable for use as reinforced fill, depending on laboratory test results and the distances from the walls to pavements and hardscapes.

The reinforced zone includes all fill placed under, between, and above the reinforcement materials. We recommend that the properties for reinforced zone fill given in the following table be used to design the MSE walls 20 feet or less in height for this project, depending on which material is selected by the wall designer.

Retaining Wall Fill in the Reinforced Zone

Soil Parameter	Clayey Sand or Silty Sand (Walls less than 5 feet high)	Select Granular Fill (MSE wall at Maintenance Building)
Angle of Internal Friction	27 degrees	30 degrees
Moist Unit Weight	120 pcf	120 pcf
Percent Passing No. 200 Sieve	0 to 35	0 to 35
Plasticity Index	< 6	< 6
Maximum Particle Size	1 inch	1 inch

A higher quality backfill such as aggregate base course or No. 57 stone should be used as reinforced backfill in the following areas:

- Outside corners or radii
- Pavements or hardscapes above the reinforced backfill (or within a few feet of the reinforced zone – retained zone interface)
- Buildings or other structures above the reinforced backfill (or within a few feet of the reinforced zone – retained zone interface)

No. 57 stone should be used as reinforced backfill below the design flood elevation for walls adjacent to stormwater wet ponds, creeks, rivers, lakes, or other bodies of water. The No. 57 stone should be wrapped by woven geotextile that can be used for both separation and filtration (e.g., Mirafi HP270).

Retained Zone: For MSE retaining walls, the retained zone is defined as the area between the back of the reinforced zone and an imaginary line projected upward and rearward from the bottom back edge of the lowest reinforcement layer (typically geogrid) at a 45-degree angle. For this project, we anticipate that the majority of the soils to be placed in the retained zone will be Clayey Sand (SC), Silt (ML), and Lean Clay (CL). We recommend that the properties given in the following table for be used for retaining wall design:

Retaining Wall Fill for Retained Zone

Soil Parameter	Clay (CL), Silt (ML), and Clayey Sand (SC)
Angle of Internal Friction	24 degrees
Cohesion	150 psf
Moist Unit Weight	120 pcf

Foundation Soils: For MSE retaining walls, the foundation zone is defined as the area under the leveling pad, block facing, and entire reinforced zone. Based on Boring B-2, in addition to the design grades, we anticipate that the majority of the MSE wall foundation materials will be medium stiff Silt (ML) or Lean Clay (CL). We recommend that the properties given in the following table for be used for retaining wall design:

Foundation Soils

Soil Parameter	Medium Stiff Silt (ML) or Lean Clay (CL)
Angle of Internal Friction	24 degrees
Cohesion	150 psf
Moist Unit Weight	120 pcf
Maximum Allowable Soil Bearing Pressure	3,000 psf

Settlement: Our scope of services did not include detailed settlement analyses for site retaining walls. Once the design wall locations, grades, reinforcement length, and reinforced zone materials have been determined, Terracon should be retained to evaluate the potential settlement of the retaining walls and provide recommendations for foundation soil improvement in the event the estimated settlements exceed the wall designer's allowable settlement criteria.

Global Stability: Our scope of services did not include detailed global stability analyses for site retaining walls. Once the design wall locations, grades, reinforcement length, and reinforced zone materials have been determined, Terracon should be retained to evaluate the global stability of the retaining walls and provide recommendations for design modifications, if necessary.

Foundation Bearing Soils: The retaining wall foundation bearing soils should be evaluated by Terracon during construction. This includes the soils under the geogrid-reinforced backfill. If very loose sand, very soft to soft silt/clay, or otherwise unsuitable or unstable soils are observed at the foundation bearing elevations, they should be undercut and removed.

Any undercut excavation should be backfilled with structural fill or No. 57 stone wrapped in a woven geotextile that can be used for both separation and filtration (e.g., Mirafi HP270) up to leveling pad elevation.

Retaining Wall Backfill: All soils used as backfill within the reinforced zone and retained zone behind retaining walls should have the USCS classification/material type, minimum angle of internal friction angle, and minimum cohesion as selected by the site retaining wall design engineer. These minimum soil properties are typically given for material compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of its maximum dry density per ASTM D 698. Any soils not meeting these criteria should not be placed as retaining wall backfill.

Samples of proposed retaining wall reinforced backfill and retained backfill should be submitted by the contractor and tested by Terracon prior to beginning construction activities to verify that the soils proposed meet or exceed those specified in the geotechnical report and retaining wall design. Tests should include classification, standard Proctor compaction, and shear strength (remolded direct shear for coarse-grained soils and remolded triaxial shear for fine-grained soils). The use of proper retaining wall backfill material, placement, and compaction, should be observed and tested by Terracon at the time of construction.

Drainage: MSE SRWs should be designed for proper surface water drainage and internal (i.e., groundwater or subsurface water) drainage in accordance with the NCMA 2016 Segmental Retaining Walls Best Practices Guide.

Temporary Cut Slopes: For this project, we anticipate that a temporary cut slope no steeper than 1H:1V will be needed to meet the OSHA excavation safety requirements during construction of cut MSE walls. However, this needs to be verified by the contractor's responsible person, as defined in 29 CFR Part 1926.

Pavements

General Pavement Comments

Pavement section thicknesses are provided for the traffic conditions and pavement life conditions as noted in **Project Description** and in the following sections of this report. A critical aspect of pavement performance is site preparation. Pavement section thicknesses noted in this section must be applied to the site which has been prepared as recommended in the **Earthwork** section.

Design Traffic

The following table provides our estimates for 18-kip Equivalent Single Axle Loads (ESALS) for the design traffic loading conditions in the previous and the different design lives shown.

Vehicle	Light Duty Pavement Asphalt	Heavy Duty Asphalt
20-year ESALs[1]	**12,000**	**60,000**

1. The ESAL calculation assumes that access roads and drive aisles will be designed and constructed to allow two-way traffic.

If the project will include any public pavements (NCDOT or local municipality), we need the projected average daily traffic, percent dual axle trucks, and percent tractor trailer trucks in order to provide recommended pavement sections for the public pavements.

Pavement Design Parameters

A California Bearing Ratio (CBR) of 5 was used to estimate resilient modulus for use in asphalt and concrete pavement section thickness analyses. This CBR value is based on the laboratory CBR test results, empirically derived values, and on our expectation of the quality of the subgrade as prescribed in **Earthwork**.

Pavement Sections

The following table provides our opinion of minimum thickness for AC sections for private streets, drives, and parking areas:

Asphalt Pavement Sections

Layer [2]	Thickness (inches)	
	Light Duty [1]	Heavy Duty [1]
Asphalt Surface Course	3 [3]	1.5
Asphalt Intermediate Course	--	2.5
Aggregate Base Course (ABC)	6	8

1. See **Project Description** for more specifics regarding traffic information and assumptions.

Layer [2]	Thickness (inches)	
	Light Duty [1]	Heavy Duty [1]

2. All materials should meet the current North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Highway and Bridge Construction.
    - Asphalt Surface - NCDOT Type S9.5BAsphaltic Cement Concrete: Division 6, Section 610
    - Asphalt Intermediate Course – NCDOT Type 19.0C Asphaltic Cement Concrete: Division 6, Section 610
    - Aggregate Base Course – NCDOT ABC: Division 10, Section 1005
3. Placed in two equal-thickness lifts Placed in two equal lifts.

The placement of a partial pavement thickness for use during construction is not recommended without a detailed pavement analysis incorporating construction traffic. In addition, we should be contacted to confirm the traffic assumptions outlined above. If the actual traffic varies from the assumptions outlined above, modification of the pavement section thickness could be required.

Pavement Drainage

Pavements should be sloped to provide rapid drainage of surface water. Water allowed to pond on or adjacent to the pavements could saturate the subgrade and contribute to premature pavement deterioration.

Openings in pavements, such as decorative landscaped areas, are sources for water infiltration into surrounding pavement systems. Water can collect in the islands and migrate into the surrounding subgrade soils thereby degrading support of the pavement. Islands with raised concrete curbs, irrigated foliage, and low permeability near-surface soils are particular areas of concern. The civil design for the pavements with these conditions should include features to restrict or collect and discharge excess water from the islands. Examples of features are edge drains connected to the stormwater collection system, longitudinal subdrains, or other suitable outlets and impermeable barriers preventing lateral migration of water such as a cutoff wall installed to a depth below the pavement structure.

Gravel-Surfaced Drives and Parking Areas

Subgrade Preparation

On most project sites, the site grading is accomplished relatively early in the construction phase. Fills are typically placed and compacted in a uniform manner.

However, as construction proceeds, the subgrade may be disturbed due to utility excavations, construction traffic, desiccation, or rainfall/snow melt. As a result, the aggregate-surfaced roadway or parking area subgrade may not be suitable for construction and corrective action will be required.

The subgrade should be carefully evaluated at the time of construction for signs of disturbance or instability. We recommend the subgrade be thoroughly proofrolled with a loaded tandem-axle dump truck prior to final grading. All aggregate-surfaced roadway or parking subgrade areas should be moisture conditioned and properly compacted to the recommendations in this report immediately prior to placement of the aggregate surfacing. If disturbance occurs, the top 8 inches of the exposed subgrade should be scarified, moisture conditioned, and recompacted to at least 98 percent of the maximum dry unit weight as determined by ASTM D698 before any new fill or aggregate is placed.

Design Recommendations

Design of aggregate-surfaced roadways for the project has been based in general accordance with the "Aggregate-Surfaced Road Design Catalog" subsection of the 1993 AASHTO "Guide for the Design of Pavement Structures" and based on subsurface conditions observed at the site and laboratory test results.

Our analysis has assumed a "low" traffic volume which is appropriate for 10,000 to 30,000 equivalent single axle loads (ESALs) for the maintenance vehicle paths. This traffic volume should be confirmed by the design team; additional geotechnical consultation and revision of recommendations could be necessary with higher traffic volumes.

Recommended minimum aggregate surfacing thickness is provided in the table below.

Recommended Gravel Surface Thickness

Locations	Relative Quality of Roadway Subgrade [1]	Traffic Category	Minimum Aggregate-Surfacing Material Thickness, in. [2]
Maintenance Vehicle Paths	Fair	Low	6

1. Subgrade quality based on anticipated long-term condition due to exposure to elements and general characteristics of anticipated subgrade soil.
2. Material should meet the requirements for NCDOT Aggregate Base Course (ABC): Division 10, Section 1005.

General Comments

Our analysis and opinions are based upon our understanding of the project, the geotechnical conditions in the area, and the data obtained from our site exploration. Variations will occur between exploration point locations due to the modifying effects of construction or weather. The nature and extent of such variations may not become evident until during or after construction. Terracon should be retained as the Geotechnical Engineer, where noted in this report, to provide observation and testing services during pertinent construction phases. If variations appear, we can provide further evaluation and supplemental recommendations. If variations are noted in the absence of our observation and testing services on-site, we should be immediately notified so that we can provide evaluation and supplemental recommendations.

Our Scope of Services does not include either specifically or by implication any environmental or biological (e.g., mold, fungi, bacteria) assessment of the site or identification or prevention of pollutants, hazardous materials or conditions. If the owner is concerned about the potential for such contamination or pollution, other studies should be undertaken.

Our services and any correspondence are intended for the sole benefit and exclusive use of our client for specific application to the project discussed and are accomplished in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practices with no third-party beneficiaries intended. Any third-party access to services or correspondence is solely for information purposes to support the services provided by Terracon to our client. Reliance upon the services and any work product is limited to our client and is not intended for third parties. Any use or reliance of the provided information by third parties is done solely at their own risk. No warranties, either express or implied, are intended or made.

Site characteristics as provided are for design purposes and not to estimate excavation cost. Any use of our report in that regard is done at the sole risk of the excavating cost estimator as there may be variations on the site that are not apparent in the data that could significantly affect excavation cost.

Any parties charged with estimating excavation costs should seek their own site characterization for specific purposes to obtain the specific level of detail necessary for costing. Site safety and cost estimating including excavation support and dewatering requirements/design are the responsibility of others. Construction and site development have the potential to affect adjacent properties. Such impacts can include damages due to vibration, modification of groundwater/surface water flow during construction, foundation movement due to undermining or subsidence from excavation, as well as noise or air quality concerns. Evaluation of these items on nearby properties are commonly associated with contractor means and methods and are not addressed in this report.

The owner and contractor should consider a preconstruction/precondition survey of surrounding development. If changes in the nature, design, or location of the project are planned, our conclusions and recommendations shall not be considered valid unless we review the changes and either verify or modify our conclusions in writing.

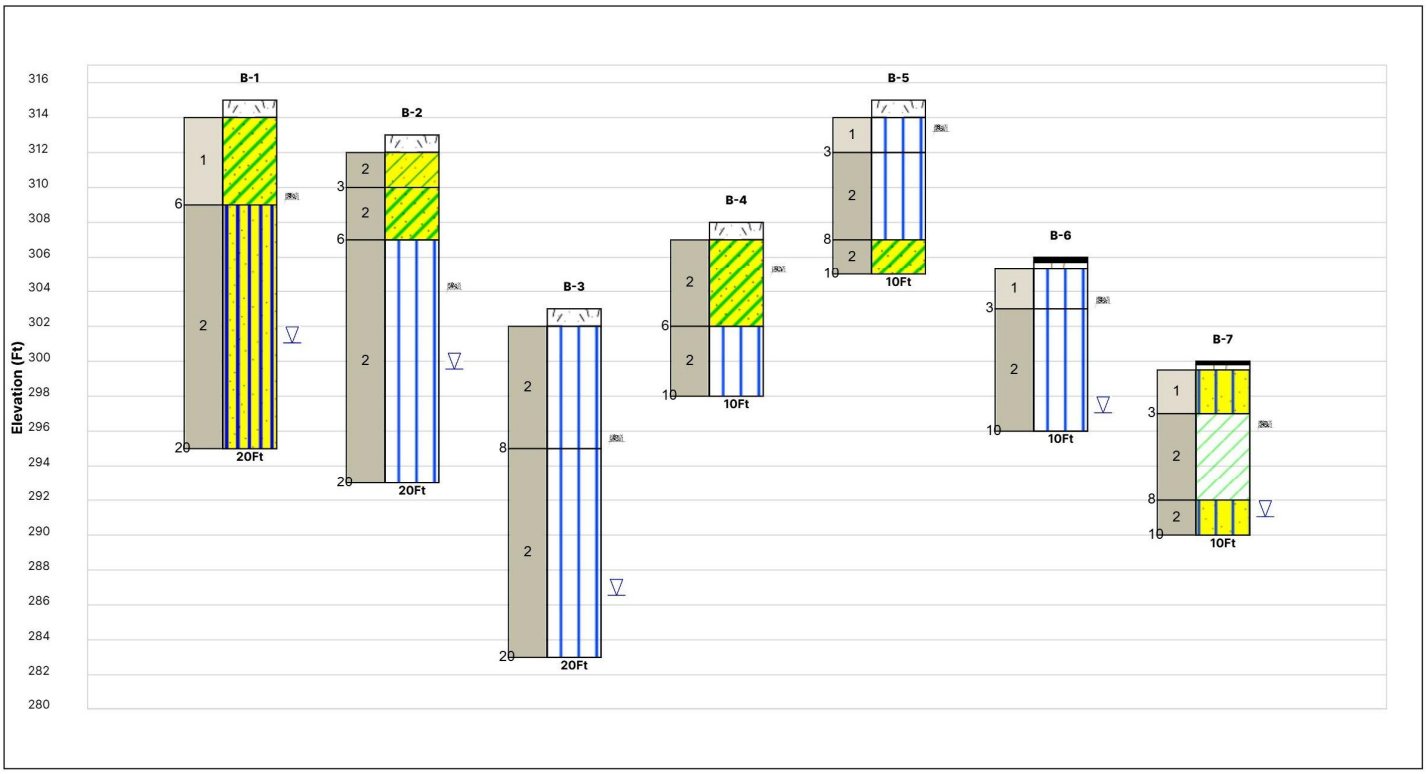
Figures

Contents:

GeoModel

Terracon Project No: 70255183
Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC, 27603,USA

GeoModel



This is not a cross section. This is intended to display the Geotechnical Model only. See individual logs for more detailed conditions

#	Layer Name	General Description
1	Residuum 1	Stiff to Very Stiff Silt, Medium Dense Silty and Clayey Sand
2	Residuum 2	Soft to Stiff Clay and Silt, Loose to Medium Dense Silty and Clayey Sand

Legend

Topsoil, Asphalt, Clayey Sand, Aggregate Base Course, Sandy Silt, Silty Sand, Sandy Lean Clay, Lean Clay, Silt

Groundwater levels are temporal. The levels shown are representative of the date and time of our exploration. Significant changes are possible over time.
Water levels shown are as measured during and/or after drilling. In some cases, boring advancement methods mask the presence/absence of groundwater. See individual logs for details.

First Water Observation
Second Water Observation
Third Water Observation

Notes:

Layering shown on this figure has been developed by the geotechnical engineer for purposes of modeling the subsurface conditions as required for the subsequent geotechnical engineering for this project.
Numbers adjacent to soil column indicate depth below groundsurface.

Attachments

Exploration and Testing Procedures

Field Exploration

Number of Borings	Approximate Boring Depth (feet)	Location
3	20	Building/Retaining Wall Area
4	10	Pavement Areas

Boring Layout and Elevations: Terracon personnel provided the boring layout using handheld GPS equipment and referencing existing site features (estimated horizontal accuracy of about ±20 feet). Approximate ground surface elevations were estimated using Google Earth.

Subsurface Exploration Procedures: We advanced the borings with a rotary drill rig using hollow stem augers. Four split-spoon samples were obtained in the upper 10 feet of each boring and at intervals of 5 feet thereafter. In the split-spoon sampling procedure, a standard 2-inch outer diameter split-barrel sampling spoon was driven into the ground by a 140-pound automatic hammer falling a distance of 30 inches. The number of blows required to advance the sampling spoon the last 12 inches of a normal 18-inch penetration was recorded as the Standard Penetration Test (SPT) resistance value. The SPT resistance values, also referred to as N-values, are indicated on the boring logs at the test depths.

We observed the boreholes while drilling and at the completion of drilling for the presence of groundwater. The attached boring logs provide groundwater information, including groundwater depths, if boreholes were dry, and/or borehole cave-in depths.

For safety purposes, all borings were backfilled with auger cuttings after their completion. Pavements were patched with cold-mix asphalt and/or pre-mixed concrete, as appropriate.

The sampling depths, penetration distances, and other sampling information were recorded on the field boring logs. The samples were placed in appropriate containers and taken to our geotechnical laboratory for testing and classification by geotechnical staff. Our exploration team prepared field boring logs as part of the drilling operations. These field logs included visual classifications of the materials observed during drilling and our interpretation of the subsurface conditions between samples. Final boring logs were prepared from the field logs. The final boring logs represent the Geotechnical Engineer's interpretation of the field logs and include modifications based on observations and tests of the samples in our laboratory.

Laboratory Testing

Geotechnical staff reviewed the field data and assigned laboratory tests. The laboratory testing program included the following types of tests:

- Water content
- Atterberg limits
- Moisture-density relationship (standard Proctor)
- California Bearing Ratio

The laboratory testing program included classification of soil samples by geotechnical staff. Based on the results of our field and laboratory programs, we described and classified the soil samples in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System.

Site Location and Exploration Plans

Contents:

Site Location Plan
Exploration Plan

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

Site Location

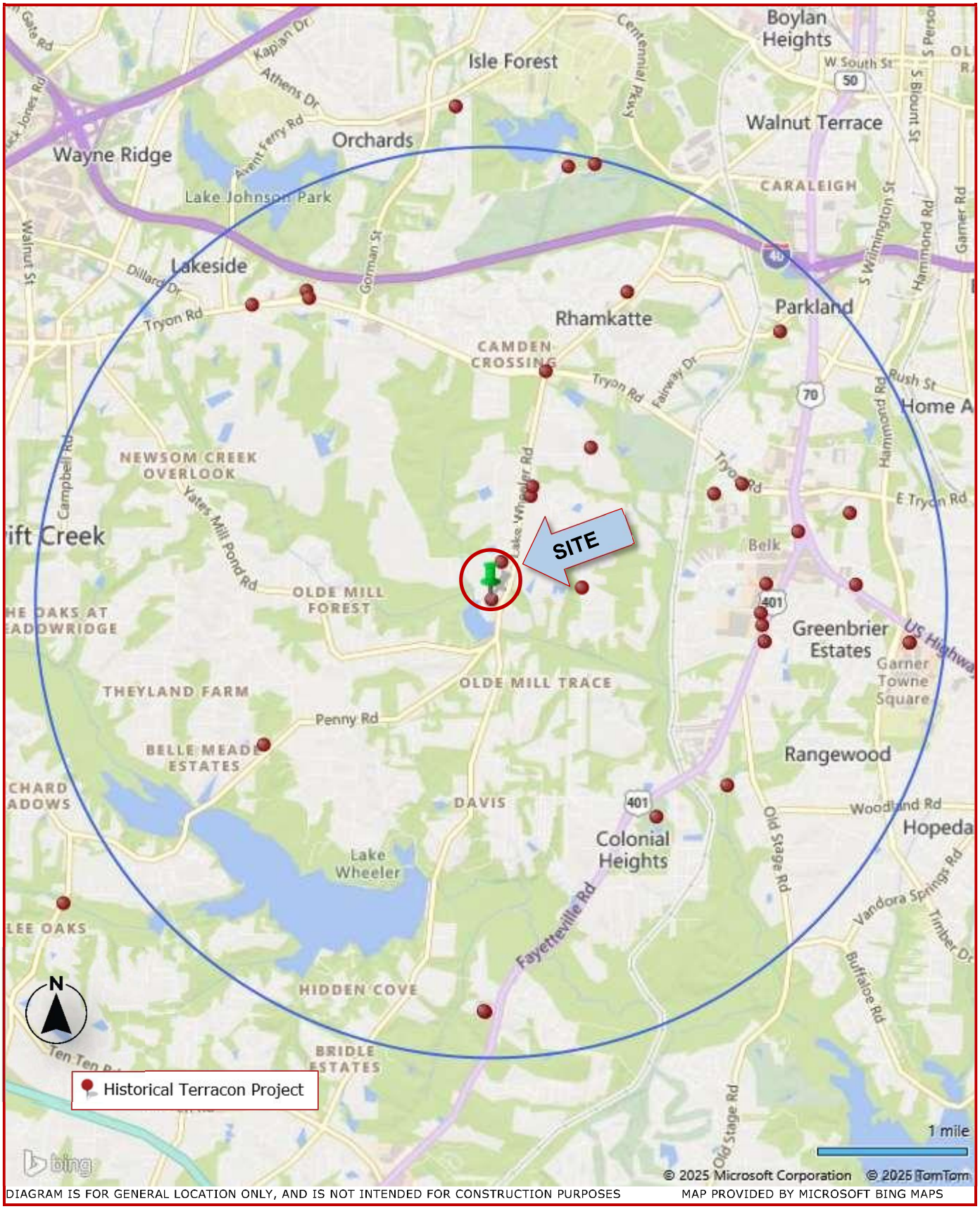


DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES
MAP PROVIDED BY MICROSOFT BING MAPS

Exploration Plan

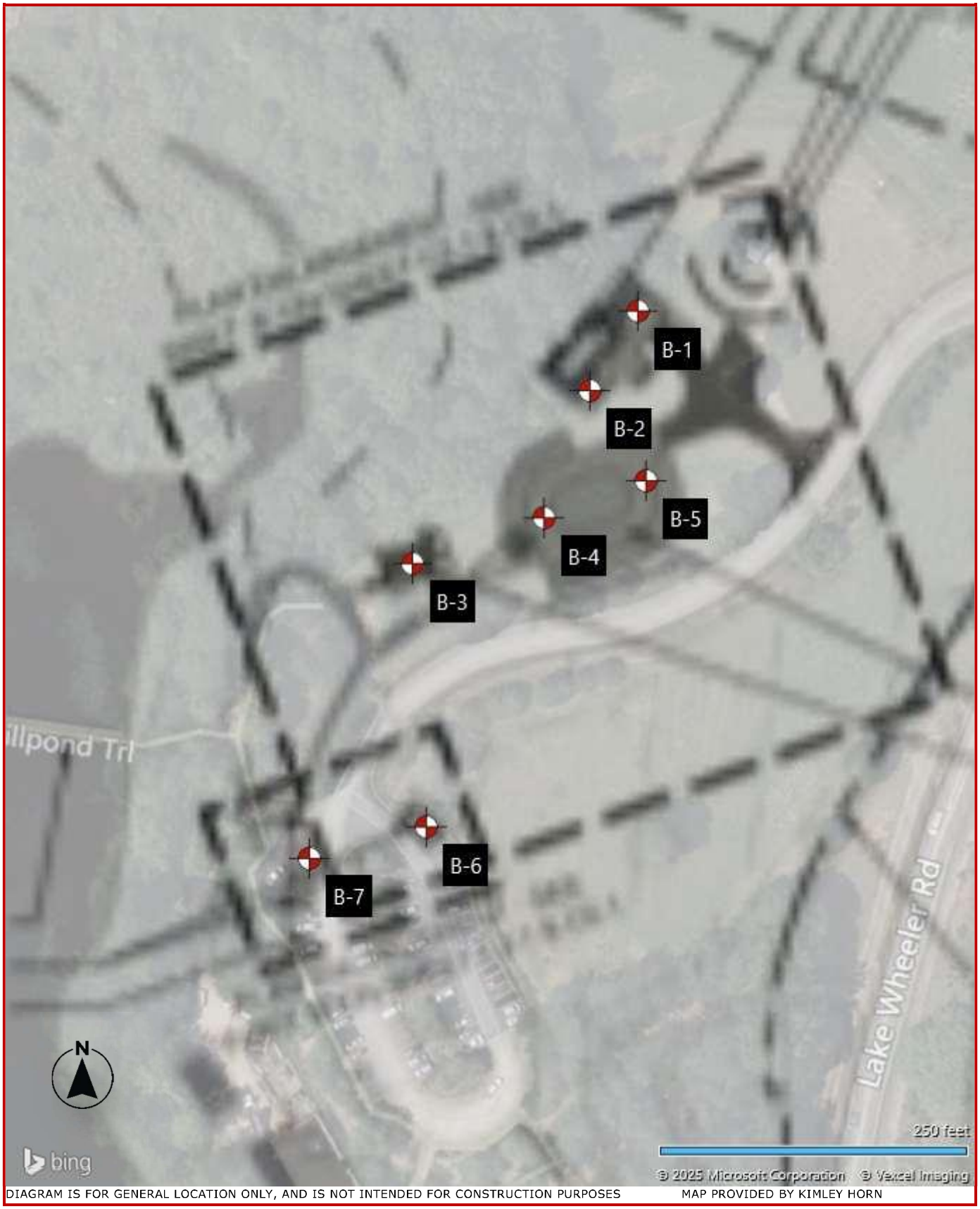


DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES MAP PROVIDED BY KIMLEY HORN

Exploration and Laboratory Results

Contents:

Standard Penetration Test Boring Logs (7 pages)
Moisture Density Relationship
California Bearing Ratio

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC, 27603,USA
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Latitude: 35.7216° Longitude: -78.6867°

BORING LOG NO. B-1

3150 Spring Forest Rd, Ste 100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

Surface Elevation:
315(Ft) +/-

Model Layer	Graphic Log	Lithology Depth (Ft.)	Material Description	Depth (Ft.)	Elevation (Ft.)	Sample Type	Water Level Observations	Field Test Results	Water Content (%)	Percent Fines	Atterberg Limits LL	Atterberg Limits PL	Atterberg Limits PI
		1.0	**TOPSOIL**, (12 inches)		314.0								
1			**CLAYEY SAND (SC)**, tan, orange, and gray, medium dense					1-6-10 N = 16	20.6	42.9	60	28	32
								5-10-10 N = 20					
		6.0		5	309.0								
2			**SANDY SILT (ML)**, orange, yellow, and brown, soft to stiff, trace of mica					3-5-6 N = 11					
								1-1-5 N = 6					
				10									
								1-2-2 N = 4					
				15									
								1-2-3 N = 5					
			Boring Terminated at 20 Ft										

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes
Elevation Reference: Elevation estimated from Google Earth Pro

Water Level Observations
13.5 Ft. While drilling
5.5 Ft. Cave In

Advancement Method
1-20 Ft. Hollow Stem Auger

Abandonment Method
Boring backfilled with auger cuttings upon completion.

Drill Rig
657/Diedrich D-50

Hammer Type
Automatic

Driller
Jason Oxendine

Logged By
Tyler Hall

Boring Started
11/19/2025

Boring Completed
11/19/2025

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC, 27603,USA
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Latitude: 35.7215° Longitude: -78.6868°

BORING LOG NO. B-2

Terracon
3150 Spring Forest Rd, Ste 100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

Surface Elevation:
313(Ft) +/-

Model Layer	Graphic Log	Lithology Depth (Ft.)	Material Description	Depth (Ft.)	Elevation (Ft.)	Sample Type	Water Level Observations	Field Test Results	Water Content (%)	Percent Fines	Atterberg Limits LL	PL	PI
		1.0	**TOPSOIL**, (12 inches)		312.0								
2			**SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)**, tan, medium stiff					5-4-3 N = 7					
		3.0	**CLAYEY SAND (SC)**, tan, loose		310.0			3-4-5 N = 9	20.8	34.5	45	21	24
		6.0	**SILT (ML)**, tan, orange, and brown, soft to medium stiff, trace of mica	5	307.0			1-2-3 N = 5					
								1-1-2 N = 3					
				10									
								1-1-1 N = 2					
				15									
								2-1-3 N = 4					
			Boring Terminated at 20 Ft										

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes
Elevation Reference: Elevation estimated from Google Earth Pro

Water Level Observations
13 Ft. While drilling
8.7 Ft. Cave In

Advancement Method
1-20 Ft. Hollow Stem Auger

Abandonment Method
Boring backfilled with auger cuttings upon completion.

Drill Rig
657/Diedrich D-50

Hammer Type
Automatic

Driller
Jason Oxendine

Logged By
Tyler Hall

Boring Started
11/19/2025

Boring Completed
11/19/2025

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC, 27603,USA
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Latitude: 35.7211° Longitude: -78.6873°

BORING LOG NO. B-3

Terracon
3150 Spring Forest Rd, Ste 100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

Surface Elevation:
303(Ft) +/-

Model Layer	Graphic Log	Lithology Depth (Ft.)	Material Description	Depth (Ft.)	Elevation (Ft.)	Sample Type	Water Level Observations	Field Test Results
		1.0	**TOPSOIL**, (12 inches)		302.0			
2			**SILT (ML)**, tan, gray, and brown, medium stiff to stiff, trace of mica	5				12-8-4 N = 12 2-3-4 N = 7 1-3-3 N = 6
		8.0	**SILT (ML)**, brown, gray, and orange, soft to medium stiff, trace of mica		295.0			
				10				1-1-3 N = 4
				15				1-1-2 N = 3
								2-3-4 N = 7
			Boring Terminated at 20 Ft					

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes
Elevation Reference: Elevation estimated from Google Earth Pro

Water Level Observations
16 Ft. While drilling
7.4 Ft. Cave In

Advancement Method
1-20 Ft. 2.25" Hollow Stem Auger

Abandonment Method
Boring backfilled with auger cuttings upon completion.

Drill Rig
657/Diedrich D-50

Hammer Type
Automatic

Driller
Jason Oxendine

Logged By
Tyler Hall

Boring Started
11/19/2025

Boring Completed
11/19/2025

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC, 27603,USA
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Latitude: 35.7212° Longitude: -78.6869°

BORING LOG NO. B-4

Terracon
3150 Spring Forest Rd, Ste 100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

Surface Elevation:
308(Ft) +/-

Model Layer	Graphic Log	Lithology Depth (Ft.)	Material Description	Depth (Ft.)	Elevation (Ft.)	Sample Type	Water Level Observations	Field Test Results	Water Content (%)	Percent Fines	Atterberg Limits LL	Atterberg Limits PL	Atterberg Limits PI
		1.0	**TOPSOIL**, (12 inches)		307.0								
2			**CLAYEY SAND (SC)**, brown, red, and orange, medium dense					3-5-6 N = 11	16.3	38.9	25	13	12
				5				6-6-8 N = 14					
		6.0			302.0								
			SILT (ML), brownish gray, soft, trace of mica					1-1-2 N = 3					
								1-2-2 N = 4					
			Boring Terminated at 10 Ft										

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes
Elevation Reference: Elevation estimated from Google Earth Pro

Water Level Observations
Groundwater not encountered
2.7 Ft. Cave In

Advancement Method
1-10 Ft. 2.25" Hollow Stem Auger

Abandonment Method
Boring backfilled with auger cuttings upon completion.

Drill Rig
657/Diedrich D-50

Hammer Type
Automatic

Driller
Jason Oxendine

Logged By
Tyler Hall

Boring Started
11/19/2025

Boring Completed
11/19/2025

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC, 27603,USA
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Latitude: 35.7212° Longitude: -78.6866°

BORING LOG NO. B-5

3150 Spring Forest Rd, Ste 100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

Surface Elevation:
315(Ft) +/-

Model Layer	Graphic Log	Lithology Depth (Ft.)	Material Description	Depth (Ft.)	Elevation (Ft.)	Sample Type	Water Level Observations	Field Test Results
		1.0	**TOPSOIL**, (12 inches)		314.0			
1			**SILT (ML)**, brown, red, and orange, very stiff					5-6-10 N = 16
		3.0			312.0			
2			**SILT (ML)**, brown, red, and orange, stiff	5				3-5-7 N = 12
								3-4-7 N = 11
		8.0			307.0			
			CLAYEY SAND (SC), brown and orange, loose					3-3-4 N = 7
			Boring Terminated at 10 Ft					

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes
Elevation Reference: Elevation estimated from Google Earth Pro

Water Level Observations
Groundwater not encountered
1.6 Ft. Cave In

Advancement Method
1-10 Ft. Hollow Stem Auger

Abandonment Method
Boring backfilled with auger cuttings upon completion.

Drill Rig
657/Diedrich D-50

Hammer Type
Automatic

Driller
Jason Oxendine

Logged By
Tyler Hall

Boring Started
11/19/2025

Boring Completed
11/19/2025

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC, 27603,USA
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Latitude: 35.7205° Longitude: -78.6872°

BORING LOG NO. B-6

3150 Spring Forest Rd, Ste 100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

Surface Elevation:
306(Ft) +/-

Model Layer	Graphic Log	Lithology Depth (Ft.)	Material Description	Depth (Ft.)	Elevation (Ft.)	Sample Type	Water Level Observations	Field Test Results
		0.3	**ASPHALT**, (4 inches)		305.7			
		0.7	**AGGREGATE BASE COURSE**, (4 inches)		305.3			
1			**SILT (ML)**, red and brown, stiff					7-7-8 N = 15
		3.0			303.0			
2			**SILT (ML)**, orange and tan, soft to medium stiff, trace of mica	5				3-2-3 N = 5
								2-1-2 N = 3
								1-2-3 N = 5
			Boring Terminated at 10 Ft					

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes
Elevation Reference: Elevation estimated from Google Earth Pro

Water Level Observations
8.5 Ft. While drilling
2.5 Ft. Cave In

Advancement Method
1-10 Ft. 2.25" Hollow Stem Auger

Abandonment Method
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings and patched with asphalt upon completion.

Drill Rig
657/Diedrich D-50

Hammer Type
Automatic

Driller
Jason Oxendine

Logged By
Tyler Hall

Boring Started
11/18/2025

Boring Completed
11/18/2025

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC, 27603,USA
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Latitude: 35.7204° Longitude: -78.6875°

BORING LOG NO. B-7

Terracon
3150 Spring Forest Rd, Ste 100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

Surface Elevation:
300(Ft) +/-

Model Layer	Graphic Log	Lithology Depth (Ft.)	Material Description	Depth (Ft.)	Elevation (Ft.)	Sample Type	Water Level Observations	Field Test Results
		0.2			299.8			
		0.5	**ASPHALT**, (2 inches)		299.5			
			AGGREGATE BASE COURSE, (4 inches)					
1			**SILTY SAND (SM)**, gray, medium dense					4-8-9 N = 17
		3.0			297.0			
			LEAN CLAY (CL), brown and gray, medium stiff to stiff					3-2-5 N = 7
2				5				
								3-7-5 N = 12
		8.0			292.0			
			SILTY SAND (SM), gray and brown, loose					3-3-3 N = 6
			Boring Terminated at 10 Ft					

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes
Elevation Reference: Elevation estimated from Google Earth Pro

Water Level Observations
8.5 Ft. While drilling
3.6 Ft. Cave In

Advancement Method
1-10 Ft. 2.25" Hollow Stem Auger

Abandonment Method
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings and patched with asphalt upon completion.

Drill Rig
657/Diedrich D-50

Hammer Type
Automatic

Driller
Jason Oxendine

Logged By
Tyler Hall

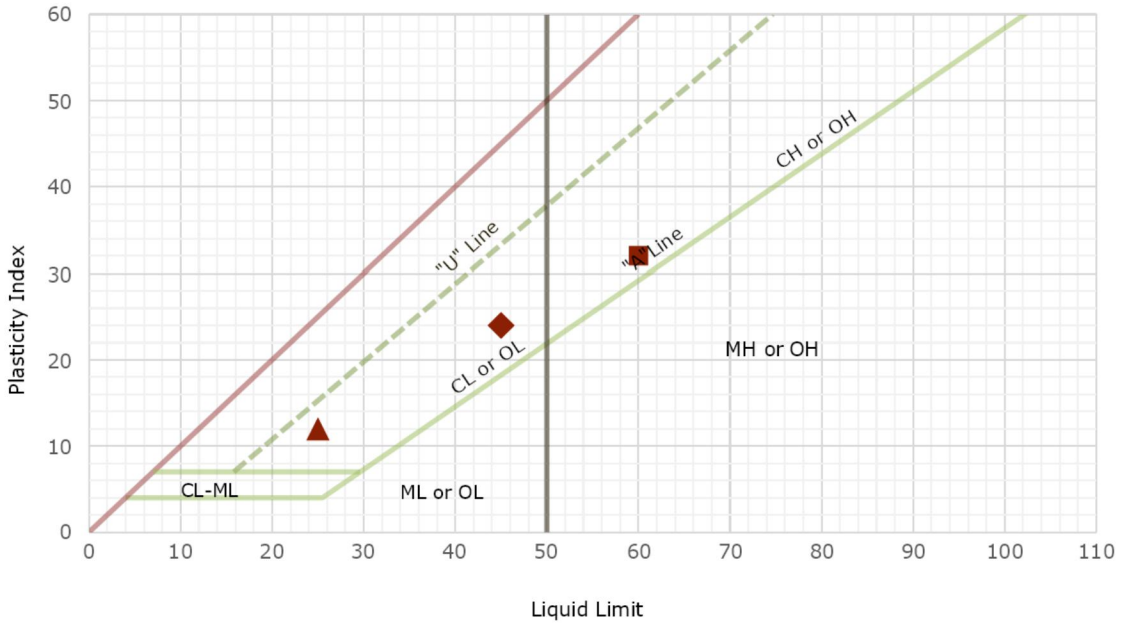
Boring Started
11/18/2025

Boring Completed
11/18/2025

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road | Raleigh, NC
Terracon Project No. 70255183

3150 Spring Forest Rd
Raleigh, NC

Atterberg Limit Results
ASTM D4318



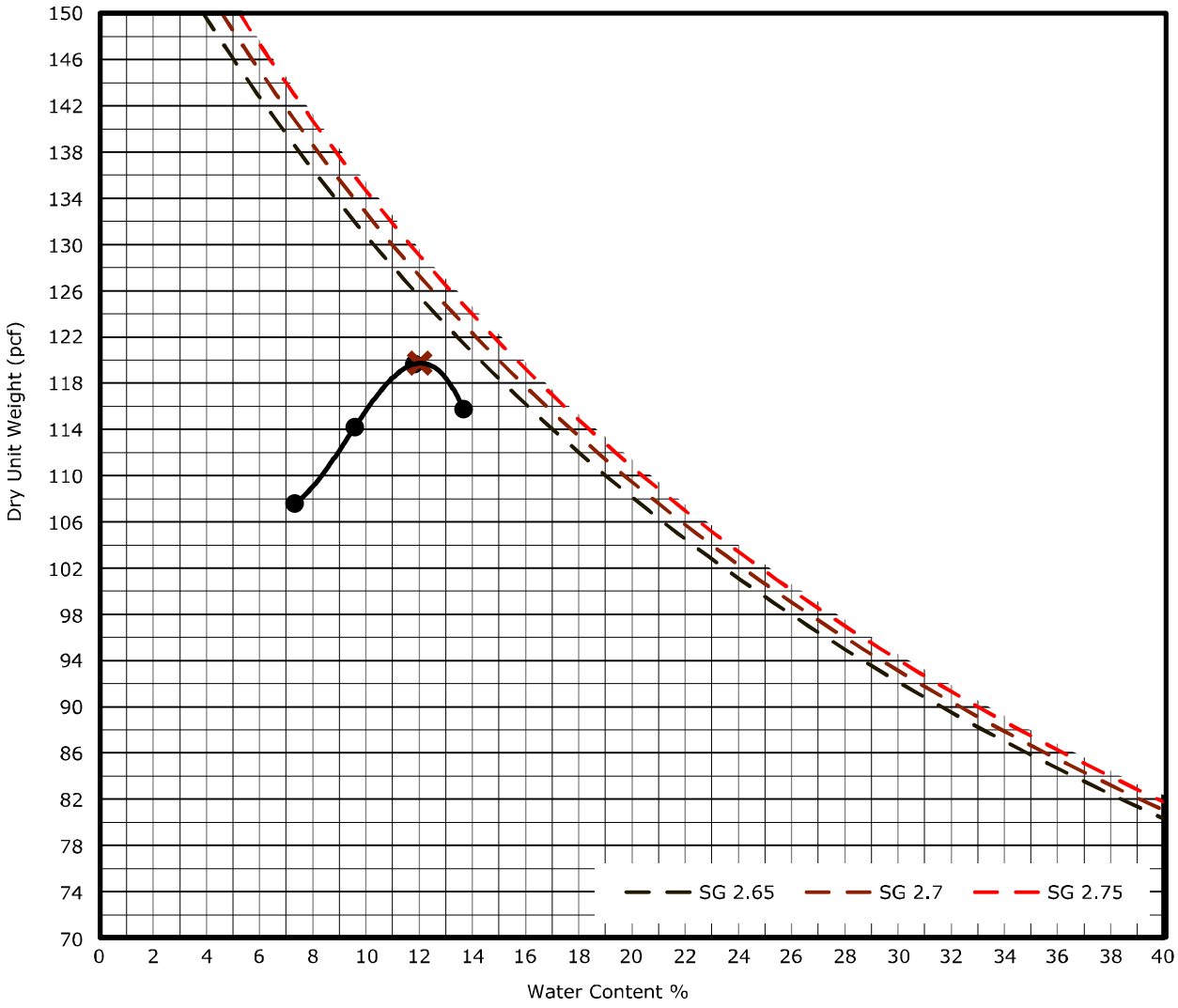
	Boring ID	Depth (Ft)	LL	PL	PI	Fines (%)	Description	USCS
■	B-1	1	60	28	32	42.9	Clayey Sand	SC
◆	B-2	3.5	45	21	24	34.5	Clayey Sand	SC
▲	B-4	1	25	13	12	38.9	Clayey Sand	SC

Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road | Raleigh, NC 27603
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Terracon
100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort

ASTM D698



Boring ID	Depth (ft)	Description of Materials	USCS	Fines (%)	LL	PL	PI
B-4	1 - 2.5	Yellowish Brown Clayey Sand	SC	38.9	25	13	12

Test Method	Sample Prep	Rammer	Maximum Dry Density (pcf)	Optimum Water Content (%)
B	Dry	Manual - Circular Face	119.7	12.0

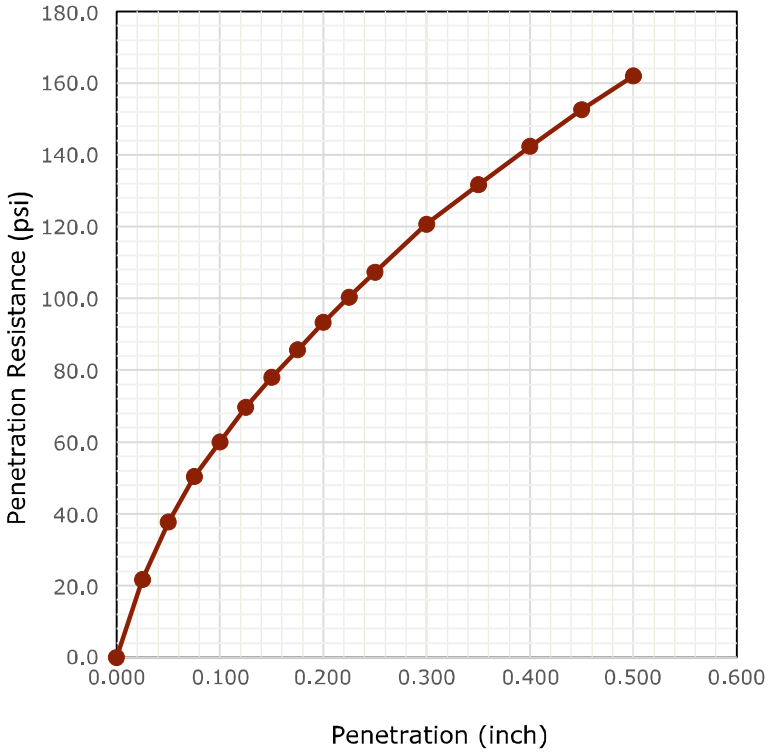
Historic Yates Mill County Park
4620 Lake Wheeler Road | Raleigh, NC 27603
Terracon Project No. 70255183

Terracon
100
Raleigh, NC 27616-2810

California Bearing Ratio

ASTM D1883 - 1 PT Method

Sample Information					
Source of Material	B-4 @ 1'			**Proctor Method**	ASTM D698 - Method A
Maximum Dry Density (pcf)	119.7			**Optimum Moisture**	12
Atterberg Limits	**LL**	**PL**	**PI**	**Percent Fines**	38.9
	25	13	12		
Description of Material	Yellowish Brown			**Sample Condition**	Soaked



CBR Test Data	
Length of Soaking (hours)	96
Surcharge Weight (lbs)	10
Dry Density Before Soak (pcf)	116.2
Compaction of Proctor (%)	97.1
Moisture After Comp. (%)	11.6
Top 1" After Soaking (%)	14.5
Swell (%)	0.2
CBR Value at 0.100 inch	6
CBR Value at 0.200 inch	6.2
Remarks:	0

Supporting Information

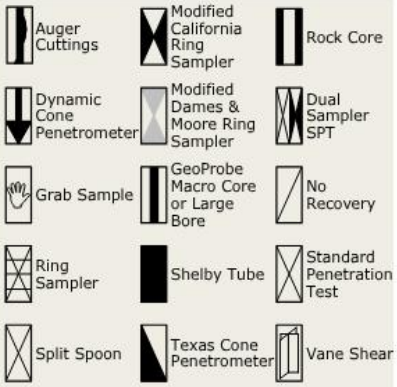
Contents:

General Notes
Unified Soil Classification System

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

General Notes

Sampling



Water Level

Water levels indicated on the soil boring logs are the levels measured in the borehole at the times indicated. Groundwater level variations will occur over time. In low permeability soils, accurate determination of groundwater levels is not possible with short term water level observations.

Field Tests

N	Standard Penetration Test Resistance (Blows/Ft.)
(HP)	Hand Penetrometer
(T)	Torvane
(DCP)	Dynamic Cone Penetrometer
UC	Unconfined Compressive Strength
(PID)	Photo-Ionization Detector
(OVA)	Organic Vapor Analyzer

Descriptive Soil Classification

Soil classification as noted on the soil boring logs is based Unified Soil Classification System. Where sufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils consistent with ASTM D2487 "Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes" this procedure is used. ASTM D2488 "Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)" is also used to classify the soils, particularly where insufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils in accordance with ASTM D2487. In addition to USCS classification, coarse grained soils are classified on the basis of their in-place relative density, and fine-grained soils are classified on the basis of their consistency. See "Strength Terms" table below for details. The ASTM standards noted above are for reference to methodology in general. In some cases, variations to methods are applied as a result of local practice or professional judgment.

Location And Elevation Notes

Exploration point locations as shown on the Exploration Plan and as noted on the soil boring logs in the form of Latitude and Longitude are approximate. See Exploration and Testing Procedures in the report for the methods used to locate the exploration points for this project. Surface elevation data annotated with +/- indicates that no actual topographical survey was conducted to confirm the surface elevation. Instead, the surface elevation was approximately determined from topographic maps of the area.

Strength Terms

Relative Density of Coarse-Grained Soils (More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.) Density determined by Standard Penetration Resistance		Consistency of Fine-Grained Soils (50% or more passing the No. 200 sieve.) Consistency determined by laboratory shear strength testing, field visual-manual procedures or standard penetration resistance		
Relative Density	**Standard Penetration or N-Value (Blows/Ft.)**	**Consistency**	**Unconfined Compressive Strength Qu (tsf)**	**Standard Penetration or N-Value (Blows/Ft.)**
Very Loose	0 - 3	Very Soft	less than 0.25	0 - 1
Loose	4 - 9	Soft	0.25 to 0.50	2 - 4
Medium Dense	10 - 29	Medium Stiff	0.50 to 1.00	5 - 8
Dense	30 - 50	Stiff	1.00 to 2.00	9 - 15
Very Dense	> 50	Very Stiff	2.00 to 4.00	16 - 30
		Hard	> 4.00	> 30

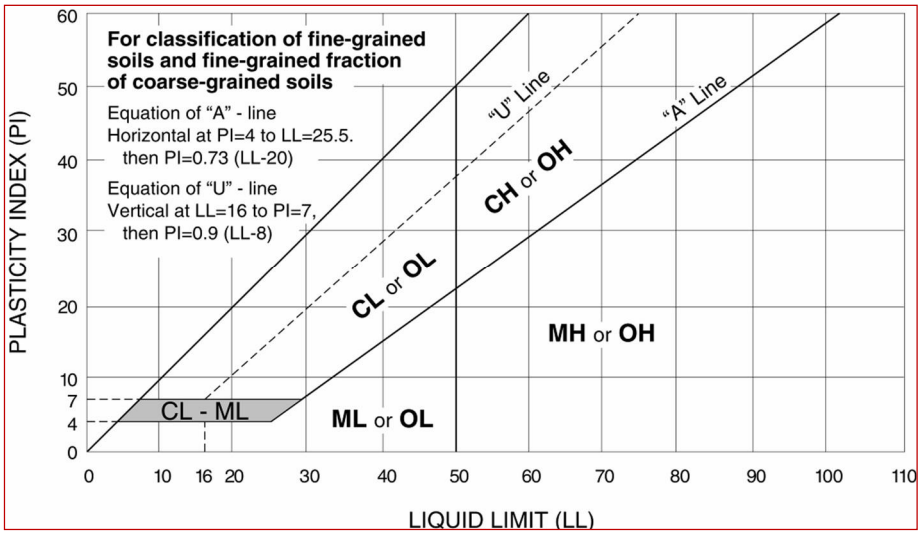
Relevance of Exploration and Laboratory Test Results

Exploration/field results and/or laboratory test data contained within this document are intended for application to the project as described in this document. Use of such exploration/field results and/or laboratory test data should not be used independently of this document.

Unified Soil Classification System

Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests [A]				Soil Classification	
				Group Symbol	Group Name [B]
Coarse-Grained Soils: More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve	**Gravels:** More than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	**Clean Gravels:** Less than 5% fines [C]	Cu≥4 and 1≤Cc≤3 [E]	GW	Well-graded gravel [F]
			Cu<4 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] [E]	GP	Poorly graded gravel [F]
		Gravels with Fines: More than 12% fines [C]	Fines classify as ML or MH	GM	Silty gravel [F, G, H]
			Fines classify as CL or CH	GC	Clayey gravel [F, G, H]
	Sands: 50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	**Clean Sands:** Less than 5% fines [D]	Cu≥6 and 1≤Cc≤3 [E]	SW	Well-graded sand [I]
			Cu<6 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] [E]	SP	Poorly graded sand [I]
		Sands with Fines: More than 12% fines [D]	Fines classify as ML or MH	SM	Silty sand [G, H, I]
			Fines classify as CL or CH	SC	Clayey sand [G, H, I]
Fine-Grained Soils: 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve	**Silts and Clays:** Liquid limit less than 50	**Inorganic:**	PI > 7 and plots above "A" line [J]	CL	Lean clay [K, L, M]
			PI < 4 or plots below "A" line [J]	ML	Silt [K, L, M]
		Organic:	$\frac{LL\ oven\ dried}{LL\ not\ dried} < 0.75$	OL	Organic clay [K, L, M, N]
					Organic silt [K, L, M, O]
	Silts and Clays: Liquid limit 50 or more	**Inorganic:**	PI plots on or above "A" line	CH	Fat clay [K, L, M]
			PI plots below "A" line	MH	Elastic silt [K, L, M]
		Organic:	$\frac{LL\ oven\ dried}{LL\ not\ dried} < 0.75$	OH	Organic clay [K, L, M, P]
					Organic silt [K, L, M, Q]
Highly organic soils:	Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor			PT	Peat

[A] Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75-mm) sieve.
[B] If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.
[C] Gravels with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt, GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay, GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt, GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay.
[D] Sands with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: SW-SM well-graded sand with silt, SW-SC well-graded sand with clay, SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay.
[E] $Cu = D_{60}/D_{10}$ $Cc = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$
[F] If soil contains ≥ 15% sand, add "with sand" to group name.
[G] If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.
[H] If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.
[I] If soil contains ≥ 15% gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.
[J] If Atterberg limits plot in shaded area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.
[K] If soil contains 15 to 29% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant.
[L] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200 predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.
[M] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.
[N] PI ≥ 4 and plots on or above "A" line.
[O] PI < 4 or plots below "A" line.
[P] PI plots on or above "A" line.
[Q] PI plots below "A" line.



TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Historic Yates Mill County Park

4620 Lake Wheeler Road
Raleigh, NC

Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

336 Fayetteville Street
Raleigh, NC 27601

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Work covered by the Contract Documents.
2. Type of the Contract.
3. Work phases.
4. Work under other contracts.
5. Products ordered in advance.
6. Use of premises.
7. Owner's occupancy requirements.
8. Work restrictions.
9. Specification formats and conventions.

1.3 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. Project Identification: Historic Yates Mill County Park

1. Project Location: 4620 Lake Wheeler Road, Raleigh, NC 27603

B. Owner: Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

1. Owner's Representative: Eric Staehle, Project Manager, Wake County Facilities Design and Construction, 336 Fayetteville Street, Raleigh, NC 27601

C. Lead Designer: Kimley-Horn and Associates, Inc., 1001 Winstead Dr., Suite 500, Cary, NC 27513

D. Lead Designer’s Consultants: The Lead Designer has retained the following design professionals, who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

1. Architect:
In situ studio
Contact: Zach Hoffman
Email: Zach@InsituStudio.us
704 N. Person Street
Raleigh, NC 27604

2. MEP:
HDM Associates, Inc.
Contact: Richard Thorne Jr.
Email: HDMA@Mindspring.com

106 Tarheel Court
Elizabeth City, NC 27909

3. Structural Engineer
Lysaght and Associates, P.A. Structural Engineers
Contact: Mark Blankinship
Email: markb@LysaghtAssociates.com
120 Saint Marys Street
Raleigh, NC 27605

4. Surveyor
McKim & Creed
Contact: Robin Lee
Email: RLee@Mckimcreed.com
4300 Edwards Mill Road
Raleigh, NC 27612

5. Geotechnical Engineer
Terracon
Contact: Rachel Lujan
Email: Rachel.Lujan@terracon.com
3150 Spring Forest Road, Suite 100
Raleigh, NC 27616

E. Project Coordinator: Melissa Brand, PLA, Kimley-Horn and Associates, Inc., 1001 Winstead Dr., Suite 500, Cary, NC 27513

F. The Work consists of the following:

1. The Work includes:
   a. Parking expansion
   b. Visitor Center renovation
   c. Maintenance Building construction
   d. Maintenance Yard construction
   e. Mill Pond Pavilion construction
   f. Concrete sidewalk construction
   g. Decomposed Granite Overlook construction
   h. Observation Deck construction
   i. Masonry Wall construction
   j. Landscaping
   k. Earthwork
   l. Utility services
   m. Site concrete
   n. Erosion control
   o. Site furnishings
   p. Security and fiber installation

1.4 TYPE OF CONTRACT

A. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.5 WORK PHASES

A. Before commencing Work of each phase, submit a schedule showing the sequence, commencement and completion dates, and move -in dates of Owner's personnel for all phases of the Work.

1.6 WORK UNDER OTHER CONTRACTS

A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under separate contracts.

B. Future Work: All work on this site will be performed under this Contract.

1.7 USE OF PREMISES

A. General: Contractor shall have full use of premises for construction operations, including use of Project site, during construction period. Contractor's use of premises is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.

B. Use of Site: Limit use of premises to areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.

1. Owner Occupancy: Allow for the use of the existing visitor center classroom by Wake County until the visitor center renovations are fully constructed and operational.
2. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways, loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Wake County, Wake County employees, park visitors, and emergency vehicles at all times. The park will remain open to the public during construction. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.

    a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances.
    b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.8 OCCUPANCY REQUIREMENTS

A. Full Wake County Occupancy: Wake County will occupy the existing visitor center classroom during the entire construction period prior to completion of the visitor center renovations. Cooperate with Wake County during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate County usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with the County’s day-to-day operations. Maintain existing entrances and exits, unless otherwise indicated.

1.9 WORK RESTRICTIONS

A. On-Site Work Hours: Work shall be generally performed during normal business working hours of 8:00 a.m. to 5 p.m., Monday through Friday. Due to the time sensitive nature of the project, this may be extended to include weekends and after hours as allowable by the City of Raleigh and Wake County noise ordinance.

B. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner's and the County’s Project Coordinator’s written permission.

C. Noise, Vibration, Dust, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, dust, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.

1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.

D. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products, alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances of the Project site is not permitted.

1.10 SPECIFICATION FORMATS AND CONVENTIONS

A. Specification Format: The Specifications are organized into Divisions and Sections using the 16-division format and CSI/CSC's "MasterFormat" numbering system.

1. Section Identification: The Specifications use Section numbers and titles to help cross-referencing in the Contract Documents. Sections in the Project Manual are in numeric sequence; however, the sequence is incomplete because all available Section numbers are not used. Consult the table of contents at the beginning of the Project Manual to determine numbers and names of Sections in the Contract Documents.
2. Division 1: Sections in Division 1 govern the execution of the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.

B. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:

1. Abbreviated Language: Language used in the Specifications and other Contract Documents is abbreviated. Words and meanings shall be interpreted as appropriate. Words implied, but not stated, shall be inferred as the sense requires. Singular words shall be interpreted as plural and plural words shall be interpreted as singular where applicable as the context of the Contract Documents indicates.
2. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. Requirements expressed in the imperative mood are to be performed by Contractor. Occasionally, the indicative or subjunctive mood may be used in the Section Text for clarity to describe responsibilities that must be fulfilled indirectly by Contractor or by others when so noted.

a. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.

C. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.

D. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.

B. Types of allowances include the following:
1. Lump-sum allowances.
2. Lump sum allowances.
3. Quantity allowances.
4. Contingency allowances.
5. Testing and inspecting allowances.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Allowance: A quantity of work or dollar amount included in the Contract, established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

1.4 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Landscape Architect and Owner of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.

B. At Landscape Architect, or Owner's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.

C. Purchase products and systems selected by Landscape Architect or Owner from the designated supplier.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.

C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.7 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Engineer of Record under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
   1. If requested, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.8 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
   1. If requested, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.9 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.

B. Contractor's related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.

C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit.

D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.10 TESTING AND INSPECTING ALLOWANCES

A. Testing and inspecting allowances include the cost of engaging testing agencies, actual tests and inspections, and reporting results.

B. The allowance does not include incidental labor required to assist the testing agency or costs for retesting if previous tests and inspections result in failure. The cost for incidental labor to assist the testing agency shall be included in the Contract Sum.

C. Costs of testing and inspection services not specifically required by the Contract Documents are Contractor responsibilities and are not included in the allowance.

D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the testing and inspecting allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.11 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, required maintenance materials, and similar margins.
   1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
   2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
   3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to lump sum allowances.
   4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.

B. Submit claims for increased costs due to a change in the scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
   1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of Work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
   2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance No. 1: Removal of unsatisfactory soil, debris, and plastic/elastic soil excavation and disposal off-site and replacement with satisfactory soil material from off-site, as specified in Section 312000 “Earthwork.”
   1. Unit of Measurement: cubic yard of soil excavated and replaced
   2. Allowance Units: 100 CuYd

B. Allowance No. 2: Removal of unsatisfactory soil, debris, and plastic/elastic soil and replacement with satisfactory structural soil material on-site, as specified in Section 312000 “Earthwork.”
   1. Unit of Measurement: cubic yard of soil excavated and replaced
   2. Allowance Units: 100 CuYd

C. Allowance No. 3: Mass rock removal and replacement with satisfactory soil material, as specified in Section 312000 “Earthwork.”
   1. Unit of Measurement: cubic yard of rock excavated and replaced
   2. Allowance Units: 100 CuYd

D. Allowance No. 4: Trench rock removal and replacement with satisfactory soil material, as specified in Section 312000 “Earthwork.”
   1. Unit of Measurement: cubic yard of rock excavated and replaced
   2. Allowance Units: 100 CuYd

E. Allowance No. 5: Mirafi 500X geotextile, or approved equal.
   1. Unit of Measurement: square foot of geotextile fabric
   2. Allowance Units: 200 SqYd

F. Allowance No. 6: Include a contingency allowance for use according to Owner's written instructions.
   1. Unit of Measurement: lump sum
   2. Allowance Units: $100,000

G. Allowance No. 7: Installation of security equipment on-site. Includes installation of security equipment to be installed by subcontractor on Wake County approved vendor list. General Contractor shall be responsible for bidding the allowance bid with the County approved vendor list.
   1. Unit of Measurement: lump sum
   2. Allowance Units: $145,000

H. Allowance No. 8: Security fiber optic and telecommunications cabling installation. Includes installation of security fiber optic and telecommunications cabling to be installed by subcontractor on Wake County approved vendor list. General Contractor shall be responsible for bidding the allowance bid with the County approved vendor list.
   1. Unit of Measurement: lump sum
   2. Allowance Units: $50,000

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012200 – UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedures for using unit prices to adjust quantity allowances.
2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
3. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for field testing by an independent testing agency.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Unit price is an amount incorporated into the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.4 PROCEDURES

A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.

B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.

C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.

D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the Part 3 "Schedule of Unit Prices" Article contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

A. Unit Price No. 1: Removal of unsatisfactory soil, debris, and plastic/elastic soil excavation and disposal off-site and replacement with satisfactory soil material from off-site.
   1. Description: Unsatisfactory soil excavation of highly plastic clays and clayey silt soils (CH, MH) and coarse rock fragments and disposal off-site and replacement with imported Structural Fill, as required, in accordance with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
   2. Unit of Measurement: cubic yard (CY) of soil excavated and replaced.

B. Unit Price No. 2: Removal of unsatisfactory soil, debris, and plastic/elastic soil and replacement with satisfactory structural soil material on-site.
   1. Description: Unsatisfactory soil excavation of highly plastic clays and clayey silt soils (CH, MH) and coarse rock fragments and disposal off-site and replacement with on-site Structural Fill, as required, in accordance with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
   2. Unit of Measurement: cubic yard (CY) of soil excavated and replaced.

C. Unit Price No. 3: Mass rock removal and replacement with satisfactory soil material.
   1. Description: Classified mass rock excavation and disposal off-site and replacement with satisfactory soil material, as required, in accordance with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
   2. Unit of Measurement: cubic yard (CY) of rock excavated and replaced.

D. Unit Price No. 4: Trench rock removal and replacement with satisfactory soil material.
   1. Description: Classified trench rock excavation and disposal off-site and replacement with satisfactory soil material as required, in accordance with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
   2. Unit of Measurement: cubic yard (CY) of rock excavated and replaced.

E. Unit Price No. 5: Mirafi 500X geotextile, or approved equal.
   1. Description: Mirafi 500X geotextile fabric, or approved equal, for use during construction, in accordance with the Geotech report.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of geotextile fabric used.

F. Unit Price No. 6: Landscape Boulders
   1. Description: Furnishing and installation of decorative stone boulders around drain inlet at Mill Pond Pavilion.
   2. Unit of Measurement: Each (EA) Boulder

G. Unit Price No. 7: Canopy Tree
   1. Description: 2.5” cal. B&B deciduous canopy tree to include topsoil, mulch and backfill material. Species shall be selected from the range of proposed canopy trees listed on the Plant List.
   2. Unit of Measurement: Each (EA) Tree

H. Unit Price No. 8: Asphalt Surface Standard Duty, 3” S9.5B
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 3” Standard Duty Asphalt Surface.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of asphalt

I. Unit Price No. 9: Aggregate Base Course, 6” – Standard Duty Asphalt
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 6” Aggregate Base Course layer under all Standard Duty Asphalt Surface.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of aggregate base course

J. Unit Price No. 10: Asphalt Surface Heavy Duty, 2" S9.5B
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 2" Heavy Duty Asphalt Surface.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of asphalt

K. Unit Price No. 11: Asphalt Binder Heavy Duty, 4" I19.0B
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 4" thick Heavy Duty Asphalt Binder.
   2. Unit od Measurement: square yard (SY) of heavy duty asphalt binder

L. Unit Price No. 12: Aggregate Base Course, 8" – Heavy Duty Asphalt
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 8" thick layer of Aggregate Base Course under all Heavy Duty Asphalt Surfaces.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of aggregate base course

M. Unit Price No. 13: 4" Concrete Sidewalk
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 4" thick Concrete Sidewalk.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of concrete

N. Unit Price No. 14: Heavy Duty Concrete, 6" Depth
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 6" thick Heavy Duty Concrete.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of concrete

O. Unit Price No. 15: Aggregate Base Course, 6" – Heavy Duty Concrete
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 6" thick layer of Aggregate Base Course under all heavy-duty concrete surfaces.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of aggregate base course

P. Unit Price No. 16: Gravel Pave 2 – Reinforced ABC Gravel
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of Gravel Pave 2 reinforcement and gravel material.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of Gravel Pave 2

Q. Unit Price No. 17: Grass Pave 2 – Reinforced Turf
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of Grass Pave 2 reinforcement
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of Grass Pave 2

R. Unit Price No. 18: Standard Duty Exposed Aggregate Concrete
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of Exposed Aggregate Concrete.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of exposed aggregate concrete

S. Unit Price No. 19: Heavy Duty Exposed Aggregate Concrete
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of Heavy Duty Exposed Aggregate Concrete.
   2. Unit of Measurement: square yard (SY) of exposed aggregate concrete

T. Unit Price No. 20: 8' Ht. Polyoelfin Coated Chain Link Fence
   1. Description: Materials and Installation of 8' Ht. Polyoelfin Coated Chain Link Fence
   2. Unit of Measurement: linear foot (LF) of chain link fence

U. Unit Price No. 21: Mobilization for Removal of Mass Rock or Trench Rock
   1. Description: Mobilization included for the removal of mass rock or trench rock across the site.
   2. Unit of Measurement: lump sum (LS)

END OF SECTION 012200

SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
   1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
   2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.3 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.

B. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.

C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

A. Alternate No. 1: Observation Deck, 2 Benches, 1 Trash Receptacle and Concrete Pad, and Overlook Binoculars.
   1. Base Bid: The base bid condition shall not include any work associated with the Observation Deck, 2 Benches, 1 Trash Receptacle and Concrete Pad, and Overlook Binoculars. This area shall stay as existing.
   2. Add Alternate: Include the Observation Deck, 2 Benches, 1 Trash Receptacle and Concrete Pad, and Overlook Binoculars as shown on Sheet C3.4.

B. Alternate No. 2: Natural Surface Overlook Pad and 1 Wood Backless Bench
   1. Base Bid: The base bid condition shall not include any work associated with the Natural Surface Overlook Pad and 1 Wood Backless Bench shown on Sheet C3.4. This area shall stay as existing.
   2. Add Alternate: Include the Natural Surface Overlook Pad and 1 Wood Backless Bench as shown on C3.4.

C. Alternate No. 3: Reinforced Turf
   1. Base Bid: TifTuf Bermuda shall be included in base bid, regardless of whether or not the reinforcing is selected. Reinforcing is considered to be the GrassPave2 and associated sandy, gravel road base.
   2. Add Alternate: Include the Reinforced Turf illustrated in Detail 6/C3.5.

END OF SECTION 012300

SECTION 012500 – SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Document 002600 "Procurement Substitution Procedures" for requirements for substitution requests prior to award of Contract.
2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
3. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
4. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
1. Substitution Request Form: Use form acceptable to Owner and/or Landscape Architect.
2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record and owners.

h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
i. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
j. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
k. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
l. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.

3. Landscape Architect's Action: If necessary, Landscape Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Landscape Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Landscape Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
b. Use product specified if Landscape Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.5 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
1. Conditions: Landscape Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Landscape Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience:
1. Not allowed unless otherwise indicated.

END OF SECTION 012500

SECTION 012600 – CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.
2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for forms for contract modifications provided as part of email correspondence or other email correspondence or other web-based project management software.

1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. Landscape Architect will issue through Construction Manager supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on email correspondence or other web-based project management software.

1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Construction Manager will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Construction Manager are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and lump sum, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.

B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Construction Manager.
1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and lump sum, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.

3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.

1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Town of Morrisville Construction Manager will issue a Contract Modification and Change Order via Docusign for signatures of Owner and Contractor on form provided as part of email correspondence or other web-based project management software.

1.6 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. Work Change Directive: Construction Manager may issue a Work Change Directive on form provided as part of email correspondence or other web-based project management software. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
   1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.
   1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 – PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Document 004373 "Proposed Schedule of Values Form" for requirements for furnishing proposed schedule of values with bid.
2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
3. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
4. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Submit the schedule of values to Landscape Architect, Engineer and Owner through Construction Manager at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
3. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
4. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
5. Subschedules for Separate Design Contracts: Where the Owner has retained design professionals under separate contracts who will each provide certification of payment requests, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with the scope of each design services contract, as described in Section 011000 "Summary."

B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
a. Project name and location.
b. Owner's name.
c. Owner's Project number.
d. Name of Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record

e. Engineer of Record's Project number.
f. Contractor's name and address.
g. Date of submittal.

2. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
   a. Related Specification Section or division.
   b. Description of the Work.
   c. Name of subcontractor.
   d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
   e. Name of supplier.
   f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
   g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
      1) Labor.
      2) Materials.
      3) Equipment.
3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
4. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
   a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
5. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of lump sum allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
6. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each Purchase contract. Show line-item value of Purchase contract. Indicate Owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
7. Overhead Costs, Proportional Distribution: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
8. Overhead Costs, Separate Line Items: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
9. Temporary Facilities: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
10. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
11. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

1.4 APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT

A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record and Construction Manager and paid for by Owner.

B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.

C. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Construction Manager will return incomplete applications without action.
   1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
   2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
   3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
   4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.

D. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
   1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
   2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
   3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
      a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
      b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
      c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.

E. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Construction Manager by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
   1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.

F. Contractor Affidavits: With each application for Payment, submit contractor affidavit.
   1. Submit affidavits on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
   2. Affidavit Forms: Submit affidavits on forms acceptable to Owner.

G. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
   1. List of subcontractors.
   2. Schedule of values.
   3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
   4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
   5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
   6. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
   7. Schedule of allowances.
   8. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
   9. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
   10. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
   11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.

12. Initial progress report.
13. Report of preconstruction conference.
14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
15. Performance and payment bonds.
16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.

H. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
   a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.

I. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
5. Evidence that claims have been settled.
6. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
7. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
8. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
9. Waivers and releases.
10. Payment of retention and/or final payment will require consent of surety.

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Coordination Drawings.
2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
3. Project meetings.
4. Requests for Interpretation (RFIs).

B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility will be assigned to a specific contractor.

C. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's Construction Schedule.
2. Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
3. Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. RFI: Request from Contractor seeking interpretation or clarification of the Contract Documents.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

B. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.

2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
4. Where availability of space is limited, coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair of all components, including mechanical and electrical.

C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.

1. Prepare similar memoranda for Project Coordinator and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
2. Preparation of the Schedule of Values.
3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
5. Progress meetings.
6. Preinstallation conferences.
7. Startup and adjustment of systems.
8. Project closeout activities.

E. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials.

1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. Refer to other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Project Coordinator's property.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Prepare Coordination Drawings if limited space availability necessitates maximum utilization of space for efficient installation of different components or if coordination is required for installation of products and materials fabricated by separate entities.

1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Coordination Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:

a. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of Architectural, Landscape Architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
b. Indicate required installation sequences.
c. Indicate dimensions shown on the Contract Drawings and make specific note of dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Landscape Architect for resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

2. Sheet Size: At least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 30 by 40 inches.

3. Number of Copies: Submit two opaque copies of each submittal. Landscape Architect**,** through Project Coordinator, will return one copy.

    a. Submit five copies where Coordination Drawings are required for operation and maintenance manuals. Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will retain two copies; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Drawing.

4. Refer to individual Sections for Coordination Drawing requirements for Work in those Sections.

B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home and office telephone numbers. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

1.6 ADMINISTRATIVE AND SUPERVISORY PERSONNEL

A. General: In addition to Project superintendent, provide other administrative and supervisory personnel as required for proper performance of the Work.

1. Include special personnel required for coordination of operations with other contractors.

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Project Coordinator and Landscape Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
3. Minutes: Record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Project Coordinator and Landscape Architect, within three days of the meeting.

B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Project Coordinator and Landscape Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement. Hold the conference at Project site or another convenient location. Conduct the meeting to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.

1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of the Owner, Project Coordinator, Landscape Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:

    a. Tentative construction schedule.
    b. Phasing.
    c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
    d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.

e. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
f. Procedures for RFIs.
g. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
i. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
j. Submittal procedures.
k. Preparation of Record Documents.
l. Use of the premises
m. Work restrictions.
n. Project Coordinator's occupancy requirements.
o. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
p. Construction waste management and recycling.
q. Parking availability.
r. Office, work, and storage areas.
s. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
t. First aid.
u. Security.
v. Progress cleaning.
w. Working hours.

3. Minutes: Record and distribute meeting minutes.

C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.

1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator of scheduled meeting dates.
2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:

a. The Contract Documents.
b. Options.
c. Related RFIs.
d. Related Change Orders.
e. Purchases.
f. Deliveries.
g. Submittals.
h. Review of mockups.
i. Possible conflicts.
j. Compatibility problems.
k. Time schedules.
l. Weather limitations.
m. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
n. Warranty requirements.
o. Compatibility of materials.
p. Acceptability of substrates.
q. Temporary facilities and controls.
r. Space and access limitations.
s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
u. Installation procedures.
v. Coordination with other work.

w. Required performance results.
x. Protection of adjacent work.
y. Protection of construction and personnel.

3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present.
5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at biweekly intervals. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.

1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Project Coordinator, and Landscape Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.

a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

1) Review schedule for next period.

b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:

1) Interface requirements.
2) Sequence of operations.
3) Status of submittals.
4) Deliveries.
5) Off-site fabrication.
6) Access.
7) Site utilization.
8) Temporary facilities and controls.
9) Work hours.
10) Hazards and risks.
11) Progress cleaning.
12) Quality and work standards.
13) Status of correction of deficient items.
14) Field observations.
15) RFIs.
16) Status of proposal requests.
17) Pending changes.
18) Status of Change Orders.
19) Pending claims and disputes.

20) Documentation of information for payment requests.

3. Minutes: Record the meeting minutes.
4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present.

a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Construction Schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

E. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at biweekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.

1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of the Owner**,** Project Coordinator, and Landscape Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.

a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
b. Schedule Updating: Revise Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:

1) Interface requirements.
2) Sequence of operations.
3) Status of submittals.
4) Deliveries.
5) Off-site fabrication.
6) Access.
7) Site utilization.
8) Temporary facilities and controls.
9) Work hours.
10) Hazards and risks.
11) Progress cleaning.
12) Quality and work standards.
13) Change Orders.

3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

1.8 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFIs)

A. Procedure: Immediately on discovery of the need for interpretation of the Contract Documents, and if not possible to request interpretation at Project meeting, prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. RFIs shall originate with Contractor. RFIs submitted by entities other than Contractor will be returned with no response.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Contractor.
4. Name of Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator.
5. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
6. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
7. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
8. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
9. Contractor's suggested solution(s). If Contractor's solution(s) impact the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
10. Contractor's signature.
11. Attachments: Include drawings, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.

    a. Supplementary drawings prepared by Contractor shall include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments.

C. Hard-Copy RFIs:

1. Identify each page of attachments with the RFI number and sequential page number.

D. Software-Generated RFIs: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above.

1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.

E. Landscape Architect’s and Project Coordinator's Action: Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will review each RFI, determine action required, and return it. Allow seven working days for Landscape Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.

1. The following RFIs will be returned without action:

    a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    e. Requests for interpretation of Landscape Architect's actions on submittals.
    f. Incomplete RFIs or RFIs with numerous errors.

2. Landscape Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Landscape Architect's time for response will start again.
3. Landscape Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Division 1 Section "Contract Modification Procedures."

    a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.

F. On receipt of Landscape Architect's and Project Coordinator's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

G. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log monthly. Include the following as a minimum:

1. Project name.
2. Name and address of Contractor.
3. Name and address of Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator.
4. RFI number including RFIs that were dropped and not submitted.
5. RFI description.
6. Date the RFI was submitted.
7. Date Landscape Architect's and Project Coordinator's response was received.
8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

1.9 WEB-BASED PROJECT MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

A. Web-based Project Management Software Package: Provide, administer, and use web-based Project management software package for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.

B. Web-based Project management software includes, at a minimum, the following features:
1. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
2. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
3. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
4. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
5. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
6. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
7. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
8. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
9. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
10. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.

11. Management of construction progress photographs.
12. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.

1.10 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

A. Use of Landscape Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Landscape Architect's CAD drawings will be provided by Landscape Architect for Contractor's use during construction.

1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project Record Drawings.

2. Landscape Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.

3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in 2024 .dwg 2D format.

4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Landscape Architect.
   a. Subcontractors and other parties granted access by Contractor to Landscape Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement acceptable to Owner and Architect.

B. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Landscape Architect, prepare as follows:

1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.

2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.

3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:

1. Preliminary Construction Schedule.
2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
3. Submittals Schedule.
4. Daily construction reports.
5. Material location reports.
6. Field condition reports.
7. Special reports.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting and distributing meeting and conference minutes.
2. Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.

1. Critical activities are activities on the critical path. They must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the Schedule of Values for the completion of an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum, unless otherwise approved by Landscape Architect.

C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations `

D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.

E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.

F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.

1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

G. Fragnet: A partial or fragmentary network that breaks down activities into smaller activities for greater detail.

H. Major Area: A story of construction, a separate building, or a similar significant construction element.

I. Milestone: A key or critical point in time for reference or measurement.

J. Network Diagram: A graphic diagram of a network schedule, showing activities and activity relationships.

K. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

B. Submittals Schedule: Submit three copies of schedule. Arrange the following information in a tabular format:

1. Scheduled date for first submittal.
2. Specification Section number and title.
3. Submittal category (action or informational).
4. Name of subcontractor.
5. Description of the Work covered.
6. Scheduled date for Landscape Architect's and Construction Manager's final release or approval.

C. Preliminary Construction Schedule: Submit three opaque copies.

1. Approval of cost-loaded preliminary construction schedule will not constitute approval of Schedule of Values for cost-loaded activities.

D. Preliminary Network Diagram: Submit three opaque copies, large enough to show entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.

E. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Submit three opaque copies of initial schedule, large enough to show entire schedule for entire construction period.

1. Submit an electronic copy of schedule, using software indicated, on CD-R or jump drive, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (Initial or Updated) and date on label.

F. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit three copies of each of the following computer-generated reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description,

cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.

1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for all activities, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
3. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.

G. Daily Construction Reports: Submit three copies at weekly intervals.

H. Material Location Reports: Submit three copies at monthly intervals.

I. Field Condition Reports: Submit three copies at time of discovery of differing conditions.

J. Special Reports: Submit three copies at time of unusual event.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Landscape architect's request.

B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the Preliminary Construction Schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
3. Discuss constraints, including phasing, work stages, area separations, interim milestones, and partial Owner occupancy.
4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
6. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
7. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
8. Review time required for completion and startup procedures.
9. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
10. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.

B. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the Schedule of Values, list of subcontracts, Submittals Schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.

1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties involved.

2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE

A. Preparation: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, resubmittal, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates.

1. Coordinate Submittals Schedule with list of subcontracts, the Schedule of Values, and Contractor's Construction Schedule.
2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with preliminary bar-chart schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.

    a. At Contractor's option, show submittals on the Preliminary Construction Schedule, instead of tabulating them separately.

3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's Construction Schedule.

2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Procedures: Comply with procedures contained in AGC's "Construction Planning & Scheduling."

B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion.

1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.

C. Activities: Treat each separate area as a separate numbered activity for each principal element of the Work. Comply with the following:

1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Landscape Architect.
2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.

    a. Maintenance Building
    b. Mill Pond Pavilion
    c. Visitor Center Parking Lot
    d. Visitor Center
    e. Mill Access Path
    f. Masonry Stone Retaining Walls

3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with Submittals Schedule.
4. Startup and Testing Time: Include not less than 14 days for startup and testing.
5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Landscape architect's and Construction Manager's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.

D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.

1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Division 1 Section "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Division 1 Section "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:

    a. Coordination with existing construction.
    b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
    c. Uninterruptible services.
    d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
    e. Use of premises restrictions.
    f. Provisions for future construction.
    g. Seasonal variations.
    h. Environmental control.

7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Subcontract awards.
    b. Submittals.
    c. Purchases.
    d. Mockups.
    e. Fabrication.
    f. Sample testing.
    g. Deliveries.
    h. Installation.
    i. Tests and inspections.
    j. Adjusting.
    k. Curing.
    l. Startup and placement into final use and operation.

8. Area Separations: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:

    a. Structural completion.
    b. Permanent space enclosure.
    c. Completion of mechanical installation.
    d. Completion of electrical installation.

e. Substantial Completion.

9. Other Constraints:

E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion.

F. Cost Correlation: At the head of schedule, provide a cost correlation line, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show dollar volume of the Work performed as of dates used for preparation of payment requests.

1. Refer to General Conditions, Sections 36 and 29, for cost reporting and payment procedures.
2. Contractor shall assign cost to construction activities on the CPM schedule. Costs shall not be assigned to submittal activities unless specified otherwise but may, with Landscape architect's approval, be assigned to fabrication and delivery activities. Costs shall be under required principal subcontracts for testing and commissioning activities, operation and maintenance manuals, punch list activities, Project Record Documents, and demonstration and training (if applicable), in the amount of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.
3. Each activity cost shall reflect an accurate value subject to approval by Landscape architect.
4. Total cost assigned to activities shall equal the total Contract Sum.

G. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using fragnets to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.

H. Computer Software: Prepare schedules using a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

2.3 PRELIMINARY CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Submit preliminary horizontal bar-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for the Notice to Proceed

B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 60 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

2.4 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)

A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Base schedule on the Preliminary Construction Schedule and whatever updating and feedback was received since the start of Project.

B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.

1. For construction activities that require 3 months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

2.5 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)

A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.

B. Preliminary Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the duration of the construction period. Include a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a computerized, cost- and resource-loaded, time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.

1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 30 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed

    a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Landscape architect's approval of the schedule.

2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time. Include list of nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule.

D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the preliminary network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.

1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:

    a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
    b. Mobilization and demobilization.
    c. Purchase of materials.
    d. Delivery.
    e. Fabrication.
    f. Utility interruptions.
    g. Installation.
    h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
    i. Testing

2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.

    a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.

E. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a list of straight "early start-total float" sort. Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:

1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
2. Description of activity.
3. Principal events of activity.
4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
5. Early and late start dates.
6. Early and late finish dates.
7. Activity duration in workdays.
8. Total float or slack time.
9. Average size of workforce.
10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the Schedule of Values).

F. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:

1. Identification of activities that have changed.
2. Changes in early and late start dates.
3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
5. Changes in the critical path.
6. Changes in total float or slack time.
7. Changes in the Contract Time.

G. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.

1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.

    a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
    b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

2.6 REPORTS

A. Monthly Reports: prepare for submittal to Project Coordinator a monthly report which notes the following:

1. Summary of what work has been completed based upon Contractor’s daily reports.
2. Summary of work to be completed, sequencing and critical items for its completion to meet the schedule.

B. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:

1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
4. Equipment at Project site.
5. Material deliveries.
6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions.

7. Accidents.
8. Meetings and significant decisions.
9. Unusual events (refer to special reports).
10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
12. Emergency procedures.
13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
14. Change Orders received and implemented.
15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
16. Services connected and disconnected.
17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
18. Partial Completions and occupancies.
19. Substantial Completions authorized.

C. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site.

D. Field Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between field conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a request for interpretation on CSI Form 13.2A. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

2.7 SPECIAL REPORTS

A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Scheduling Consultant: Engage a consultant to provide planning, evaluation, and reporting using CPM scheduling.

1. In-House Option: Owner may waive the requirement to retain a consultant if Contractor employs skilled personnel with experience in CPM scheduling and reporting techniques. Submit qualifications.
2. Meetings: Scheduling consultant shall attend all meetings related to Project progress, alleged delays, and time impact.

B. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
3. As the Work progresses, indicate Actual Completion percentage for each activity.

C. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Landscape architect**,** Construction Manager, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.

1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013233 – PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
   1. Preconstruction photographs.
   2. Concealed Work photographs.
   3. Periodic construction photographs.
   4. Final Completion construction photographs.

B. RELATED DOCUMENTS
   1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.
   2. Section 024116 "Structure Demolition" for photographic documentation before building demolition operations commence.
   3. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for photographic documentation before selective demolition operations commence.
   4. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for photographic documentation before site clearing operations commence.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within seven days of taking photographs.
   1. Submit photos by uploading to web-based Project management software site. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction.

B. Metadata: Record accurate date and time and GPS location data from camera.

C. File Names: Name media files with date, Project area and sequential numbering suffix.

1.3 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

A. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of the Work, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Landscape Architect.
   1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.
   2. Take photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
   3. Take photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property, to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.

B. Concealed Work Photographs: Before proceeding with installing work that will conceal other work, take photographs sufficient in number, with annotated descriptions, to record nature and location of concealed Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Underground utilities.
   2. Underslab services.
   3. Piping.
   4. Electrical conduit.
   5. Waterproofing and weather-resistant barriers.

C. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take photographs weekly. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

D. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents. Landscape Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

E. Additional Photographs: Landscape Architect may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified.
   1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
   2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
   3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Special events planned at Project site.
      b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
      c. Photographs are to be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site. These photographs are not subject to unit prices or unit-cost allowances.
      d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
      e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting and distributing meeting and conference minutes and for submitting Coordination Drawings.
2. Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittals Schedule.
3. Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.
4. Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
5. Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
6. Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific requirements for submittals in those Sections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires Landscape Architect's and Construction Manager's responsive action.

B. Informational Submittals: Written information that does not require Landscape Architect's and Construction Manager’s responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. General: Electronic copies of CAD Drawings of the Contract Drawings will not be provided by Landscape Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.

B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.

1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.

a. Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator reserve the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.

C. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for list of submittals and time requirements for scheduled performance of related construction activities.

D. Processing Time: Allow enough time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Landscape Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

1. Initial Review: Allow 10 business days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Project Coordinator will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 10 business days for review of each resubmittal.
4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Landscape Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Landscape Architect and to Landscape Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Construction Manager, through Landscape Architect, before being returned to Contractor.

E. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.

1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Landscape Architect and Construction Manager.
3. Include the following information on label for processing and recording action taken:

a. Project name.
b. Date.
c. Name and address of Landscape Architect and Construction Manager.
d. Name and address of Contractor.
e. Name and address of subcontractor.
f. Name and address of supplier.
g. Name of manufacturer.
h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.

1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 06100.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 06100.01.A).

i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
l. Other necessary identification.

F. Deviations: Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.

G. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Landscape Architect or Project Coordinator observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.

1. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Landscape Architect and Construction Manager.
2. Additional copies submitted for maintenance manuals will not be marked with action taken and will be returned.

H. Transmittal: Package each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will return submittals, without review, received from sources other than Contractor.

1. Transmittal Form: Use AIA Document G810
2. Transmittal Form: Provide locations on form for the following information:

a. Project name.
b. Date.
c. Destination (To:).
d. Source (From:).
e. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
f. Category and type of submittal.
g. Submittal purpose and description.
h. Specification Section number and title.
i. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
j. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
k. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
l. Remarks.
m. Signature of transmitter.

3. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same label information as related submittal.

I. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.

1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with the approval notation from Landscape Architect's (and Construction Manager's) action stamp.

J. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

K. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals with mark indicating the approval notation from Landscape Architect's (and Project Coordinator’s) action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. General: Prepare and submit Action Submittals required by individual Specification Sections.

1. Submit electronic submittals directly to the Project Landscape Architect.

B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.

1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
3. Include the following information, as applicable:

    a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    d. Standard color charts.
    e. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    f. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    g. Printed performance curves.
    h. Operational range diagrams.
    i. Mill reports.
    j. Standard product operation and maintenance manuals.
    k. Compliance with specified referenced standards.
    l. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    m. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    n. Notation of coordination requirements.

4. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
5. Number of Copies: Submit three copies of Product Data, unless otherwise indicated. Landscape Architect, through Construction Manager, will return two copies. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document.

C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal of Landscape Architect's CAD Drawings are otherwise permitted.

1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:

    a. Dimensions.
    b. Identification of products.
    c. Fabrication and installation drawings.
    d. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
    e. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control wiring.
    f. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
    g. Templates and patterns.
    h. Schedules.
    i. Design calculations.
    j. Compliance with specified standards.

k. Notation of coordination requirements.
l. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
m. Relationship to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
n. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
o. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 30 by 40 inches.
3. Number of Copies: Submit two opaque (bond) copies of each submittal. Landscape Architect, through Construction Manager, will return one copy.
4. Number of Copies: Submit three opaque copies of each submittal, unless copies are required for operation and maintenance manuals. Submit five copies where copies are required for operation and maintenance manuals. Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will retain two copies; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Drawing.

D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.

1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:

a. Generic description of Sample.
b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
c. Sample source.
d. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.

3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.

a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.

4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.

a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Landscape Architect, through Construction Manager, will return submittal with options selected.

5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.

a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a Project Record Sample.

1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

E. Product Schedule or List: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:

1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product.
2. Number and name of room or space.
3. Location within room or space.
4. Number of Copies: Submit three copies of product schedule or list, unless otherwise indicated. Landscape Architect, through Construction Manager, will return two copies.

a. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document.

F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for Construction Manager's action.

G. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."

H. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements specified in the General Conditions found in the bid documents.

I. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in the bid documents.

J. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Use CSI Form 1.5A. Include the following information in tabular form:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
4. Number of Copies: Submit three copies of subcontractor list, unless otherwise indicated. Landscape Architect, through Construction Manager, will return two copies.

a. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document.

2.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. General: Prepare and submit Informational Submittals required by other Specification Sections.

1. Number of Copies: Submit two copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will not return copies.

2. Certificates and Certifications: Provide a notarized statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
3. Test and Inspection Reports: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."

B. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."

D. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of Landscape Architects and owners, and other information specified.

E. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification (WPS) and Procedure Qualification Record (PQR) on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

F. Installer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.

G. Manufacturer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.

H. Product Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

I. Material Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

J. Material Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

K. Product Test Reports: Prepare written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

L. Research/Evaluation Reports: Prepare written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:

1. Name of evaluation organization.
2. Date of evaluation.
3. Time period when report is in effect.
4. Product and manufacturers' names.
5. Description of product.
6. Test procedures and results.
7. Limitations of use.

M. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Comply with requirements specified in the General Conditions found in the bid documents.

N. Preconstruction Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.

O. Compatibility Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

P. Field Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

Q. Maintenance Data: Prepare written and graphic instructions and procedures for operation and normal maintenance of products and equipment. Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."

R. Design Data: Prepare written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

S. Manufacturer's Instructions: Prepare written or published information that documents manufacturer's recommendations, guidelines, and procedures for installing or operating a product or equipment. Include name of product and name, address, and telephone number of manufacturer. Include the following, as applicable:

1. Preparation of substrates.
2. Required substrate tolerances.
3. Sequence of installation or erection.
4. Required installation tolerances.
5. Required adjustments.
6. Recommendations for cleaning and protection.

T. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections. Include the following, as applicable:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

U. Insurance Certificates and Bonds: Prepare written information indicating current status of insurance or bonding coverage. Include name of entity covered by insurance or bond, limits of coverage, amounts of deductibles, if any, and term of the coverage.

V. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs): Submit information directly to Owner; do not submit to Landscape Architect except as required in "Action Submittals" Article.

1. Landscape Architect will not review submittals that include MSDSs and will return the entire submittal for resubmittal.

2.3 DELEGATED DESIGN

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Landscape Architect.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit three copies of a statement, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional licensed in the state of North Carolina, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.

1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

A. Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Landscape Architect and Construction Manager.

B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT'S AND PROJECT COORDINATOR'S / ACTION

A. General: Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.

B. Action Submittals: Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken.

C. Informational Submittals: Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will forward each submittal to appropriate party.

D. Partial submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned without review.

E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be discarded.

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 – QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.

B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
   1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
   2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
   3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record, Owner, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

C. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for testing and inspection allowances.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of 1 previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.

C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
   1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).

D. Mockups: Physical assemblies of portions of the Work constructed to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged. Mockups are not Samples.
   1. Mockups are used for one or more of the following:
      a. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
      b. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
      c. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.
      d. Demonstrate successful installation of interfaces between components and systems.
      e. Perform preconstruction testing to determine system performance.
   2. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.

3. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.

E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.

F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited in accordance with NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.

G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).

H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" has the same meaning as the term "testing agency."

I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.

J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record or Construction Manager.

1.3 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
   1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record.

B. Delegated Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional licensed in the state of North Carolina, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record for clarification before proceeding.

B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified is the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Mockup Shop Drawings:
   1. Include plans, sections, elevations, and details, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
   2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
   3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.

B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.

C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
   1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
   2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.

E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
   1. Specification Section number and title.
   2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
   3. Description of test and inspection.
   4. Identification of applicable standards.
   5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
   6. Number of tests and inspections required.
   7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
   8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
   9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.

G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities and to coordinate Owner's quality-assurance and quality-control activities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.

B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.

C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.

D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
   1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections, including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
   2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
   3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by Commissioning Authority.

E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
   1. Date of issue.
   2. Project title and number.
   3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
   4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
   5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
   6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
   7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
   8. Complete test or inspection data.
   9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
   10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.

11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.

C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists will satisfy qualification requirements indicated and engage in the activities indicated.
   1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction supersede requirements for specialists.

G. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.

H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
   1. Contractor's Responsibilities:
      a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
      b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
      c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
      d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
      e. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
   2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record and Commissioning Authority, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
   1. Build mockups of size indicated.
   2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record or Construction Manager.
   3. Notify Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record and Construction Manager days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
   4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
   5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
   6. Obtain Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record's and Construction Manager's approval of mockups before starting corresponding Work, fabrication, or construction.
      a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
   7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record, before completion of final mockup.

8. Approval of mockups by the Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record specifically approves such deviations in writing.
9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
2. Payment for these services will be handled by Owner
3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.

B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
   a. Contractor will not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record, Commissioning Authority and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.

E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.

G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
   1. Access to the Work.
   2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
   3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
   4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
   5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
   6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
   7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
   1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update and submit with each Application for Payment.
   1. Schedule Contents: Include tests, inspections, and quality-control services, including Contractor- and Owner-retained services, commissioning activities, and other Project-required services paid for by other entities.
   2. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
   1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
   2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
   3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record.
   4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.

B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record's, Commissioning Authority's, authorities' having jurisdiction reference during normal working hours.
   1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
   1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."

B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Summary" for limitations on utility interruptions and other work restrictions.
2. Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures" for procedures for submitting copies of implementation and termination schedule and utility reports.
3. Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.
4. Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for temporary heat, ventilation, and humidity requirements for products in those Sections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by Architect, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

1.4 USE CHARGES

A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Project Coordinator, Owner’s Consultants, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.

C. Water Service: Pay water service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.

D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric power service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.

B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.

1. Coordinate Location of field offices with Project Coordinator.

B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of construction personnel. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:

1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with not less than 1 receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot square tack board.
3. Drinking water and private toilet.
4. Coffee machine and supplies.
5. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
6. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.

C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.

1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.2 EQUIPMENT

A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.

1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return air grille in system and remove at end of construction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.

B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.

1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.

B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.

1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.

D. Water Service: Use of Owner's existing water service facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.

1. Where installations below an outlet might be damaged by spillage or leakage, provide a drip pan of suitable size to minimize water damage. Drain accumulated water promptly from pans.

E. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.

F. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.

G. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or

elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.

H. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.

1. Install electric power service, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.

I. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.

1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.

J. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.

1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:

a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer in each field office.
b. Provide one telephone line(s) for Owner's use.

2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.

a. Police and fire departments.
b. Ambulance service.
c. Contractor's home office.
d. Architect's office.
e. Engineers' offices.
f. Owner's office.
g. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.

3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.

K. Electronic Communication Service: Provide temporary electronic communication service, including electronic mail, in common-use facilities.

1. Provide DSL in primary field office.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with the following:

1. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines. Comply with NFPA 241.
2. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.

B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas as indicated on Drawings.

1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.

C. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.

1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Division 2 Section "Earthwork."
3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proof rolling, compacting, and testing.
4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Division 2 Section "Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving."

D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.

E. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.

F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.

1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.

G. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Provide Project identification and other signs as indicated on Drawings and in the Project Special Provisions. Install signs where indicated to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.

1. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
2. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.

H. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.

I. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.

1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.

1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Division 1 Section "Summary."

B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.

C. Stormwater Control: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.

D. Tree and Plant Protection: Comply with requirements specified in Division 2 Section "Tree Protection and Trimming."

E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.

F. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Obtain extended warranty for Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.

G. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.

1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Provide Owner with one set of keys.

H. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.

I. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.

J. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weather tight enclosure for building exterior.

1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.

K. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.

1. Prohibit smoking in hazardous fire-exposure areas.
2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.

B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.

1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.

C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.

D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
2. Remove temporary paving not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent paving. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 015639 – TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. The Work of this Section Includes: General protection and pruning of existing trees and plants that are affected by execution of the Work, whether temporary or permanent construction.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, support facilities, temporary site fencing, and, if applicable, temporary erosion and sedimentation controls if not specified in Section 311000 "Site Clearing".
   2. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for removing existing trees and shrubs and for temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures if not specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls".

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Caliper: Diameter of a trunk measured by a diameter tape at a height 6 inches above the ground for trees up to and including 4-inch size at this height and as measured at a height of 12 inches above the ground for trees larger than 4-inch size.

B. Caliper (DBH): Diameter breast height; diameter of a trunk as measured by a diameter tape at a height 54 inches above the ground line for trees with caliper of 8 inches or greater as measured at a height of 12 inches above the ground.

C. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.

D. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.

E. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Review methods and procedures related to temporary tree and plant protection including, but not limited to, the following:
      a. Tree-service firm's personnel and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
      b. Arborist's responsibilities.
      c. Quality-control program.
      d. Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of protection zones.
      e. Trenching by hand or with air spade within protection zones.
      f. Field quality control.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. General protection and pruning of existing trees and plants that are affected by execution of the Work, whether temporary or permanent construction

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include plans, elevations, and sections showing trees and plants to be protected, locations of protection-zone fencing and signage, and the relationship between equipment-movement routes and material storage locations with protection zones.
   2. Detail fabrication and assembly of protection-zone fencing and signage.
   3. Indicate extent of utility boring and trenching by hand or with air spade within protection zones.

C. Samples: For each type of the following:
   1. Protection-Zone Fencing: Assembled Samples of manufacturer's standard size made from full-size components.
   2. Protection-Zone Signage: Full-size Samples of each size and text, ready for installation.

D. Tree-Pruning Schedule: Written schedule detailing scope and extent of pruning of trees to remain that interfere with or are affected by construction.
   1. Species and size of tree.
   2. Location on site plan. Include unique identifier for each.
   3. Reason for pruning.
   4. Description of pruning to be performed.
   5. Description of maintenance following pruning.

E. Maintenance Recommendations: From arborist, for care and protection of trees affected by construction during and after completing the Work.

F. Mitigation Requirements: As required by jurisdiction or as developed by arborist, for mitigation of damage to trees and other plantings. Include the following:
   1. Local ordinances governing tree mitigation.
   2. Standards established under the approved tree mitigation report developed by the arborist.
   3. "Digital Guide for Plant Appraisal" by Council of Tree and Landscape Appraisers.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Statements: For arborist and tree service firm.

B. Certification: From arborist, certifying that trees indicated to remain have been protected during construction in accordance with recognized standards and that trees were promptly and properly treated and repaired when damaged.

C. Maintenance Recommendations: From arborist, for care and protection of trees affected by construction during and after completing the Work.

D. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings indicated to remain, which establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by construction activities.
   1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or video recordings.
   2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.

E. Quality-control program.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Arborist Qualifications: Licensed arborist in jurisdiction where Project is located.

B. Tree-Service Firm Qualifications: An experienced tree-service firm that has successfully completed temporary tree- and plant-protection work similar to that required for this Project and that will assign an experienced, qualified arborist to Project site during execution of the Work.

C. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work without damaging trees and plantings. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement of protection-zone fencing and signage, the arborist's and tree-service firm's responsibilities, instructions given to workers on the use and care of protection zones, and enforcement of requirements for protection zones.

1.7 IN-FIELD CONDITIONS

A. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
   1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
   2. Moving or parking vehicles or equipment.
   3. Foot traffic.
   4. Erection of sheds or structures.
   5. Impoundment of water.
   6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
   7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

B. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust toward protection zones.

C. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones and organic mulch.

D. Take precautions to protect plants from airborne contaminants, such as paint or fireproofing overspray.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Backfill Soil: Planting soil of suitable moisture content and granular texture for placing around tree; free of stones, roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, debris, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
   1. Mixture: Well-blended mix

B. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing for trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:
   1. Type: Shredded hardwood
   2. Size Range: 3 inches maximum, 1/2 inch minimum.
   3. Color: Natural.

C. Protection-Zone Fencing: Fencing fixed in position and meeting the requirements of the municipality.
   1. Plastic Protection-Zone Fencing: Plastic construction fencing constructed of high-density extruded and stretched polyethylene fabric with 2-inch maximum opening in pattern and weighing a minimum of 0.4 lb/ft.; remaining flexible from minus 60 to plus 200 deg F; inert to most chemicals and acids; minimum tensile yield strength of 2000 psi and ultimate tensile

strength of 2680 psi; secured with plastic bands or galvanized-steel or stainless steel wire ties; and supported by tubular or T-shape galvanized-steel posts spaced not more than 96 inches apart.
a. Height: 48 inches
b. Color: High-visibility orange, nonfading.

D. Protection-Zone Signage: Shop-fabricated, rigid plastic or metal sheet with attachment holes prepunched and reinforced; legibly printed with nonfading lettering and as follows:
1. Size and Text: As indicated on Drawings

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Examine the site to verify that temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.

B. Prepare written report, endorsed by arborist, listing conditions detrimental to tree and plant protection.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated. Flag each tree trunk at 54 inches above the ground.

B. Protect tree root systems from damage caused by runoff or spillage of noxious materials while mixing, placing, or storing construction materials. Protect root systems from ponding, eroding, or excessive wetting caused by dewatering operations.

3.3 TREE PROTECTION

A. Trunk Protection: Protect the trunk of each tree to municipality requirements.

3.4 PROTECTION ZONES

A. Protection-Zone Fencing: Install protection-zone fencing along edges of protection zones before materials or equipment are brought on the site and construction operations begin in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering protected areas except by entrance gates. Construct fencing so as not to obstruct safe passage or visibility at vehicle intersections where fencing is located adjacent to pedestrian walkways or in close proximity to street intersections, drives, or other vehicular circulation.
1. Plastic Fencing: Stretch fabric taut and secure to posts without bows or sags.

B. Protection-Zone Signage: Install protection-zone signage in visibly prominent locations in a manner approved by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record. Install one sign spaced approximately every 25 ft on protection-zone fencing, but no fewer than four signs with each facing a different direction.

C. Maintain protection zones free of weeds and trash.

D. Maintain hydration of plants to assure plant survival.

E. Maintain protection-zone fencing and signage in good condition as acceptable to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record and remove when construction operations are complete and equipment has been removed from the site.
   1. Do not remove protection-zone fencing, even temporarily, to allow deliveries or equipment access through the protection zone.
   2. Temporary access is permitted subject to preapproval in writing by arborist if a root buffer effective against soil compaction is constructed as directed by arborist. Maintain root buffer so long as access is permitted.

3.5 EXCAVATION

A. General: Excavate at edge of protection zones and for trenches indicated.

B. Trenching within Protection Zones: Where utility trenches are required within protection zones, excavate under or around tree roots by hand or with air spade, or tunnel under the roots by drilling, auger boring, or pipe jacking. Do not cut main lateral tree roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities. Cut roots as required for root pruning. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots.

3.6 ROOT PRUNING

A. Prune tree roots that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune roots as municipality indicates

B. Root Pruning within Protection Zone: Clear and excavate by hand or with air spade to the depth of the required excavation to minimize damage to tree root systems. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil to expose roots. Cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.

3.7 CROWN PRUNING

A. Prune branches that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune branches as directed by arborist. Ensure municipality requirements for pruning are met.
   1. Prune to remove only broken, dying, or dead branches unless otherwise indicated. Do not prune for shape unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Do not remove or reduce living branches to compensate for root loss caused by damaging or cutting root system.

B. Unless otherwise directed by arborist and acceptable to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record, do not cut tree leaders.

C. Cut branches with sharp pruning instruments; do not break or chop.

D. Do not paint or apply sealants to wounds.

E. Provide subsequent maintenance pruning during Contract period as recommended by arborist.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspections: Engage a qualified arborist to direct plant-protection measures in the vicinity of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain and to prepare inspection reports.

3.9 REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT

A. General: Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Owner.

END OF SECTION 015639

SECTION 016000 – PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. The Work of This Section Includes: Administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 011000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
3. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
4. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
5. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products unless otherwise indicated.
3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.

B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.
1. Evaluating Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification

C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.

D. Comparable Product Request Submittal: An action submittal requesting consideration of a comparable product, including the following information:
   1. Identification of basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced, including Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
   2. Data indicating compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.

E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

F. Substitution: Refer to Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
   1. Resolution of Compatibility Disputes between Multiple Contractors:
      a. Contractors are responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
      b. If a dispute arises between the multiple contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record will determine which products will be used.

B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
   1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is inconspicuous.
   2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
      a. Name of product and manufacturer.
      b. Model and serial number.
      c. Capacity.
      d. Speed.
      e. Ratings.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Delivery and Handling:
   1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.

2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:
1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.6 PRODUCT AWARENESS

A. Warranties specified in other Sections are to be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.

2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record will make selection.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
    a. Submit additional documentation required by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record through Construction Manager in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record, whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."
2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."
3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
    a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
    b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
    a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."

b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.

7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
   a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.

C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require the phrase "match Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record's sample. Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
   1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.

D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

E. Sustainable Product Selection: Where Specifications require product to meet sustainable product characteristics, select products complying with indicated requirements. Comply with requirements in Division 01 sustainability requirements Section and individual Specification Sections.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
   1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
   2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
   3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
   4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of Landscape Architect/Engineer of Records and owners, if requested.
   5. Samples, if requested.

B. Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for a comparable product. Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
   1. Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record's Approval of Submittal: Indication of approval in web-based Project management software. See Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

2. Use product specified if Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.

C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

D. Submittal Requirements, Single-Step Process: When acceptable to Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record, incorporate specified submittal requirements of individual Specification Section in combined submittal for comparable products. Approval by Landscape Architect/Engineer of Record of Contractor's request for use of comparable product and of individual submittal requirements will also satisfy other submittal requirements.

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes general procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Field engineering and surveying.
3. General installation of products.
4. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
5. Progress cleaning.
6. Starting and adjusting.
7. Protection of installed construction.
8. Correction of the Work.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for procedures for coordinating field engineering with other construction activities.
2. Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
3. Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching" for procedural requirements for cutting and patching necessary for the installation or performance of other components of the Work.
4. Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.

B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.

C. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

D. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.

E. Final Property Survey: Submit three (3) hardcopies and two (2) digital copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of site improvements, utilities, and other construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning work, investigate and verify the existence and location of mechanical and electrical systems and other construction affecting the Work.

1. Before construction, verify the location and points of connection of utility services.

B. Existing Utilities: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning site work, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities and other construction affecting the Work.

1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; and underground electrical services.
2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.

C. Acceptance of Conditions: Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.

1. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:

    a. Description of the Work.
    b. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
    c. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
    d. Recommended corrections.

2. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
3. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
4. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.

D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Landscape Architect. Include a detailed description of problem encountered, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents. Submit requests on CSI Form 13.2A, "Request for Interpretation."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator promptly.

B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.

1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
2. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
3. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
4. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
5. Notify Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
6. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and invert elevations.

D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.

E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.

B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.

1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Landscape Architect or Project Coordinator. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator before proceeding.
2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.

1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and site work.

E. Final Property Survey: Prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.

1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

3.5 INSTALLATION

A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.

1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 8 feet in spaces without a suspended ceiling.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.

C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.

D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

E. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.

F. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.

G. Anchors and Fasteners: Provide anchors and fasteners as required to anchor each component securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work.

1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Landscape Architect.
2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

H. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

I. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.6 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction forces.

B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction forces.

1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction forces at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction forces if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where more than one installer has worked. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.

2. Do not hold materials more than 7 days during normal weather or 3 days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.

B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.

C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.

1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.

D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

G. Waste Disposal: Burying or burning waste materials on-site will not be permitted. Washing waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be permitted.

H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.

I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.

J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

B. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding. Adjust equipment for proper operation.

C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Manufacturer's Field Service: If a factory-authorized service representative is required to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, comply with qualification requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."

3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

3.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and finishes. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching."

1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.

B. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.

C. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.

D. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.

E. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017419 – CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. The Work of this Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
   1. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
   2. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
   3. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CMU: Concrete masonry units.

B. Construction Waste: Site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.

C. Demolition Waste: Site improvement materials resulting from demolition operations.

D. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent salvage, sale, recycling, or deposit in landfill, incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or designated spoil areas on Owner's property.

E. Recycle: Recycle all waste to the maximum extent practicable. Provide monthly metrics

F. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.

G. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

1.3 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.

B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
   1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Plan must include the following:
   1. Strategies to reduce the generation of waste during Project design and construction.
   2. Waste diversion goals for Project, identifying the materials (both structural and nonstructural) targeted for recycling, reuse, or salvage and identifying the target diversion percentage (at least 50 percent).
   3. Where materials will be taken, including expected diversion rates for each material.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit report. Use Owner's form designation. Include the following information:
   1. Material category.
   2. Generation point of waste.
   3. Total quantity of waste in tons.
   4. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in tons.
   5. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in tons.
   6. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in tons.
   7. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste.

B. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Substantial Completion, submit calculated end-of-Project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work.

C. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.

D. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.

E. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

F. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

G. Qualification Statements: For waste management coordinator.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: Experienced firm, or individual employed and assigned by General Contractor, with a record of successful waste management coordination of projects with similar requirements. Superintendent may serve as Waste Management Coordinator.

B. Waste Management Conference(s): Conduct conference(s) at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of each contractor and waste management coordinator.
   2. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
   3. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation, and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
   4. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
   5. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

1.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

A. General: Develop a waste management plan in accordance with requirements in this Section. Plan must include provisions for waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis.

Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.

B. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition waste generated by the Work. Use Owner's form designation. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.

C. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Use Owner's form designation. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.
   1. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work in compliance with Section 024116 "Structure Demolition."
   2. Salvaged Materials for Sale: For materials that will be sold to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
   3. Salvaged Materials for Donation: For materials that will be donated to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
   4. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
   5. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
   6. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location where materials separation will be performed.

D. Cost/Revenue Analysis: Indicate total cost of waste disposal as if there were no waste management plan and net additional cost or net savings resulting from implementing waste management plan. Use Owner's form designation. Include the following:
   1. Total quantity of waste.
   2. Estimated cost of disposal (cost per unit). Include transportation and tipping fees and cost of collection containers and handling for each type of waste.
   3. Total cost of disposal (with no waste management).
   4. Revenue from salvaged materials.
   5. Revenue from recycled materials.
   6. Savings in transportation and tipping fees by donating materials.
   7. Savings in transportation and tipping fees that are avoided.
   8. Handling and transportation costs. Include cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
   9. Net additional cost or net savings from waste management plan.

END OF SECTION 017419

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Warranties.
3. Final cleaning.
4. As built survey.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning of Project site.
2. Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
3. Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete in request.

1. Prepare a list of items to be completed and corrected (punch list), the value of items on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
2. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
3. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
4. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
5. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, Final Completion construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
6. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
7. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
8. Complete startup testing of systems.
9. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
10. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.

11. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
12. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
13. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
14. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
15. Complete as-built survey. Survey is to include (but not limited to) all new and remaining existing utilities, hardscape, vegetation, topography, buildings, fencing, limits of gravel, base and pitching mound locations, scoreboards, light poles, easements, bleachers, signage, and any other permanent features. Survey shall be submitted as part of final closeout checklist in digital (PDF and DWG) format along with three (3) hardcopies. Revise paragraph and subparagraphs below to comply with office policy and Project requirements.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion. On receipt of request, Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

1.4 FINAL COMPLETION

A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining date of Final Completion, complete the following:

1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 1 Section "Payment Procedures."
2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
3. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
4. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance. On receipt of request, Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.5 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

A. Preparation: Submit three copies of list. Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction. Use CSI Form 14.1A.

1. Organize items applying by major element
2. Include the following information at the top of each page:

a. Project name.
b. Date.
c. Name of Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator.
d. Name of Contractor.
e. Page number.

1.6 WARRANTIES

A. Submittal Time: Submit written warranties on request of Landscape Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated.

B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.

C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.

1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.

D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

A. General: Provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:

a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
l. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.

    1) Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.

m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
n. Replace parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
o. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
p. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
q. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.
r. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

C. Pest Control: Engage an experienced, licensed exterminator to make a final inspection and rid Project of rodents, insects, and other pests. Prepare a report.

D. Comply with safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or excess materials on Owner's property. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from Project site and dispose of lawfully.

END OF SECTION 017700

CLOSE OUT CHECK LIST PROJECT: _____

TASK DESCRIPTION COMPLETED

A. General Requirements

1. Certificate of Substantial Completion (AIA G704) _____
(Executed by Designer, Contractor and Owner)

2. Inspections Certifications _____

   a. Certificate of Occupancy _____
   (By Building Inspections Officials)

   b. Copy of Building Official Inspection Card _____
   (Showing required inspection approvals)

   c. Other Regulatory Inspection Sign-Offs (as applicable) _____

      (1) Certification Reports for All Backflow Assemblies _____
      (Includes Plumbing, HVAC, Fire Protection as applicable)

      (2) Well Water Quality Test Report (if applicable) _____

      (3) Other Certifications as Required _____
      (NCDFS, NC DOT, NC Land Quality, Local Government, Utilities, Health Dept., Fireproofing Certification, Structural Steel Inspection Certification, etc.)

3. Closeout Reports & Documentation _____

   a. Owner Instruction and Training with Equipment and Systems _____
   (Memo/List of Attendees required for each session)

   b. HVAC Test and Balance Report _____
   (Approval cover letter from Designer required)

   c. Attic Stock Turnover _____
   (Transfer to Owner with Typed Inventory Required)

   d. Keys & Permanent Hardware Changeover _____
   (Delivery of Final Keys and Cabinet to Owner; Memo of Hardware Changeover Date)

   e. Insurance Coverage Change Over _____

   f. Utility Account Change Over _____

      (1) Electric Service _____

      (2) Gas Service _____

      (3) Water Service _____

      (4) Other Utility Service _____

   g. Data System Test Report _____

TASK DESCRIPTION COMPLETED

B. Record Document Requirements _____

1. As-Built Drawings Submitted by Contractor _____
   - a. Site/Civil _____
   - b. Architectural & Structural _____
   - c. Plumbing _____
   - d. Fire Protection _____
   - e. Mechanical _____
   - f. Electrical _____
   - g. Security _____
   - h. Other (Kitchen Equipment, etc.) _____
2. Fire Alarm/Sprinkler System Zone Map _____
   (per jurisdictional requirements)
3. Final Finish Schedule _____
   (updated with actual finishes and bound in with O+M Manual)
4. Operation & Maintenance (O+M) Manuals _____
   (Approval cover letter from Designer required)
   - a. Product & Operations Data _____
   - b. Maintenance Information _____
5. Product Warranty Certificates/Maintenance Agreements _____
   (Roof installation/other specialty products requiring Owner signature)
6. Shop Drawings and Submittals – Complete Set _____
   (With Architect's Review Stamp)
7. Construction Site Documentation (if applicable) _____
   (Contractor’s Job Log and Photographs)

TASK DESCRIPTION	COMPLETED
C. Final Accounting Requirements – by Contractor	
1. Contractor's Certification Of Completion Of Work	
2. Affidavit of Release of Liens (AIA G706A)	
3. Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims (AIA G706)	
4. Consent of Surety to Final Payment (AIA G707)	
5. Final Certified NC Sales Tax Report	
6. Final Request for Payment Certified by Designer	
D. Final Accounting Requirements – by Designer	
1. Cover Letter of Approval - HVAC Test & Balance Report (per item A-3b)	
2. Cover Letter of Approval - Operations & Maintenance Manuals (per item B-4)	
3. Cover Letter of Approval for Roof Warranty (per item B-5)	
4. Final Closeout Letter by Designer to include:	
a. Confirmation of Completion of Punch List	
b. Final Liquidated Damages Analysis	
c. Certification of Final Project Completion	
5. Record Drawings (electronic files and 1 reproducible set of all drawings based on Contractor As-Built)	
E. Warranty Period	
1. Pre-Expiration Warranty Inspection (Inspection 30 days prior to warranty expiration date)	

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:

1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
2. Emergency manuals.
3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
4. Maintenance manuals for the care and maintenance of products, materials, and finishes, systems and equipment.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
2. Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
3. Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents" for preparing Record Drawings for operation and maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.

B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Initial Submittal: Submit 2 draft copies of each manual at least 15 days before requesting inspection for Substantial Completion. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Landscape Architect will return one copy of draft and mark whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.

B. Final Submittal: Submit one copy of each manual in final form at least 15 days before final inspection. Architect will return copy with comments within 15 days after final inspection.

1. Correct or modify each manual to comply with Landscape Architect's comments. Submit 3 copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Landscape Architect's comments.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Where operation and maintenance documentation includes information on installations by more than one factory-authorized service representative, assemble and coordinate information furnished by representatives and prepare manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

A. Organization: Include a section in the directory for each of the following:

1. List of documents.
2. List of systems.
3. List of equipment.
4. Table of contents.

B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.

C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.

D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 MANUALS, GENERAL

A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:

1. Title page.
2. Table of contents.
3. Manual contents.

B. Title Page: Enclose title page in transparent plastic sleeve. Include the following information:

1. Subject matter included in manual.
2. Name and address of Project.
3. Name and address of Owner.
4. Date of submittal.
5. Name, address, and telephone number of Contractor.
6. Name and address of Landscape Architect.
7. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.

C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.

1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.

D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.

1. Binders: Heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.

a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.

2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software diskettes for computerized electronic equipment.
4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.

a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:

1. Type of emergency.
2. Emergency instructions.
3. Emergency procedures.

B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:

1. Fire.
2. Flood.
3. Gas leak.
4. Water leak.
5. Power failure.
6. Water outage.

7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
8. Chemical release or spill.

C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.

D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Instructions on stopping.
2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:

1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
3. Operating standards.
4. Operating procedures.
5. Operating logs.
6. Wiring diagrams.
7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUAL

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Product name and model number.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUAL

A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.

C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard printed maintenance instructions and bulletins.
2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:

1. Test and inspection instructions.
2. Troubleshooting guide.
3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
6. Demonstration and training videotape, if available.

E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.

1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.

G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.

H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.

C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.

D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.

1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in Record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.

1. Do not use original Project Record Documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared Record Drawings in Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents."

G. Comply with Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:

1. As-Built Survey.
2. Record Drawings
3. Record Specifications.
4. Record Product Data.
5. Miscellaneous Record Submittals.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
2. Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. As Built Survey:

1. Contractor shall submit an as-built survey of all stairs, ramps, and building finish floor elevations for review and certification by Landscape Architect that constructed stairs comply with 2018 NC Building Code tread and riser uniformity requirements, Section 1011 “Stairways”, Section 1012 “Ramps” and Section 1014 “Handrails”, 2009 ICC A117.1 Section 502 Accessible “Parking Spaces” and Section 406 “Curb Ramps”.
2. Contractor shall submit an as-built survey of all Stormwater Control Measures (SCMs) and stormwater piping to indicate volume, slopes, inverts and overflow devices.
3. Additional as-built survey requirements are listed in Division 02 through Division 33 specifications and Contract Documents.

B. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:

1. Number of Copies: Submit one set of marked-up Record Prints.
2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of Record Drawings as follows:

a. Initial Submittal: Submit one set of marked-up Record Prints. Landscape Architect will initial and date each plot and mark whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable. Landscape Architect will return prints for organizing into sets, printing, binding, and final submittal.

b. Final Submittal: Submit one set of marked-up Record Prints. Print each Drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.

C. Record Specifications: Submit one copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.

D. Record Product Data: Submit one copy of each Product Data submittal.

1. Where Record Product Data is required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit marked-up Product Data as an insert in manual instead of submittal as Record Product Data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of blue- or black-line white prints of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings.

1. Preparation: Mark Record Prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the marked-up Record Prints.

a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
b. Accurately record information in an understandable drawing technique.
c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.

2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
g. Actual equipment locations.
h. Duct size and routing.
i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
k. Changes made following Landscape Architect's written orders.
l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.

3. Mark the Contract Drawings or Shop Drawings, whichever is most capable of showing actual physical conditions, completely and accurately. If Shop Drawings are marked, show cross-reference on the Contract Drawings.
4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.

6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

B. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.

1. Record Prints: Organize Record Prints and newly prepared Record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
2. Identification: As follows:

a. Project name.
b. Date.
c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
d. Name of Landscape Architect and Project Coordinator.
e. Name of Contractor.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
5. Note related Change Orders, Record Product Data, and Record Drawings where applicable.

2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and modifications to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until the end of Project.

B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store Record Documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Landscape Architect's and Project Coordinator's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 017900 – DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
   1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
   2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
   1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.

B. Qualification Data: For instructor.

C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.

D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
   1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
      a. Name of Project.
      b. Name of Architect.
      c. Name of Contractor.
      d. Date of video recording.

B. Retain one of two "Transcript" subparagraphs below based on Owner requirements. Coordinate with requirements retained in "Demonstration and Training Video Recordings" Article.
   1. Transcript: Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.

2. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use prepared in same paper and PDF file format required for operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.

B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.

B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.

C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

1.7 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.

B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:

1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    b. b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    c. Operating standards.
    d. Regulatory requirements.
    e. Equipment function.
    f. Operating characteristics.
    g. Limiting conditions.
    h. Performance curves.
2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    a. Emergency manuals.
    b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
    c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
    d. Product maintenance manuals.
    e. Project Record Documents.
    f. Identification systems.
    g. Warranties and bonds.
    h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.

3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
   a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
   b. Instructions on stopping.
   c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
   d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
   e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
   f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
   a. Startup procedures.
   b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
   c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
   d. Regulation and control procedures.
   e. Control sequences.
   f. Safety procedures.
   g. Instructions on stopping.
   h. Normal shutdown instructions.
   i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
   j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
   k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
   l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
   m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
   a. Alignments.
   b. Checking adjustments.
   c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
   d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
   a. Diagnostic instructions.
   b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
   a. Inspection procedures.
   b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
   c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
   d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
   e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
   f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
   g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
   a. Diagnosis instructions.
   b. Repair instructions.
   c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
   d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
   e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

1.8 PREPARATION

A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

1.9 INSTRUCTION

A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.

B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
   1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.

C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
   1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration performance-based test.

F. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and remove from Project site. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

1.10 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

A. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high-resolution, digital video in MPEG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor resolution of 12 megapixels and capable of recording in full HD mode with vibration reduction technology.
   1. Submit video recordings on thumb drive and by uploading to web-based Project software site.
   2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to Project Manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
   3. File Names: Utilize file names based on name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
   4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the equipment demonstration and training recording that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project Manual table of contents:
      a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
      b. Business address.
      c. Business phone number.
      d. Point of contact.
      e. Email address.

B. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
   1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
      a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
      b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
      c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.

C. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
   1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.

D. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.

E. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017900

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION – SITE WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Summary" for use of premises and Owner-occupancy requirements.
2. Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary construction and environmental-protection measures for selective demolition operations.
3. Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching" for cutting and patching procedures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.

B. Salvaged: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to Owner ready for reuse.

C. Remove and Relocate: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.

D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to Owner.

1. Coordinate with Owner's Representative, who will establish special procedures for removal and salvage.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For demolition firm.

B. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:

1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's operations are uninterrupted.
2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
4. Means of protection for items to remain and items in path of waste removal from building.

C. Inventory: After selective demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

D. Predemolition Photographs or Videotapes: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations.

E. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.

D. Pre-demolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
2. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
3. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
4. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.

B. Notify Designer of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.

C. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
1. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Designer and Owner. Owner will remove hazardous materials under a separate contract.

D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.

E. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.

B. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.

C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.

D. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of measured drawings and preconstruction photographs.

E. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Existing Services/Systems: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

1. Comply with requirements for existing services/systems interruptions specified in Division 1 Section "Summary."

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and facilities to remain.

1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
2. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.

B. Salvaged Items:

1. Clean salvaged items.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner or indicated on Drawings.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

C. Removed and Relocated Items:

1. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
2. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

D. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Designer, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals, using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.

B. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, relocated, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

3.8 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION SCHEDULE

A. Existing Items to Be Removed:

1. See Demolition Plans.

B. Existing Items to Be Removed and Relocated:

1. See Demolition Plans.

END OF SECTION 024119

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. The Work of this Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of exterior or interior of building or structure and site elements.
2. Removal and salvage of existing items for delivery to Owner and removal of existing items for reinstallation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
2. Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for temporary protection of existing trees and plants that are affected by selective demolition.
3. Section 017300 "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.
4. Section 013516 "Alteration Project Procedures" for general protection and work procedures for alteration projects.
5. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements not part of selective demolition.
6. Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for removal of site utility systems piping, equipment, and components.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.

B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner as indicated.

C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage; prepare for reuse; and reinstall where indicated.

D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.
6. Review and finalize protection requirements.
7. Review procedures for noise control and dust control.
8. Review storage, protection, and accounting for items to be removed for salvage or reinstallation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Statements: For refrigerant recovery technician.

B. Engineering Survey: Submit engineering survey of condition of building.

C. Survey of Existing Conditions: Submit survey.

D. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property , for environmental protection. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.

E. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:

1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
2. Temporary interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.

F. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed in accordance with EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

G. Warranties: Documentation indicating that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been salvaged.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Type III certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Owner will not occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.

B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.

1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:

a. All unfixed items will be removed by Owner prior to Notice to Proceed.

C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.

D. Hazardous Materials:

1. It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.

a. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Contractor to provide Cost Change proposal for removal. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.

E. On-site sale of removed items or materials is not permitted.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.

C. Engage a professional engineer to perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.

1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.

D. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.

E. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.

F. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video , measured drawings. Comply with Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."

1. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed for salvage or reinstallation. Photograph or video conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by removal.
2. Photograph or video existing conditions of adjoining construction including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations or removal of items for salvage or reinstallation.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

B. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.

1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

C. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

D. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment in accordance with 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND BUILDING SYSTEMS

A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain utilities and building systems and equipment to remain and protect against damage during selective demolition operations.

1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities and building systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.

1. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
2. If disconnection of utilities and building systems will affect adjacent occupied parts of the building, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to those parts of the building.
3. Demolish and remove existing building systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.

    a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    b. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
    c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and components.

4. Abandon existing building systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be abandoned in place.

    a. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
    b. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

5. Remove and reinstall/salvage existing building systems, equipment, and components indicated on drawings to be removed and reinstalled or removed and salvaged:

    a. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment and components; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
    b. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and components and deliver to Owner.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.4 SALVAGE/REINSTALL

A. Removed and Salvaged Items:

1. Clean salvaged items.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

B. Removed and Reinstalled Items:

1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
2. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
3. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
4. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 2 hours after flame-cutting operations.
5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.

B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, walkways, or other adjacent occupied or used

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed trafficways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Use water mist and other suitable methods to limit spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental-protection regulations. Do not use water when it may damage adjacent construction or create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution.

3.6 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

A. Concrete:

1. Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least **3/4 inch** at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
2. Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, and then remove concrete between saw cuts.

B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.

C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, and then break up and remove.

1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

3.8 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

030513 - CONCRETE WASHOUT STRUCTURE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. Concrete washouts are impermeable enclosures, above or below grade, to contain concrete wastewater and associated concrete mix from cleaning of ready-mix trucks, drums, pumps, tools or other equipment. Concrete washouts must collect and retain all the concrete washout water and solids, so that this material does not migrate to surface waters or into the ground water. These enclosures are not intended for concrete waste not associated with washout operations.

B. Acceptable concrete washouts may include constructed earthen structures, above or below ground, or commercially available devices designed specifically to capture concrete wash water.

1.2 MATERIALS

A. Refer to Division 10 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications.

B. Geomembrane basin liner shall consist of a minimum 10 mil thick polypropylene or polyethylene geomembrane.

1.3 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Build an enclosed earthen berm or excavate to form an enclosure in accordance with the details and as directed by the Design Engineer near the project entrance(s) or at location(s) of concrete operations. Structures shall be constructed a minimum of 50 feet from drainage conveyances or jurisdictional streams or wetlands. Alternate structure designs or plans for management of concrete washout may be submitted for review and approval by the Design Engineer. Include in the alternate plan the method used to retain, treat and dispose of the concrete washout wastewater generated within the project limits and in accordance with the minimum setback requirements.

B. Install temporary silt fence around the perimeter of the structure enclosure in accordance with the details and as directed by the Design Engineer if the structure is not located in an area where existing erosion and sedimentation control devices are capable of containing stormwater runoff.

C. Post a sign with the words “Concrete Washout” in both the English and Spanish language in close proximity of the concrete washout area, so it is clearly visible to site personnel. Install safety fence as directed by the Design Engineer for visibility to construction traffic.

D. Install prefabricated concrete washouts, designed specifically to capture concrete wash water, at locations of additional concrete pouring operations. Acceptable systems may include geotextile lined containers, vinyl or plastic containers or roll-off containers, with or without filter bags with a minimum functional holding capacity of 36 cubic feet (1.33 cubic yards). Submit prefabricated concrete washout system for approval by the Design Engineer prior to installation.

E. Place prefabricated concrete washout devices to a minimum 50 foot setback from drainage conveyances and jurisdictional streams and wetlands. If the minimum setback cannot be achieved, provide secondary containment to prevent accidental release of wastewater from reaching drainage conveyances or streams.

F. Prefabricated concrete washouts must be clearly and visibly labeled as such, either by the manufacturer on the product itself, or by a sign with the words “Concrete Washout” in close proximity of the concrete washout area so it is clearly visible to site personnel.

1.4 MAINTENANCE AND REMOVAL

A. Maintain the concrete washout structure(s) to provide adequate holding capacity plus a minimum freeboard of 12 inches. Remove and dispose of hardened concrete and return the structure to a functional condition after reaching 75% capacity. Inspect concrete washout structures for damage to liner or structure to maintain functionality.

B. Maintain prefabricated concrete washout systems per manufacturer’s recommendations. Inspect concrete washout structures for damage to linings or structure and repair or replace as necessary.

C. Remove the concrete washout structures and sign upon project completion. Grade the area to match the existing topography and permanently seed and mulch area. Dispose of prefabricated concrete washout structures according to state or local waste regulations.

END OF SECTION 030513

SECTION 031000 - CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Form-facing material for cast-in-place concrete.
2. Shoring, bracing, and anchoring.

B. Related Requirements:

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Form-Facing Material: Temporary structure or mold for the support of concrete while the concrete is setting and gaining sufficient strength to be self-supporting.

B. Formwork: The total system of support of freshly placed concrete, including the mold or sheathing that contacts the concrete, as well as supporting members, hardware, and necessary bracing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following:

1. Exposed surface form-facing material.
2. Form ties.
3. Form-release agent.

B. Shop Drawings: Prepared by, and signed and sealed by, a qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of forms.

1. For exposed vertical concrete walls, indicate dimensions and form tie locations.
2. Indicate dimension and locations of construction and movement joints required to construct the structure in accordance with ACI 301

    a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing and inspection agency.

B. Research Reports: For insulating concrete forms indicating compliance with International Code Council Acceptance Criteria AC353.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing and Inspection Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Form Liners: Store form liners under cover to protect from sunlight.

B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Concrete Formwork: Design, engineer, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, shores, and reshores in accordance with ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads, so that resulting concrete conforms to the required shapes, lines, and dimensions.

1. Design wood panel forms in accordance with APA's "Concrete Forming Design/Construction Guide."
2. Design formwork to limit deflection of form-facing material to 1/240 of center-to-center spacing of supports.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. As-Cast Surface Form-Facing Material:

1. Provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces.
2. Formwork panels shall be in sizes as shown on the architectural drawings. Shop drawings showing formwork sizes and joint locations shall be submitted for approval.
3. Acceptable Materials: As required to comply with Surface Finish designations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete, and as follows:

a. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.

b. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
   1) APA Plyform Class I, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed

2.3 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.022-inch thick, galvanized-steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

B. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.034 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.

D. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
2. Form release agent for form liners shall be acceptable to form liner manufacturer.

F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF FORMWORK

A. Comply with ACI 301.

B. Construct formwork, so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117 and to comply with the Surface Finish designations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for as-cast finishes. The Contractor shall organize a pre-construction meeting prior to installation of vertical wall concrete formwork.

C. Exposed concrete that does not meet specifications cannot be patched and will need to be removed and replaced.

D. Limit concrete surface irregularities as follows:

1. Surface Finish-1.0: ACI 117 Class D, 1 inch.
2. Surface Finish-2.0: ACI 117 Class B, 1/4 inch.
3. Surface Finish-3.0: ACI 117 Class A, 1/8 inch .

E. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

1. Minimize joints.
2. Exposed Concrete: Symmetrically align joints in forms.

F. Construct removable forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces.

1. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces.
2. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
3. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and other accessories, for easy removal.

G. Do not use rust-stained, steel, form-facing material.

H. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces.

1. Provide and secure units to support screed strips
2. Use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

I. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible.

1. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
2. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

J. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

K. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work.

1. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
2. Obtain written approval of Architect prior to forming openings not indicated on Drawings.

L. Construction and Movement Joints:

1. Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
2. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
3. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans.

    a. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.

5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings.

a. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.

M. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection.

1. Locate ports and openings in bottom of vertical forms, in inconspicuous location, to allow flushing water to drain.
2. Close temporary ports and openings with tight-fitting panels, flush with inside face of form, and neatly fitted, so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.

N. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

O. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

P. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.

1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

A. Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.

B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work.

1. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are unacceptable for exposed surfaces.
2. Apply new form-release agent.

C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints.

1. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets.
2. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 SHORING AND RESHORING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with ACI 318 and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

B. Inspections:

1. Inspect formwork for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.

END OF SECTION 031000

SECTION 032000 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel reinforcement bars.
2. Welded-wire reinforcement.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033300 "Cast-In-Place Concrete”

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review the following:

a. Testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
b. Construction contraction and isolation joints.
c. Steel-reinforcement installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Each type of steel reinforcement.
2. Bar supports.

B. Shop Drawings: Comply with ACI SP-066:

1. Include placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
2. Include bar sizes, lengths, materials, grades, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, location of splices, lengths of lap splices, details of mechanical splice couplers, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
3. For structural thermal break insulated connection system, indicate general configuration, insulation dimensions, tension bars, compression pads, shear bars, and dimensions.

C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.

1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of Architect.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Steel Reinforcement:

a. For reinforcement to be welded, mill test analysis for chemical composition and carbon equivalent of the steel in accordance with ASTM A706/A706M.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

1. Store reinforcement to avoid contact with earth.

1.7 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, deformed.

1.8 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place.

1. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete in accordance with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:

B. Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, annealed steel, not less than 0.0508 inch in diameter.

1.9 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 PREPARATION

A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:

1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
2. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

2.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing and supporting reinforcement.

B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement.

1. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover.
2. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than 1 inch, not less than one bar diameter, or not less than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.

D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with ACI 318 .

E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

F. Splices: Lap splices as indicated on Drawings.

1. Bars indicated to be continuous, and all vertical bars to be lapped not less than 36 bar diameters at splices, or 24 inches , whichever is greater.
2. Stagger splices in accordance with ACI 318

2.3 JOINTS

A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.

1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.

B. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length, to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

2.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Comply with ACI 117.

2.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test report.

END OF SECTION 032000

SECTION 033000 – CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE – SITE WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

A. Except as otherwise stipulated in this section, all cast in place concrete shall be in accordance with section 1000 of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures", latest edition.

B. Contractor shall provide all labor, equipment, and materials required for placement of cast in place concrete.

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.1 Portland cement concrete for curb and gutter, driveways, driveway aprons, wheelchair ramps, sidewalks, traffic islands, paved ditches, or concrete transitional sections for drainage structures and other items as specified on the plans shall have a minimum 28 day compressive strength of 3,000 psi in accordance with Class B concrete as described in Section 1000 of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents. Portland cement concrete for structures, culverts and other items as specified on the plans shall be Class A or Class AA in accordance with NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Road and Structures." Dyed concrete is not allowed in construction of driveway aprons or public sidewalks unless otherwise specifically required in the Contract Documents.

2.2 Joint filler shall be a non-extruding joint material conforming to Section 1028-1 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Structures, latest edition.

2.3 Aggregate for portland cement concrete shall meet the requirements for fine and course aggregate of Section 1014 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Structures, latest edition.

2.4 Portland Cement and admixtures shall meet the requirements of Section 1000 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Structures, latest edition.

2.5 Water for mixing or curing the concrete shall be free from injurious amounts of oil, salt, acid, or other products injurious to the finished product.

2.6 Detectable warnings for proposed curb ramps shall consist of integrated raised truncated domes. The description, size and spacing shall conform to the Town of Wake Forest Standard Details.

A. Use material for detectable warning systems as shown herein. Material and coating specifications must be stated in the Manufacturers Type 3 Certification and all Detectable Warning systems must be on the NCDOT Approved Products List.

B. Install detectable warnings created from one of the following materials: precast concrete blocks or bricks, clay paving brick, gray or ductile iron castings, mild steel, stainless steel, and engineered plastics, rubber or composite tile. Only one material type for detectable warning will be permitted per project, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

1. Detectable Warnings shall consist of a base with integrated raised truncated domes, and when constructed of precast concrete they shall conform to the material requirements of Article 848-2 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications, latest edition.

2. Detectable Warnings shall consist of a base with integrated raised truncated domes, and may be comprised of other materials including, but not limited, to clay paving brick, gray iron or ductile iron castings, mild steel, stainless steel, and engineered plastics, rubber or composite tile, which are cast into the concrete of the curb ramps. The material shall have an integral color throughout the thickness of the material. The detectable warning shall include fasteners or anchors for attachment in the concrete and shall be furnished as a system from the manufacturer.

C. Prior to installation, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each type of system used on the project. The system shall be furnished as a kit containing all consumable materials and consumable tools, required for the application. They shall be capable of being affixed to or anchored in the concrete curb ramp, including green concrete (concrete that has set but not appreciably hardened). The system shall be solvent free and contain no volatile organic compounds (VOC). The static coefficient of friction shall be 0.8 or greater when measured on top of the truncated domes and when measured between the domes in accordance with ASTM C1028 (dry and wet). The system shall be resistant to deterioration due to exposure to sunlight, water, salt or adverse weather conditions and impervious to degradation by motor fuels, lubricants and antifreeze.

D. When steel or gray iron or ductile iron casting products are provided, only products that meet the requirements of Subarticle 106-1(B) of the NCDOT Standard Specifications (latest edition) may be used. Submit to the Engineer a Type 6 Certification, catalog cuts and installation procedures at least 30 days prior to installation for all.

PART 3 - QUALITY ASSURANCE

3.1 Concrete shall be only plant-mixed, transit-mixed or ready-mixed concrete. The time elapsing from mixing to placing the concrete shall not exceed ninety (90) minutes. Concrete shall not be deposited on frozen subgrade and shall not be poured when the air temperature is falling and below 40° F, and the predicted low temperature for the succeeding 24 hour period is less than 32° F.

3.2 All concrete when placed in the forms shall have a temperature of between 50° F and 90° F and shall be maintained at a temperature of not less than 50° F for at least 72 hours for normal concrete and 24 hours for high early strength concrete, or for as much time as is necessary to secure proper rate of airing and designed compressive strength. The use of admixture, retarders, and accelerators shall be used as directed by the Engineer.

PART 4 - CONSTRUCTION METHODS

4.1 Proportioning of Concrete: The concrete shall be mixed in proportions discussed herein and approved by the Engineer.

4.2 Mixing Concrete: The concrete shall be mixed by machine on the job or at a central mixing plant. A batch mixer of any approved type may be used. The method of measuring the materials for the concrete, including water, shall be one which will insure separate and uniform proportions of each of the materials at all times. The mixing shall continue at least 1-1/2 minutes after all ingredients have been emptied before receiving material for the succeeding batch.

4.3 A central mixing plant shall not be used until approved by the Engineer and shall be certified by the NCDOT. The concrete from a central plant shall be delivered and deposited at the consistency specified without segregation. The time elapsing from mixing to placing the concrete shall not exceed ninety (90) minutes.

4.4 Concrete shall be mixed only in such quantities as are required for immediate use and all such material shall be used while fresh and before initial set has taken place. Any concrete in which set has begun shall not be used in the work. Retempering of concrete will not be allowed.

4.5 Subgrade: The subgrade shall be excavated to the required depth below the finished surface in accordance with the plans to the lines and grades established by the Engineer. All soft yielding material or other unsuitable material shall be removed and replaced with suitable material and the subgrade shall be compacted thoroughly and finished to a firm, smooth surface. No curb and gutter, driveways, driveway aprons, wheelchair ramps, sidewalks, or traffic islands shall be poured until the subgrade is approved by the inspector.

4.6 Forms: The forms shall be of metal and of the necessary dimensions to construct the combined curb and gutters specified in the plans. Wood forms may be used where conditions make the use of metal forms impractical. The use of wood forms must be approved by the Engineer. The forms shall be set true to the line and grade established by the Engineer and held rigidly in position, so as to prevent leakage of mortar and springing out of line when the concrete is placed in them. The forms shall be true in line, free from warping or bending. No concrete shall be placed until the forms and subgrades have been approved by the Inspector.

4.7 Placing of Concrete: The subgrade shall be moistened and the concrete shall be placed in the forms and tamped sufficiently to bring the mortar to the surface, after which it shall be finished smooth and even by means of a wooden float.

4.8 Curb and gutter shall be constructed in place in uniform sections ten (10) feet in length. The joints between sections shall be formed by steel templates one-sixth (1/6) inch in thickness and of the width and depth of the curb and gutter. The templates shall be left in place until the concrete has set sufficiently to hold its shape, but shall be removed while the forms are still in place.

4.9 Machine poured concrete curb and gutter will be scored at 15 feet intervals with expansion joints located at intervals no greater than 50 feet.

4.10 Expansion joints shall be one-half (1/2) inch in width and shall be placed between all rigid objects at a distance of no more than fifty (50) feet apart and shall extend the full depth of the concrete with the top of the filler one-half (1/2) inch below the finished surface.

4.11 Finishing: The edges of the curb and gutter shall be finished with an approved edging tool of one-half (1/2) inch radius. Joints shall be similarly finished immediately after the templates have been removed.

4.12 Curing: Contractor may select method of curing provided that the method is approved by the Engineer and that the means and methods of curing conform to standards specified by current AASHTO or ASTM specifications.

4.13 Removing Forms: Forms shall not be removed from freshly placed concrete until it has set for at least 12 hours. Forms shall be carefully removed in such a manner as to prevent damage to the edges of the concrete. Any honeycombed areas along the sides shall be filled promptly with mortar composed of one part cement and two parts of fine aggregate.

4.14 Cold Weather and Night Concreting: Concreting shall be done when weather conditions are favorable unless otherwise directed by the Engineer. Concrete operations shall be discontinued when a temperature of 40° F is reached on a falling thermometer and may be continued when temperature reaches 35° F on a rising thermometer. No concreting shall be attempted when local weather bureau indicates temperature below freezing within the ensuing 24 hours unless proper precautions are made to protect the concrete by covering with thermal insulation satisfactory to the Engineer. The Contractor shall be responsible for the quality and strength of the concrete laid during cold weather and any concrete damaged by frost action or freezing shall be removed and replaced as directed by the Engineer at the Contractor's expense.

4.15 The Contractor may be permitted by the Engineer to proceed with concrete operations during cold weather in temperatures of not less than 25° F at placing time provided that the Contractor furnishes an approved admixture and uses an amount per batch not to exceed two percent (2%) by weight of the total amount of cement, and further provided that he takes other precautions deemed necessary by the Engineer to prevent concrete from freezing during curing period.

4.16 No more concrete shall be laid than can be properly finished and covered during daylight, unless adequate artificial light satisfactory to the Engineer is provided.

4.17 Protection of Concrete: Immediately after the forms have been removed and all honeycombed areas repaired, the back of the curb shall be backfilled to prevent underwash. Traffic shall be excluded from crossing the concrete for a period of approximately fourteen (14) days, by erection and maintenance of suitable barricades, unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents or by the Engineer. Contractor shall be responsible for any damage resulting from traffic or vandalism until accepted by the Engineer, and he shall remove and replace any concrete damaged as directed by the Inspector.

PART 5 - CONSTRUCTION METHODS – SIDEWALKS AND CONCRETE CURB RAMPS

5.1 Areas of concrete to be removed shall be sawcut before removing. The sawcut shall provide a smooth, straight edge approximately two (2) inches deep before breaking away the adjacent concrete. There will be no direct payment for the work covered by this section.

5.2 Concrete shall be constructed in accordance with Section 825 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Structures (latest edition) and shall be given a "sidewalk finish," except as otherwise noted herein.

5.3 Brooming of the concrete surface shall be done transverse to the direction of traffic. Joint spacing shall not be less than 5 feet. Where existing sidewalks are being widened, transverse joints shall be located so as to line up with existing joints in the adjacent existing sidewalk. Grooved joints shall not be sealed.

5.4 No backfill shall be placed adjacent to the curb & gutter, driveways, driveway aprons, wheelchair ramps, or sidewalks until at least 3 curing days have elapsed, as defined in Section 825-9 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Structures, latest edition. However, all backfill shall be placed within 4 calendar days after the completion of this 3 curing day time period. Backfill shall clean earthen material free of all debris and shall be compacted to a degree comparable to the adjacent undisturbed material or as directed by the inspector.

5.5 Prior to placing detectable warnings in proposed concrete curb ramps, adjust the existing subgrade to the proper grade and in accordance with Article 848-3 of the 2012 Standard Specifications. Prior to placing detectable warnings in existing concrete curb ramps, saw cut to the full depth of the concrete, for other material remove as necessary, and adjust the existing subgrade to the proper grade and in accordance with Article 848-3 of the 2012 Standard Specifications.

5.6 Install all detectable warning in proposed concrete curb ramps or to retrofit existing curb ramps in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 033000 – CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE

PART1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete standards.
2. Concrete materials.
3. Admixtures.
4. Fiber reinforcement.
5. Vapor retarders.
6. Floor and slab treatments.
7. Liquid floor treatments.
8. Curing materials.
9. Accessories.
10. Repair materials.
11. Concrete mixture materials.
12. Concrete mixture class types.
13. Concrete mixing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for steel reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement.
2. Section 03100 " Concrete Forming and Accessories"
3. Section 033543 "Polished Concrete Finishing"
4. Section 033523 "Exposed Aggregate Concrete Finishing"

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement or blended hydraulic cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following:

1. Fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.

B. Water/Cementitious Materials (w/cm) Ratio: The ratio by weight of mixing water to cementitious materials.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site**.**

1. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

    a. Contractor's superintendent.
    b. Independent testing agency responsible for inspections and acceptance testing of concrete at Project site.
    c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    d. Concrete Subcontractor.
    e. Special concrete finish Subcontractor.

2. Review the following:

    a. Testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
    b. Construction joints, control joints, isolation joints, and joint-filler strips.
    c. Semirigid joint fillers.
    d. Vapor-retarder installation.
    e. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.
    f. Cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures.
    g. Concrete finishes and finishing.
    h. Curing procedures.
    i. Forms and form-removal limitations.
    j. Shoring and reshoring procedures.
    k. Methods for achieving specified floor and slab flatness and levelness..
    l. Concrete repair procedures.
    m. Concrete protection.
    n. Initial curing of standard-cured and field curing of field-cured test cylinders (ASTM C31/C31M.)
    o. Protection of field cured field test cylinders.
    p. Distribution of test reports.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Portland cement.
2. Blended hydraulic cement.
3. Performance-based hydraulic cement.
4. Fly ash.
5. Slag cement.
6. Silica fume.
7. Natural or other pozzolans.
8. Aggregates.
9. Ground calcium carbonate and aggregate mineral fillers.
10. Admixtures:

    a. Include limitations of use. Admixtures that do not comply with reference ASTM International requirements must be submitted with test data for approva
11. Vapor retarders.
12. Floor and slab treatment
13. Curing materials.

14. Joint fillers.
15. Repair materials..

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:

1. Mixture identification.
2. Compressive strength at 28 days or other age as specified.
3. Compressive strength required at stages of construction.
4. Durability exposure classes for Exposure Categories F, S, W, and C.
5. Maximum w/cm ratio.
6. Calculated equilibrium and fresh density for lightweight concrete.
7. Slump or slump flow limit.
8. Air content.
9. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
10. Steel-fiber reinforcement content.
11. Synthetic microfiber content.
12. Synthetic macrofiber content.
13. Intended placement method.
14. Submit adjustments to design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant changes.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.

a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

D. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixture Class Types" Article, including the following:

1. Concrete class designation.
2. Location within Project.
3. Exposure class designation.
4. Formed surface finish designation and final finish.
5. Final finish for floors.
6. Floor treatment, if any.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For the following:

1. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.

B. Material Certificates: For each of the following:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.
3. Fiber reinforcement.
4. Curing compounds.

5. Floor and slab treatments.
6. Bonding agents.
7. Adhesives.
8. Vapor retarders.
9. Semirigid joint filler.
10. Joint-filler strips.
11. Repair materials.

C. Research Reports:

1. For concrete admixtures in accordance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC198.
2. For sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier, showing compliance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC380.

D. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.

E. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who employs Project personnel qualified as an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Associate and Concrete Flatwork Finisher and a supervisor who is a certified ACI Advanced Concrete Flatwork Finisher/Technician or an ACI Concrete Flatwork Finisher with experience installing and finishing concrete.

1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors Installers: ACI-certified Adhesive Anchor Installer.

B. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment..

C. Mockups: Cast concrete wall formed-surface panels to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, floor treatments, and standard of workmanship. Provide up to two batches of concrete to demonstrate the number of required mockups.

1. Formed Surfaces: Build wall panel in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on each concrete mixture.

1. Include the following information in each test report:

a. Admixture dosage rates.
b. Slump.

c. Air content.
d. Seven-day compressive strength.
e. 28-day compressive strength.
f. Evaluation of permeability-reducing admixtures.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and ACI 301

B. FIELD CONDITIONS

C. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 as follows:

1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
2. When air temperature has fallen to, or is expected to fall below 40 deg F during the protection period, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than 35 deg F, other than reinforcing steel.

D. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1, and as follows:

1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed 95 deg F (35 deg C).
2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE STANDARDS

A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A.
1. Pozzolans: ASTM C618, Class C, F, or N.
2. Slag Cement: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.
3. Ground Glass Pozzolan: ASTM C1866/C1866M, Type GS or GE.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates:

1. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, Class 3S
2. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.
3. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M.

4. Limit lightweight aggregate for internal curing to prewetted lightweight fine aggregate in accordance with ASTM C1761/C1761M.

2.3 ADMIXTURES

A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.

B. Chemical Admixtures: Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chlorid in steel-reinforced concrete.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
6. Admixtures with special properties, with documentation of claimed performance enhancement, ASTM C494/C494M, Type S.
7. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: ASTM C1582/C1582M.

2.4 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

A. Synthetic Monofilament Microfiber: Monofilament polypropylene microfibers complying with ASTM C1116/C1116M, Type III. Fiber Reinforcement use must be approved by the Architect.

B. Sheet Vapor Retarder/Termite Barrier: ASTM E1745, Class A, except with maximum water-vapor permeance of 0.03 perms; complying with ICC Acceptance Criteria AC380. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
1. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 15 deg F ; ASTM D146/D146M.
2. Puncture Resistance: 224 lbf minimum; ASTM E154/E154M.
3. Water Absorption: 0.1 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F ; ASTM D570.
4. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 231 ft. minimum; ASTM D5385/D5385M.

2.5 FLOOR AND SLAB TREATMENTS

2.6 CURING MATERIALS

A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber

B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, in accordance with ASTM D2240.

2.8 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.

1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand, as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.

B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.

1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURE MATERIALS

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301

1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures

B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland or hydraulic cement in concrete assigned to Exposure Class F3 as follows:

1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
3. Silica Fume: 10 percent by mass.
4. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans, Slag Cement, and Silica Fume: 50 percent by mass, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.

5. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans and Silica Fume: 35 percent by mass with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.

C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURE CLASS TYPES

A. Class A: Normal-weight concrete used for footings.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3,000 psi at 28 days.
2. Slump Limit: 5 inches plus or minus 1.5 inches.

B. Class B: Normal-weight concrete used for walls.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi 28 days.
2. Slump Limit” 5 inches plus or minus 1.5 inches.

C. Class C: Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Slump Limit: 5 inches plus or minus 1.5 inches.

2.11 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M and furnish delivery ticket.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions:

1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:

1. Daily access to the Work.
2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.

4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Comply with ACI 117

3.4 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than 6 inches, sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
4. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.

    a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by 6 inches (on all sides and sealing to vapor retarder.

B. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair bituminous vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.

1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.

B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.

C. Water addition in transit or at the Project site must be in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M and must not exceed the permitted amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.

D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.

1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.

2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301.

    a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
    b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer.
    c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
    d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.

1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF JOINTS

A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.

1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.

    a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.

C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:

1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

3.7 APPLICATION OF FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS – (Verify type and location of finish with Architect).

A. Float Finish:

1. When bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of specific float apparatus, consolidate concrete surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats.
2. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with ACI 117 tolerances for conventional concrete.

B. Trowel Finish:

1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
2. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
4. Do not add water to concrete surface. Use of an approved finishing aid is acceptable.
5. Do not apply troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.

a. Slabs on Ground (See plans for sloped slab areas).
1) Specified overall values of flatness, F_F 35; and of levelness, F_L 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F_F 24; and of levelness, F_L 17.

C. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with a fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.8 APPLICATION OF FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

1. ACI 301 (ACI 301M) Surface Finish SF-3.0:

a. Patch voids larger than 3/4 inch wide or 1/2 inch deep.
b. Remove projections larger than 1/8 inch .
c. Patch tie holes.
d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class A.
e. Locations: Apply to all formed wall surfaces.

B. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to as-cast surface finishes where indicated on Drawings or as directed by Architect.

1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish:

a. Perform no later than one day after form removal.
b. Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture.
c. If sufficient cement paste cannot be drawn from the concrete by the rubbing process, use a grout made from the same cementitious materials used in the in-place concrete.
d. Maintain required patterns or variances as shown on Drawings or to match field sample panels.

3.9 APPLICATION OF CONCRETE CURING

A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

1. Comply with ACI 301 for cold weather protection during curing.
2. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:

1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
2. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
3. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period as follows:

a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:

1. Begin curing after finishing concrete.
2. Interior Concrete Floors:

a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:

1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.

a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches .
b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.

2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches , and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.

a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
b) Cure for not less than seven days.

3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following not in cold weather:

a) Water.
b) Continuous water-fog spray.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete:

1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to meet specification requirements.

B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

   a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
   b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

1. Testing agency to be responsible for providing curing facility for initial curing of strength test specimens on-site and verifying that test specimens are cured in accordance with standard curing requirements in ASTM C31/C31M.
2. Testing agency to immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
3. Testing agency to report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.

   a. Test reports to include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:

      1) Project name.
      2) Name of testing agency.
      3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
      4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
      5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
      6) Date and time of concrete placement.
      7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
      8) Date and time sample was obtained.
      9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
      10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
      11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
      12) Field test results of fresh concrete, including slump or slump flow, air content, temperature and density.
      13) Information on storage and curing of samples at the Project site, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
      14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.

4. Provide a space and source of power or other resources for curing and access to test specimens by the testing agency.

B. Delivery Tickets: comply with ASTM C94/C94M.

C. Inspections:
1. Verification of use of required design mixture.
2. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
3. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
4. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
5. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.

D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M to be performed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 20 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 20 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.

a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing is to be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:

a. One test at point of delivery for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
b. Perform additional tests as needed.

3. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete.

a. One test for each composite sample when strength test specimens are cast, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.

4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:

a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample when strength test specimens are cast.

5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:

a. Cast and standard cure two sets of four 6 inches by 12-inches cylindrical specimens for each composite sample.

6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.

a. Test one set of two standard cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.

b. A compressive-strength test to be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

7. Additional Tests:

   a. Testing and inspecting agency to make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
   b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

      1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength to be in accordance with ACI 301, Section 1.7.6.3.

8. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
9. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.12 PROTECTION

A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:

1. Protect from petroleum stains.
2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.
2. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Structural-steel materials.
2. High-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
3. Shear stud connectors.
4. Anchor rods.
5. Threaded rods.
6. Forged-steel hardware.
7. Shop primer.
8. Galvanized-steel primer.
9. Etching cleaner.
10. Galvanized repair paint.
11. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

C. Delegated Design – The Castellated Beams in the Park Pavillion Structure shall by designed and sealed by a NC Professional Engineer. The contract drawings show the basis for design.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (Acceptance Criteria 172).

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

1. ANSI/AISC 303.
2. ANSI/AISC 360.
3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."

B. Connection Design Information:

1. Connection designs have been completed and connections indicated on the Drawings.

2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. W-Shapes: **[ASTM A992/A992M]**.

B. Channels, Angles: **ASTM A36/A36M.**

C. Plate and Bar: **[ASTM A36/A36M]**.

D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: **[ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B]** structural tubing.

E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.3 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

A. High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.

2.4 RODS

A. Unheaded Anchor Rods: **[ASTM F1554, Grade 36].**

B. Threaded Rods: **ASTM A36/A36M,**

2.5 PRIMER

A. Steel Primer:

1. Comply with **[Section 09911"Exterior Painting" and Section 09912 "Interior Painting."]**
2. SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.
3. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

B. Galvanized-Steel Primer: **[MPI#26]**.

1. Etching Cleaner: MPI#25, for galvanized steel.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: **[MPI#18,] [ASTM A780/A780M]**.

2.6 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT

A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.

2.8 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: **[Snug tightened]**.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

2.9 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.

1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
2. All Exterior (Exposed to Weather) Structural Steel on this project shall be galvanized

2.10 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Galvanized surfaces **[unless indicated to be painted]**.
4. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.

B. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 2.
2. SSPC-SP 3.
3. SSPC-SP 7 (WAB)/NACE WAB-4.
4. SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.

C. Surface Preparation of Galvanized Steel: Prepare galvanized-steel surfaces for shop priming by thoroughly cleaning steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treating with etching cleaner **[or in accordance with SSPC-SP 16]**.

D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.

1. Allow testing agency access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
2. Bolted Connections: Inspect shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
3. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.

B. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.

3.3 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.

1. Joint Type: **[Snug tightened]**.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

1. Bolted Connections: Inspect bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
   a. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 051213 - ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Architecturally exposed structural steel (AESS).
2. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" requirements that also apply to AESS.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
2. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for surface preparation and priming requirements.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. AESS: Architecturally exposed structural steel.

B. Category AESS 1: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 1 and may be designated AESS 1 or Category AESS 1 in the Contract Documents.

C. Category AESS 2: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 2 and is designated as AESS 2 or Category AESS 2 in the Contract Documents.

D. Category AESS 3: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 3 and is designated as AESS 3 or Category AESS 3in the Contract Documents.

E. Category AESS 4: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 4 and is designated as AESS 4 or Category AESS 4 in the Contract Documents.

F. Category AESS C: Structural steel with custom characteristics that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS C and is designated as AESS C or Category AESS C in the Contract Documents.

G. SEAC/RMSCA Guide Specification: SEAC/RMSCA's "Sample Specification, Section 05 02 13: Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel."

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate surface preparation requirements for shop-primed items.

B. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

are compatible with one another.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
2. Corrosion-resisting (weathering steel), tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
3. Filler.
4. Primer.
5. Galvanized-steel primer.
6. Etching cleaner.
7. Galvanized repair paint.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of AESS components. Shop Drawings for structural steel may be used for AESS.

1. Identify AESS category for each steel member and connection, including transitions between AESS categories and between AESS and non-AESS.
2. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
3. Include embedment Drawings.
4. Indicate orientation of mill marks and HSS seams.
5. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain. Indicate grinding, finish, and profile of welds.
6. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections. Indicate orientation and location of bolt heads.
7. Indicate exposed surfaces and edges and surface preparation being used.
8. Indicate special tolerances and erection requirements.
9. Indicate weep holes for HSS and vent holes for galvanized HSS.
10. Indicate surface preparation, primer, and coating requirements, including systems specified in other Sections.

C. Samples: Submit Samples to set quality standards for AESS.

1. Two steel plates, **3/8 by 8 by 4 inches**, with long edges joined by a groove weld and with weld ground smooth.
2. Steel plate, **3/8 by 8 by 8 inches**, with one end of a short length of rectangular steel tube, **4 by 6 by 3/8 inches**, welded to plate with a continuous fillet weld and with weld ground smooth and blended.
3. Round steel tube or pipe, minimum **8 inches** in diameter, with end of another round steel tube or pipe, approximately **4 inches** in diameter, welded to its side at a 45-degree angle

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

with a continuous fillet weld and with weld ground smooth and blended.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer fabricator shop-painting applicator.

B. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P3 or SSPC-QP 3.

B. Mockups: Build mockups of AESS to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical portion of AESS as shown on Drawings.
2. Coordinate painting requirements with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
3. Coordinate high-performance coatings requirements with Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Use special care in handling AESS to prevent twisting, warping, nicking, and other damage during fabrication, delivery, and erection. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep AESS members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect AESS members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

1. Do not store AESS materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Where AESS is indicated to fit against other construction, verify actual dimensions by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements of ANSI/AISC 303, Sections 1 through 9 and as modified in Section

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

10, "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel."

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. Tension-Control, High-Strength, Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852, Type 1, round-head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends; **ASTM A563, Grade DH,** heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish: Plain.

2.3 FILLER

A. Polyester filler intended for use in repairing dents in automobile bodies.

2.4 PRIMER

A. Steel Primer:

1. Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
2. SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.
3. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

B. Galvanized-Steel Primer: MPI#134.

1. Etching Cleaner: MPI#25, for galvanized steel.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A780/A780M.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Shop fabricate and assemble AESS to the maximum extent possible. Locate field joints at concealed locations if possible. Detail assemblies to minimize handling and to expedite erection.

1. Use special care handling and fabricating AESS before and after shop painting to minimize damage to shop finish.

B. Category AESS 1:

1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and eased edges.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with **3/8-inch** closure plates.
6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to **1/16 inch**.
7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.

C. Category AESS 2:

1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and eased edges.
4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with **3/8-inch** closure plates.
6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to **1/16 inch**.
7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
12. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance to one-half that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
13. Limit as-fabricated curved structural steel tolerance to that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
14. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance of welded built-up members to one-half that permitted by AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
15. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.
16. Make welds uniform and smooth.

D. Category AESS 3:

1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and eased edges.
4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with **3/8-inch** closure plates.
6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to **1/16 inch**.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
12. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance to one-half that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
13. Limit as-fabricated curved structural steel tolerance to that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
14. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance of welded built-up members to one-half that permitted by AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
15. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.
16. Make welds uniform and smooth.
17. Cut out mill marks from mill material or hide these markings from view in the completed structure. Where neither method is possible, remove mill marks by grinding and filling surfaces as approved by Architect.
18. Grind butt and plug welds smooth or fill, removing weld splatter exposed to view.
19. Orient HSS seams as indicated or away from view.
20. Align and match abutting member cross sections.
21. At visible open joints of copes, miters, and cuts, maintain uniform clear gaps of **1/8 inch**. At closed joints, maintain uniform contact within **1/16 inch**.
22. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and of surface quality approved by Architect.

E. Category AESS 4:

1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and eased edges.
4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with **3/8-inch** closure plates.
6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to **1/16 inch**.
7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
12. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance to one-half that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
13. Limit as-fabricated curved structural steel tolerance to that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
14. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance of welded built-up members to one-half that permitted by AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

15. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.
16. Make welds uniform and smooth.
17. Cut out mill marks from mill material or hide these markings from view in the completed structure. Where neither method is possible, remove mill marks by grinding and filling surfaces as approved by Architect.
18. Grind butt and plug welds smooth or fill, removing weld splatter exposed to view.
19. Orient HSS seams as indicated or away from view.
20. Align and match abutting member cross sections.
21. At visible open joints of copes, miters, and cuts, maintain uniform clear gaps of **1/8 inch**. At closed joints, maintain uniform contact within **1/16 inch**.
22. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and of surface quality approved by Architect.
23. Treat HSS seams to appear seamless.
24. Contour and blend welds and weld transitions between members, removing splatter exposed to view.
25. Fill surface imperfections with filler and sand smooth to achieve surface quality approved by Architect.
26. Minimize weld show-through and distortion on the opposite side of exposed connections by grinding to a smooth profile aligned with adjacent material.

F. Cleaning Corrosion-Resisting (Weathering) AESS: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Slip critical.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

2.7 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A123/A123M.

1. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
2. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
3. Galvanize AESS lintels attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

2.8 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of **2 inches**.
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
4. Corrosion-resisting (weathering) steel surfaces.
5. Galvanized surfaces .

B. Surface Preparation: Clean nongalvanized surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 2.
2. SSPC-SP 3.
3. SSPC-SP 14 (WAB)/NACE WAB-8.
4. SSPC-SP 11.
5. SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
6. SSPC-SP 10 (WAB)/NACE WAB-2.
7. SSPC-SP 5 (WAB)/NACE WAB-1.
8. SSPC-SP 8.

C. Preparing Galvanized Steel for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner or according to SSPC-SP 16.

D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils**. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and eased edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify, with steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.

B. Examine AESS for twists, kinks, warping, gouges, and other imperfections before erecting.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep AESS secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Take special care during erection to avoid marking or distorting the AESS and to minimize damage to shop painting. Set AESS accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.

1. Remove welded tabs that were used for attaching temporary bracing and safety cabling and that are exposed to view in the completed Work. Take care to avoid any blemishes, holes, or unsightly surfaces resulting from the use or removal of temporary elements.
2. Grind tack welds smooth.
3. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
4. Orient bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
5. Remove erection bolts in Category AESS 4 AESS, fill holes with weld metal or filler, and grind or sand smooth to achieve surface quality approved by Architect.
6. Fill weld access holes in Category AESS 4 AESS with weld metal or filler and grind, or sand smooth to achieve surface quality as approved by Architect.
7. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.

B. In addition to ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10 requirements, comply with the following.

1. Erection of Category AESS 1:

a. Erect AESS to the standard frame tolerances specified in ANSI/AISC 303 for non-AESS.
b. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
c. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
d. Grind off butt and plug weld projections larger than **1/16 inch**.
e. Continuous welds are to be of uniform size and profile.
f. Ream holes that must be enlarged. Use of drift pins or burning is not permitted. Replace misaligned connection plates where holes cannot be aligned with acceptable appearance.
g. Splice members only where indicated on Drawings.
h. No torch cutting or field fabrication is permitted.

2. Erection of Category AESS 3:

a. Erect AESS to the standard frame tolerances specified in ANSI/AISC 303 for non-AESS.
b. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
c. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

d. Grind off butt and plug weld projections larger than **1/16 inch**.
e. Continuous welds are to be of uniform size and profile.
f. Ream holes that must be enlarged. Use of drift pins or burning is not permitted. Replace misaligned connection plates where holes cannot be aligned with acceptable appearance.
g. Splice members only where indicated on Drawings.
h. No torch cutting or field fabrication is permitted.
i. Weld profiles, quality, and finish are be as approved by Architect.
j. Make joint welds, including tack welds, appear continuous by filling intermittent welds.

3. Erection of Category AESS 4:

a. Erect AESS to the standard frame tolerances specified in ANSI/AISC 303 for non-AESS.
b. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
c. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
d. Grind off butt and plug weld projections larger than **1/16 inch**.
e. Continuous welds are to be of uniform size and profile.
f. Ream holes that must be enlarged. Use of drift pins or burning is not permitted. Replace misaligned connection plates where holes cannot be aligned with acceptable appearance.
g. Splice members only where indicated on Drawings.
h. No torch cutting or field fabrication is permitted.
i. Weld profiles, quality, and finish are be as approved by Architect.
j. Make joint welds, including tack welds, appear continuous by filling intermittent welds.
k. Grind welds smooth.
l. Minimize weld show-through and distortion on the opposite side of exposed connections by grinding to a smooth profile aligned with adjacent material.
m. Oversize welds where ground, contoured, or blended, and grind to provide a smooth transition, matching profile approved by Architect.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Slip critical.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

3.5 REPAIR

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and touchup galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting, to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

2. Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting." Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

C. Touchup Priming: Cleaning and touchup priming are specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to inspect AESS as specified in Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing." The testing agency is not responsible for enforcing requirements relating to aesthetic effect.

B. Architect will observe AESS in place to determine acceptability relating to aesthetic effect.

END OF SECTION 051213

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Miscellaneous framing and supports.
2. Shelf angles.
3. Metal floor plate.
4. Miscellaneous steel trim.
5. Metal bollards.
6. Pipe and downspout guards.
7. Loose bearing and leveling plates.
8. Locking steel sliding gates.
9. Galvanized bent steel plate gutters.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for steel framing, supports, elevator machine beams, hoist beams, divider beams, door frames, and other steel items attached to the structural-steel framing.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
2. Fasteners.
3. Shop primers.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

4. Slotted channel framing.
5. Metal bollards.
6. Pipe and downspout guards.
7. Metal downspout boots.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:

1. Miscellaneous framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
2. Shelf angles.
3. Metal floor plate and supports.
4. Structural-steel door frames.
5. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel edgings.
6. Metal bollards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

C. Research Reports: For post-installed anchors.

D. Delegated design engineer qualifications.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following welding codes:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, floor slabs, decks, and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

C. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786/A786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C or D.

D. Rolled-Stainless Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A793.

E. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.

F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

G. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A48/A48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A47/A47M, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: **ASTM B209**, Alloy 6061-T6.

I. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221**, Alloy 6063-T6.

J. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B632/B632M, Alloy 6061-T6.

K. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

2.2 FASTENERS

A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

1. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
2. Provide bronze fasteners for fastening bronze.

B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, **ASTM A307, Grade A**; with hex nuts, **ASTM A563**; and, where indicated, flat washers.

C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, **Grade A325**, Type 3, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A563, Grade DH3,** heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and where indicated, flat washers.

D. Stainless Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless steel bolts, **ASTM F593**; with hex nuts, **ASTM F594**; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 2.

E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, **ASTM A563**; and, where indicated, flat washers.

1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.

F. Anchors, General: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

G. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron or ASTM A27/A27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F2329/F2329M.

H. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 stainless steel bolts, **ASTM F593**, and nuts, **ASTM F594**.

I. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, **1-5/8 by 7/8 inches** by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than **3 inches** long at not more than **8 inches** o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

1. Use primer that contains pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

C. Water-Based Primer: Emulsion type, anticorrosive primer for mildly corrosive environments that is resistant to flash rusting when applied to cleaned steel, complying with MPI#107 and compatible with topcoat.

D. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.

E. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.

F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

H. Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

I. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of **3000 psi**.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, **1/8 by 1-1/2 inches**, with a minimum **6-inch** embedment and **2-inch** hook, not less than **8 inches** from ends and corners of units and **24 inches** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

construction.

1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.

C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with primer specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" where indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.

B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.

1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.

C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

2.7 PIPE AND DOWNSPOUT GUARDS

A. Fabricate pipe downspout guards from **3/8-inch-** thick by **12-inch-** wide, steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with **2-inch** clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two **3/4-inch** anchor bolts.

B. Galvanize and prime steel downspout guards.

2.8 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

B. Galvanize bearing and leveling plates.

C. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.

2.9 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.11 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.

1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean galvanized surfaces of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.

C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.

1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.

D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:

1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
3. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
4. Other Steel Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
5. Galvanized-Steel Items: SSPC-SP 16, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning of Coated and Uncoated Galvanized Steel, Stainless Steels, and Non-Ferrous Metals."

E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

2.12 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M12.

B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, AA-M12C22A41.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.

E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:

1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

B. Anchor supports for ceiling-hung toilet partitions overhead doors securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.

C. Anchor shelf angles securely to existing construction with expansion anchors.

D. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

pipe columns.

1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.

E. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installation of Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.

1. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SHELF ANGLES

A. Install shelf angles as required to keep masonry level, at correct elevation, and flush with vertical plane.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF METAL FLOOR PLATE

A. Install metal floor plates flush with finished surface. Adjust as required to avoid lippage that could present a tripping hazard.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

A. Anchor to concrete construction to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF PIPE AND DOWNSPOUT GUARDS

A. Provide pipe guards at exposed vertical pipes in at locations indicated on Drawings where not protected by curbs or other barriers. Install by bolting to wall or column with expansion anchors. Provide four **3/4-inch** bolts at each pipe guard. Mount pipe guards with top edge **26 inches** above driving surface.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.

B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with shrinkage-resistant grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.8 REPAIRS

A. Touchup Painting:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

    a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum **2.0-mil** dry film thickness.

2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 055000

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Framing with timber.
3. Framing with engineered wood products.
4. Wood blocking and nailers.
5. Wood furring
6. Wood sleepers.
7. Utility shelving.
8. Plywood backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061063 "Exterior Rough Carpentry."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.

B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) size in least dimension.

C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.

D. OSB: Oriented strand board.

E. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
3. Engineered wood products.
4. Power-driven fasteners.
5. Post-installed anchors.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, [mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece] [or] [omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency].
3. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness] 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.

C. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.

1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.

D. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.] [items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D6841. For enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.

C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.

D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.

1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, **mark end or back of** each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by testing agency .

E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

F. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated. items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Framing for raised platforms.
2. Framing for stages.
3. Concealed blocking.
4. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
5. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
6. Roof construction.
7. Plywood backing panels.

2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2, Construction, Stud, or No. 3 grade.

1. Application: Interior partitions not indicated as load bearing.
2. Species:

a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
b. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
c. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
d. Hem-fir; WCLIB, or WWPA.
e. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
f. Northern species; NLGA.
g. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
h. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.

B. Load-Bearing Partitions: No. 2 grade.

1. Application: Exterior walls and interior load-bearing partitions.
2. Species:

a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
b. Southern pine; SPIB.
c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
d. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

C. Load-Bearing Partitions: Any species of machine stress-rated dimension lumber with a grade of not less than No.1/No.2 SPF.

1. Application: Exterior walls and interior load-bearing partitions.

D. Load-Bearing Partitions: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,400,000 psi and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 875 psi for 2-inch nominal thickness for single-member use.

1. Application: Exterior walls and interior load-bearing partitions.

E. Ceiling Joists: No.1 No.2

1. Species:

a. Southern pine; SPIB.
b. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

F. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: **No. 1** N**o. 2** grade.

1. Species:
a. Southern pine; SPIB.
b. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

G. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: Any species of machine stress-rated dimension lumber with a grade of not less than 1300f-1.4E.

H. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,400,000 psi and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 875 psi for 2-inch nominal thickness for a single-member use.

I. Exposed Framing Indicated to Receive a Stained or Natural Finish: Hand-select material for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot-holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.

1. Species and Grade: As indicated above for load-bearing construction of same type.
2. Species and Grade: Southern pine; [Select Structural] [No. 1] [No. 2] grade; SPIB.
3. Species and Grade: Spruce-pine-fir; [Select Structural] [No. 1] grade; NLGA.

2.5 TIMBER FRAMING

A. Comply with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:

1. Species and Grade: Southern pine; **No. 1** grade; SPIB.
2. Maximum Moisture Content: **20** percent.
3. Additional Restriction: Free of heart centers.

2.6 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of engineered wood product from single source from a single manufacturer.

B. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D2559.
   1. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2600 psi for 12-inch nominal depth members.
   2. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 1,900,000 psi .

C. Parallel-Strand Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood strand elements with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D2559.
   1. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2600 psi for 12-inch nominal- depth members.
   2. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 1,900,000 psi.

2.7 LUMBER

A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

   1. Blocking.
   2. Nailers.
   3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
   4. Cants.
   5. Furring.
   6. Grounds.
   7. Utility shelving.

B. Dimension Lumber Items: No. 1/No. 2 for any of the following species: following species:
   1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
   2. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.8 FASTENERS

A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on [ICC-ES AC01] [ICC-ES AC58] [ICC-ES AC193] [or] [ICC-ES AC308] as appropriate for the substrate.

1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F738M and ASTM F836M, Grade A1 or A4).

2.9 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

A. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those of products of manufacturers listed. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.

B. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 (Z550) coating designatin; and not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) thick.

1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.

C. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch long seat and 1-1/4-inch- wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.

1. Thickness: 0.050 inch.

D. I-Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch- long seat and 1-1/4-inch- wide nailing flanges full depth of joist. Nailing flanges provide lateral support at joist top chord.

1. Thickness: 0.050 inch .

E. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.

1. Strap Width: 1-1/2 inches.

2. Thickness: 0.050 inch.

F. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post 1 inch above base and with 2-inch minimum side cover, socket 0.062 inch thick, and standoff and adjustment plates 0.108 inch thick.

G. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.

1. Width: 1-1/4 inches .
2. Thickness: 0.050 inch .
3. Length: 16 inches or as indicated.

H. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.

I. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying upper floor wall studs to band joists and lower floor studs, 1-1/4 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick by 36 inches long.

J. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of two bolts placed seven bolt diameters from reinforced base. See plan for detail and hold-down specification.

K. Wall Bracing: T-shaped bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 1-1/8 inches wide by 9/16 inch deep by 0.034 inch thick with hemmed edges.

L. Wall Bracing: Angle bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 15/16 by 15/16 by 0.040 inch thick with hemmed edges.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1-inch nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch ; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.

B. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.

C. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, **butyl** rubber or [rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch .

D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring,]nailers, blocking, [grounds,]and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.

E. Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.

G. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.

H. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.

I. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.

J. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:

1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.

K. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

L. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

M. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

N. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

O. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

P. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.

1. Comply with indicated fastener patterns where applicable. Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.
2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.
3. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

A. Install where indicated and where required for **screeding or** attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WOOD FURRING

A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- size furring horizontally and vertically at 24 inches o.c.

C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inchnominal size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING

A. Ceiling Joists: Install with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.

1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate, and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal size or 2-by-4-inch nominal-size stringers spaced 48 inches o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.

B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and or use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.

1. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
2. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.

C. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide 1-by-6-inch nominal size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than 48 inches o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.

D. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions if any.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TIMBER FRAMING

A. Install timber beams with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports as indicated if not continuous.

B. Where beams or girders are framed into pockets of exterior concrete or masonry walls, provide 1/2-inch airspace at sides and ends of wood members.

C. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.

D. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061063 - EXTERIOR ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior Rough Carpentry

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Boards: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal in thickness and 2 inches nominal or greater in width.

B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.

C. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.

D. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:

1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates:

1. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

B. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed wood products not marked with grade stamp.

C. Evaluation Reports: For preservative-treated wood products, from ICC-ES.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMBER, GENERAL

A. Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

1. Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For items that are exposed to view in the completed Work, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Maximum Moisture Content:

1. Boards: 19 percent.
2. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent
3. Timber. 19 percent.

2.2 LUMBER

A. Dimension Lumber: No. 1/ No. 2 grade and any of the following species:
   1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.

B. Boards:Any of the following species and grades:
   1. .
   2. Southern pine, B & B finish; SPIB.

C. Boards: Any of the following species and grades:
   1. Mixed southern pine;No. 1/[No. 2 grade; SPIB.
   2. Northern white cedar, [No. 1 Common] [No. 2 Common]; NeLMA or NLGA.
   3. Spruce-pine-fir (South)

2.3 POSTS

A. Dimension Lumber Posts: No. 2 grade and any of the following species:
   1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.

B. Timber Posts: Southern pine; No. 1/No. 2; SPIB.

2.4 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

A. Pressure treat boards and dimension lumber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.

B. Pressure treat timber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC4a.

   1. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.

C. Pressure treat poles with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC4a.

   1. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.

D. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

   1. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium.

E. Mark treated wood with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.

   1. For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.

F. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings.

2.5 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.

1. Use stainless steel fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329 unless otherwise indicated.
2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless steel fasteners.

B. Nails: ASTM F1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: ICC-ES AC70.

D. Wood Screws and Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.1, or ICC-ES AC233.

E. Carbon-Steel Bolts: ASTM A307 with ASTM A563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers all hot-dip zinc coated.

F. Stainless Steel Bolts: ASTM F593, Alloy Group 1 or 2; with ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

G. Postinstalled Anchors: Stainless steel, anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing according to ASTM E488, conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.

1. Stainless steel bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Prime wood indicated to be painted, including both faces and edges. Cut to required lengths and prime ends. Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

B. Stain wood indicated to be stained, including both faces and edges. Cut to required lengths and stain ends. Comply with requirements in Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing."

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit work to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.

B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA WCD1 unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.

E. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

F. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of members or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

G. Apply copper naphthenate field treatment to comply with AWPA M4, to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

H. Securely attach exterior rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. ICC-ES AC70 for power-driven fasteners.
2. "Fastening Schedule" in ICC's International Building Code.
3. "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members" and "Alternate Attachments" in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

I. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that do not fully penetrate members where opposite side is exposed to view. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

END OF SECTION 061063

SECTION 061800 - GLUED-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural glued-laminated timber.
2. Timber connectors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with structural glued-laminated timber.

2. Section 061063 – “Exterior Rough Carpentry”

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Glued-Laminated (Glulam) Timber: An engineered, stress-rated timber product assembled from selected and prepared wood laminations bonded together with adhesives and with the grain of the laminations approximately parallel longitudinally.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include data on lumber, adhesives, fabrication, and protection.
2. For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
3. For connectors. Include installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show layout of structural glued-laminated timber system and full dimensions of each member.
2. Indicate species and laminating combination.
3. Include large-scale details of connections.

C. Samples: Full width and depth, 24 inches long, showing the range of variation to be expected in appearance of structural glued-laminated timber including variations due to specified treatment.

1. Apply specified factory finish to three sides of half length of each Sample.

D. Delegated Design Submittal: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors.

Copyright © 2023 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates of Conformance: Issued by a qualified testing and inspecting agency indicating that structural glued-laminated timber complies with requirements in ANSI A190.1.

B. Material Certificates: For preservative-treated wood products, from manufacturer. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors, from ICC-ES.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: An AITC- or APA-EWS-licensed firm.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. General: Comply with provisions in AITC 111.

B. Individually wrap members using plastic-coated paper covering with water-resistant seams.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," to design structural glued-laminated timber and connectors.

B. Structural Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors are to withstand the effects of structural loads shown on Drawings without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed in ANSI 117 or determined according to ASTM D3737 and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Seismic Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors are to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

2.2 STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER

A. General: Provide structural glued-laminated timber that complies with ANSI A190.1 and ANSI 117 or research/evaluation reports acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Factory mark each piece of structural glued-laminated timber with AITC Quality Mark or APA-EWS trademark. Place mark on surfaces that are not exposed in the completed Work.
2. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from single species.
3. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from solid lumber laminations; do not use laminated veneer lumber.

Copyright © 2023 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

4. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made with wet-use adhesive complying with ANSI A190.1.

B. Species and Grades for Structural Glued-Laminated Timber:

1. Southern pine preferred, but any species in grades needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Southern pine or Any Species that complies with structural properties indicated.

C. Species and Grades: For beams and purlins.

1. Species and Beam Stress Classification: Douglas fir-larch or southern pine, 24F-1.8E.
2. Lay-up: Balanced.

D. Species and Grades for Columns:

1. Species and Combination Symbol: Southern pine, 47.

E. Appearance Grade: Architectural, complying with AITC 110.

1. For Premium and Architectural appearance grades, fill voids as required by AITC 110.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

A. Preservative Treatment: Where preservative-treated structural glued-laminated timber is indicated, comply with AWPA U1, Use Category 1.

1. Use preservative solution without water repellents or substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
2. Do not incise structural glued-laminated timber or wood used to produce structural glued-laminated timber.

B. Preservative: One of the following:

1. Oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.
2. Pentachlorophenol in light petroleum solvent.
3. Copper naphthenate in a light petroleum solvent.
4. Ammoniacal zinc copper arsenate (ACZA) in a water solution.
5. Chromated copper arsenate (CCA) in a water solution.
6. Ammoniacal copper quat Type A (ACQ-C) in a water solution.
7. Propiconazole tebuconazole imidacloprid (PTI) in a water emulsion.

C. After dressing members, apply a copper naphthenate field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than 1/16 inch.

2.4 TIMBER CONNECTORS

A. Fabricate beam seats from steel with 3/16-inch bearing plates, 3/4-inch- diameter-by-12-inch-long deformed bar anchors, and 0.239-inch side plates.

Copyright © 2023 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Fabricate beam hangers from steel with 0.179-inch stirrups and 0.239-inch top plates.

C. Provide bolts, 3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated, complying with ASTM A307, Grade A; nuts complying with ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.

D. Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:

1. Structural-steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A36/A36M.
2. Round steel bars complying with ASTM A575, Grade M 1020.
3. Hot-rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M, Structural Steel, Type SS, Grade 33.

E. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, 2-mil dry film thickness.

F. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies and fasteners after fabrication to comply with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.

B. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Shop fabricate for connections to greatest extent possible, including cutting to length and drilling bolt holes.

1. Dress exposed surfaces as needed to remove planing and surfacing marks.

B. Camber: Fabricate horizontal and inclined members of less than 1:1 slope with either circular or parabolic camber equal to 1/500 of span.

C. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.

1. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
2. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.

D. End-Cut Sealing: Immediately after end cutting each member to final length and after preservative treatment, apply a saturation coat of end sealer to ends and other cross-cut surfaces, keeping surfaces flood coated for not less than 10 minutes.

Copyright © 2023 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

E. Seal Coat: After fabricating, sanding, and end-coat sealing, apply a heavy saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit except for preservative-treated wood where treatment included a water repellent.

2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

A. Clear Finish: Manufacturer's standard, resistant to mildew and fungus.

1. Water repellent.
2. Film-forming two-coat, varnish.

B. Semitransparent Stain Finish: Manufacturer's standard oil-based stain, resistant to mold and fungus.

1. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

C. Solid-Color Stain Finish: Manufacturer's standard oil-based or latex penetrating stain, resistant to mildew and fungus.

1. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

D. Painted Finish: Acrylic latex system.

1. Prime Coat: Stain blocking primer as recommended by topcoat manufacturer.
2. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates in areas to receive structural glued-laminated timber, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Erect structural glued-laminated timber true and plumb and with uniform, close-fitting joints. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.

1. Handle and temporarily support glued-laminated timber to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.

B. Framing Built into Masonry: Provide 1/2-inch clearance at tops, sides, and ends of members built into masonry; bevel cut ends 3 inches; and do not embed more than 4 inches unless otherwise indicated.

Copyright © 2023 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

C. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.

D. Fit structural glued-laminated timber by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing and finishing.

1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
3. Coat cross cuts with end sealer.
4. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.

    a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
    b. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.

E. Install timber connectors as indicated.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged structural glued-laminated timber if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Do not remove wrappings on individually wrapped members until they no longer serve a useful purpose, including protection from weather, sunlight, soiling, and damage from work of other trades.

1. Coordinate wrapping removal with finishing work. Retain wrapping where it can serve as a painting shield.
2. Slit underside of wrapping to prevent accumulation of moisture inside the wrapping.

END OF SECTION 061800

Copyright © 2023 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 062013 - EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

1. Lumber siding.
2. Lumber soffits.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material.
2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products, with half of exposed surface finished; **50 sq. in.** for lumber and **8 by 10 inches** for panels.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Compliance Certificates:

1. For lumber that is not marked with grade stamp.
2. For preservative-treated wood that is not marked with treatment-quality mark.

B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.

C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.

1. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
2. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecast weather conditions permit work to be performed and at least one coat of specified finish can be applied without exposure to rain, snow, or dampness.

B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Engineered Wood Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of engineered wood siding soffits and trim that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, deformation or deterioration beyond normal weathering.
2. Warranty Period for Factory-Applied Finish: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period: Siding Soffits and (Excluding Finish), 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXTERIOR TRIM

A. Lumber Trim for Semi-Transparent Finish (Stained Finish):

1. Species and Grade:

a. Chemically-modified radiata pine.

2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less.
3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

4. Face Surface: Smooth
5. Factory Finish: Factory coated on both faces and all edges.
6. Size: REF Drawings.

B. Primed Hardboard Trim: ANSI A135.6, primed with manufacturer's standard exterior primer. Recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

2.2 LUMBER SIDING

A. Provide kiln-dried lumber siding complying with DOC PS 20 , factory coated with exterior primer compatible with topcoats specified.

B. Species and Grade:

a. Chemically-modified radiata pine.

C. Pattern:

1. 1x4 Shiplap - Per drawings.

2.3 LUMBER SOFFITS

A. Provide kiln-dried lumber siding complying with DOC PS 20, prefinished all sides .

B. Species and Grade:

1. Chemically-modified radiate pine – white-washed.

C. Pattern:

1. Shiplap - 1x4 nominal. Orientation per drawings.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Fasteners for Exterior Finish Carpentry: Provide screws, in sufficient length to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches** into wood substrate.

1. Provide stainless steel fasteners – in layout provided by Architect.

B. Wood Glue: Waterproof resorcinol glue recommended by manufacturer for exterior carpentry use.

C. Flashing: Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing materials installed in exterior finish carpentry.

1. Horizontal Joint Flashing for Panel Siding: Preformed, prefinished-aluminum, Z-shaped flashing.

D. Insect Screening for Soffit Vents: PVC-coated glass-fiber black fabric, 18-by-14-inch or 18-by-

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

16-inch mesh.

E. Soffit Vents: Per Drawings.

F. Rain Screen:

1. Extruded Polypropylene Plastic Continuous Cellular Strip Vent – REF drawings.

G. Soffit Vents:

1. Extruded aluminum continuous soffit vent.

a. Finish: Mill finish.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Back out or kerf backs of standing and running trim wider than **5 inches**, except members with ends exposed in finished work.

B. Ease edges of lumber less than **1 inch** in nominal thickness to **1/16-inch** radius and edges of lumber **1 inch** or more in nominal thickness to **1/8-inch** radius.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

B. Prime lumber and moldings to be painted, including both faces and edges, unless factory primed.

1. Cut to required lengths and prime ends.
2. Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.

1. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.

B. Install exterior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials.

1. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
2. Scribe and cut exterior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work.
3. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
4. Install to tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches** for level and plumb. Install adjoining exterior finish carpentry with **1/32-inch** maximum offset for flush installation and **1/16-inch** maximum offset for reveal installation.
5. Coordinate exterior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it.
6. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate exterior finish carpentry.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM

A. Install flat-grain lumber with bark side exposed to weather.

B. Install cellular PVC trim to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Install trim with minimum number of joints as is practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than **24 inches** long, except where necessary.

1. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
2. Stagger end joints in adjacent and related members.

D. Fit exterior joints to exclude water.

1. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints, with full-surface contact throughout length of joint.
2. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints, where necessary for alignment.

E. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF SIDING

A. Install siding to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

B. Horizontal Lumber Siding:

1. Apply starter strip along bottom edge of sheathing or sill.
2. Remove and replace at repair locations for any piece less than 12' long, to avoid visible patching evidence.
3. Install to match existing siding. Use guidance in this section when there is no available existing condition to match.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

4. Install first course of siding, with lower edge at least **1/8 inch** below starter strip and subsequent courses lapped **1 inch** over course below.

    a. Nail at each stud.
    b. Do not allow nails to penetrate more than one thickness of siding.

5. Leave **1/8-inch** gap at trim and corners unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, and apply sealant.
6. Butt joints only over framing or blocking, nailing top and bottom on each side and staggering joints in subsequent courses.

    a. Butt joints should be avoided where possible.

C. Diagonal Lumber Siding:

1. Begin application at corner, with tongue edge up.
2. Install subsequent courses with tongue-and-groove edges tightly fitted together.

    a. Nail at each stud.

3. Leave **1/8-inch** gap at trim and corners unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, and apply sealant.
4. Butt joints only over framing or blocking, nailing top and bottom on each side and staggering joints in subsequent courses.

    a. Butt joints should be avoided where possible.

5. Install siding per drawings, matching roof slope.

D. Flashing: Install metal flashing as indicated on Drawings and as recommended by siding manufacturer.

E. Finish: Apply finish within two weeks of installation.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Replace exterior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements.

1. Exterior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

B. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean exterior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.

B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 062013

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 062023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view and for framing exposed to view.
2. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for shop-fabricated carpentry.
3. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for priming and backpriming of interior finish carpentry.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.

B. MDO: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.

C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Interior trim.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.

1. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.

E. Samples for Verification:

1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products with nonfactory-applied finish, with half of exposed surface finished; **50 sq. in.** for lumber and **8 by 10 inches** for panels.
2. For each finish system and color of lumber and panel products with factory-applied finish, **50 sq. in.** for lumber and **8 by 10 inches** for panels.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.

1. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
2. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INTERIOR TRIM

A. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish):

1. Species and Grade:Walnut ; NHLA Clear.
2. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
4. Gluing for Width: Not allowed.
5. Veneered Material: Allowed Use for lumber trim wider than 6 inches.
6. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
7. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.

B. Lumber Trim for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish):

1. Species and Grade:

a. Alder, aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, soft maple, sycamore, tupelo, or yellow poplar; NHLA A Finish.

2. Maximum Moisture Content for Softwoods: 15 percent with at least 85 percent of

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

shipment at 12 percent or less.
3. Maximum Moisture Content for Hardwoods: 10 percent.
4. Finger Jointing: Allowed.
5. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
6. Optional Material: Primed MDF of same actual dimensions as lumber indicated may be used in lieu of lumber.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.

B. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.

C. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: Formulation, complying with ASTM D3498, that is recommended for indicated use by adhesive manufacturer.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members, except those with ends exposed in finished work:

1. Interior standing and running trim, except shoe and crown molds.

B. Ease edges of lumber less than **1 inch** in nominal thickness to **1/16-inch** radius and edges of lumber **1 inch** or more in nominal thickness to **1/8-inch** radius.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials that are unsound; warped; improperly treated or finished; inadequately seasoned; too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements; or with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.

B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials.

1. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
2. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
3. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
4. Install to tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches** for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with **1/32-inch** maximum offset for flush installation and **1/16-inch** maximum offset for reveal installation.
5. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements.

1. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

B. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

B. Restore damaged or soiled areas and touch up factory-applied finishes if any.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.

B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

END OF SECTION 062023

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 064101 - ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK (NAAWS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

1. Wood-veneer-faced casework for transparent finish.
2. Wood-veneer-faced casework for opaque finish.
3. Wood materials.
4. Wood-veneer-faced wall paneling.
5. Glass.
6. Casework hardware.
7. Shop finishing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
2. Section 123661 "Simulated Stone Countertops."

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

B. Coordinate wood species, veneer, cut, grade, matching, finishing, and other requirements with wood doors and wood trim as specified in Section 062023 "Interior Finish Carpentry" Hardwood Trim.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review locations and method of attachment of backing required for casework and paneling installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include panel material description and finish.
2. Include glazing.
3. Include accessories.
4. Include hardware.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

5. Include shop finishing.

B. Shop Drawings: For architectural cabinets.

1. Plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

a. Show large-scale details.
b. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, and backing required for attachment within walls; including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
c. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in architectural cabinets.
d. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each exposed product and for each color and finish specified, in manufacturer's standard size.

D. Samples for Verification: Provide a minimum of three samples showing the full range of color and/or grain to be expected in the finished work, for the following.

1. Lumber for Transparent Finish: Not less than **6 by 12 inches** for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
2. Veneer Leaves: Representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished cabinets. Samples to show the full range of color and grain to be expected.

a. Veneer Panel for Transparent Finish: **8 by 8 inches** by **1/4 inch**, representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished casework.

3. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

B. Qualification Statements: For manufacturer and Installer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations without Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between **60 and 90 deg F** and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

C. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

D. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Xylem Custom Woodworks. https://xylemonline.com/.
2. Dopko Cabinetry. https://www.dopko.com/
3. Eidolon Designs. https://eidolondesigns.com/.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with NAAWS for grades of architectural cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.3 WOOD-VENEER-FACED CASEWORK FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. NAAWS Grade: Premium.

B. Casework Construction Type: Frameless.

C. Door and Drawer-Front:

1. Design: Flush panel.
2. Style: Flush overlay.

a. Reveal Dimension: 1/8” inch.

D. Exposed Exterior Surfaces: **As indicated on Drawings.**

1. Species: Walnut.
2. Cut: Plain sliced/plain sawn.
3. Grain Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
4. Veneer Matching:

a. Matching of Veneer Leaves: Book match.
b. Veneer Matching within Panel Face: Running match.
c. Veneer Matching within Room: Provide cabinet veneers in each room or other space from a single flitch with doors, drawer fronts, and other surfaces matched in a sequenced set with continuous match where veneers are interrupted perpendicular to the grain.
d. Blueprint Matching: Match veneers on casework , wall paneling, and doors in room indicated on Drawings.

5. Edgeband: Veneer matching exposed surfaces.

E. Exposed Interior Surfaces: [**As indicated on Drawings.**]

1. Species: Match exposed exterior surfaces.
2. Cut: Match exposed exterior surfaces.
3. Veneer Matching: Match exposed exterior surfaces.
4. Edgeband: Match exposed exterior surfaces.

F. Semiexposed Surfaces:

1. Drawer Subfronts, Backs, and Sides: Solid birch or maple hardwood lumber.
2. Drawer Joinery: Dovetails.
3. Shelves: Adjustable.

a. Loading Capacity: 50 lb/sq. ft.

4. Edgeband: Wood veneer compatible for color and grain of exposed surfaces.

2.4 WOOD-VENEER-FACED CASEWORK FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. NAAWS Grade: Premium.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Casework Construction Type: Frameless.

C. Door and Drawer-Front:

1. Design: Flush panel.
2. Style: Flush overlay.

a. Reveal Dimension: As determined by hinge type and clearance.

D. Semiexposed Surfaces:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Match materials indicated for exposed surfaces.
2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid birch or maple hardwood lumber.
3. Shelves: Adjustable.

a. Loading Capacity: 50 lb/sq. ft.

E. Edgeband:

1. Edges of Veneer Panels: Veneer compatible for color and grain of exposed surfaces.

2.5 CASEWORK HARDWARE

A. Hinges:

1. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B01602, 120 degrees of opening, self closing.

B. Cabinet Hardware. Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets and paneling

C. Pulls and Knobs:

1. Routed Tab Pulls: 4-inch, locate per drawings.

D. Catches and Latches:

1. Magnetic Catches: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03141.
2. Push-in Magnetic Catches: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03132.
3. Roller Catches, Double Rollers: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03072.
4. Ball Friction Catches: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03013.

E. Shelf Rests and Standards:

1. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
2. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.

F. Drawer Slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

1. Standard Duty (Grade 1 and Grade 2): Side mount.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2. Heavy-Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mount.

    a. Type: Full extension.
    b. Motion Feature: soft close dampener.

3. Drawer Types:

    a. Pencil drawers not more than **3 inches** high and not more than **24 inches** wide provide 50 lb load capacity.
    b. General-purpose drawers more than **3 inches** high, but not more than **6 inches** high and not more than **24 inches** wide, provide 75 lb load capacity.
    c. File drawers more than **6 inches** high or more than **24 inches** wide provide 100 lb load capacity.
    d. Lateral file drawers more than **6 inches** high and more than **24 inches**, but not more than **30 inches** wide, provide 150 lb load capacity.
    e. Lateral file drawers more than **6 inches** high and more than **30 inches** wide provide **200 lb** load capacity.
    f. Computer keyboard tray provides 75 lb load capacity.

G. Locks for Drawer and Hinged-Doors: Cylindrical (cam) type, five-pin tumbler, brass with chrome-plated finish, and complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.11, Grade 1.

1. Provide a minimum of two keys per lock and six master keys.
2. Provide locks where indicated.

H. Door Bumpers: Manufacturer's standard self-adhering clear silicone pads.

I. Hardware Finish:

1. Exposed Hardware: Provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for ANSI/BHMA finish number indicated.

    a. Satin Stainless Steel: ANSI/BHMA 630.

2. Concealed Hardware: Manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease sharp edges and corners.

B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times architectural cabinet fabrication will be complete.
2. Trial fit assemblies at manufacturer's shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.

C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

D. Install glass to comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and in NGA's "GANA Glazing Manual."

1. For glass in wood frames, secure glass with removable stops.
2. For exposed glass edges, polish and grind smooth.

2.7 SHOP FINISHING

A. Finish architectural cabinets at manufacturer's shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.

B. Shop-finish transparent-finished architectural cabinets at manufacturer's shop as specified in this Section.

C. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural cabinets, as applicable to each unit of work.

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of cabinets.

D. Transparent Finish:

1. NAAWS Grade: Premium.
2. Finish: System - 2, lacquer, pre-catalyzed.
3. Wash Coat for Closed-Grain Woods: Apply wash-coat sealer to cabinets made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
4. Staining: None required.
5. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
6. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining, apply wash-coat sealer and allow to dry. Apply paste wood filler and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
7. Sheen: Satin, 15-25 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D523.

E. Opaque Finish:

1. NAAWS Grade: Premium.
2. Finish: System - 2, lacquer, pre-catalyzed.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Sheen: Satin, 15-25 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D523.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
2. Verify size and locations of cutouts for appliances, special equipment, sinks, plumbing, and other items to be mounted in or adjacent to casework.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CASEWORK

A. Install casework to comply with requirements of the grade of item to be installed.

B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.

C. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches** using concealed shims.

1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
3. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.

D. Anchor cabinets in accordance with NAAWS requirements to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.

1. Install cabinets to comply with NAAWS, Section 14.10-A, for additional seismic requirements.
2. Install cabinets to comply with seismic requirements as indicated on Drawings.

E. Shop Finishes: Touch up finishing after installation of architectural cabinets. Fill nail holes with matching filler.

1. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. Use filler matching finish of items being installed.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where impossible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware and other moving parts to function smoothly.

C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 064101

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 072119 - FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Open-cell spray polyurethane foam insulation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for foam-plastic board insulation.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality control reports.

B. Qualification Statements: For Installer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPEN-CELL SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM INSULATION

A. Open-Cell Spray Polyurethane Foam: Spray-applied polyurethane foam using water as a blowing agent.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AMBIT Polyurethane
b. Carlisle Spray Foam Insulation
c. ENVERGE; Holcim Solutions and Products US, LLC
d. Gaco; Holcim Building Envelope

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

e. General Coatings Manufacturing Corp.
f. Henry, a Carlisle Company (formerly Henry Company and Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc. brands)
g. Huntsman Building Solutions
h. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
i. NCFI Polyurethanes; a division of Barnhardt Manufacturing Company
j. Quadrant Performance Materials
k. SWD Urethane Company
l. Thermoseal USA
m. UPC; a General Coatings Manufacturing Corp. brand

2. Type and Minimum Compressive Strength:

a. Minimum density of **0.4 lb/cu. ft.** and minimum aged R-value at **1-inch** thickness of **3.4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F**.

3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

4. Fire-Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 and NFPA 276 testing as part of an approved assembly.
5. Fire-Safety Barriers: Approved assembly as thermal barrier and ignition barrier with accessory components.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Prescriptive Thermal Barriers: Building-code-approved materials.

1. Plywood: Nominal **1/2-inch** minimum thickness.

B. Prescriptive Ignition Barriers: Building-code-approved materials.

1. Gypsum Wallboard: **0.325-inch** minimum thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Verify that substrates are clean, dry, and free of substances that are harmful to insulation.

B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by insulation manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas to be insulated; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.

B. Spray insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated and fill voids.

C. Apply in multiple passes to not exceed maximum thicknesses recommended by manufacturer. Do not spray into rising foam.

D. Framed Construction: Install into cavities formed by framing members to achieve thickness indicated on Drawings.

E. Miscellaneous Voids: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Install thermal barrier material.

1. Do not cover insulation prior to any required spray foam insulation inspections.

G. Apply barrier coatings in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with requirements for listing and labeling for fire-propagation characteristics and surface-burning characteristics specified.

1. Use equipment and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material applied as recommended by coating manufacturer.
2. Apply coatings to prepared surfaces as soon as practical after preparation and before subsequent surface soiling or deterioration.
3. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp lines and color breaks.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect spray foam insulation installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.

END OF SECTION 072119

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 072500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Building wrap.
2. Drainage wrap.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

B. Product Data Submittals: For building wrap drainage wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing in accordance with referenced standards.

C. Shop Drawings: Show details of building wrap drainage wrap at terminations, openings, and penetrations. Show details of flexible flashing applications.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, certified, or licensed by the weather barrier system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's warranty.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and warranty requirements.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WEATHER BARRIERS

A. Building Wrap: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Alpha ProTech
b. Barricade Building Products
c. Benjamin Obdyke Incorporated
d. Dorken Systems Inc.
e. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
f. Kingspan Insulation LLC
g. PrimeSource Building Products, Inc.
h. Typar Geosynthetics; a PGI brand

2. Building Wrap Type: Type I, ASTM E2556/E2556M.
3. Composition Type: Perforated woven polyolefin.
4. Water-Vapor Permeance: Minimum 11 perms in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
5. Air Permeance: Not more than 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
6. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not more than 120 days.
7. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction to be as tested in accordance with NFPA 285.

B. Drainage Wrap: Dimensional water-resistive barrier that also creates a drainage plane; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Alpha ProTech
b. Barricade Building Products
c. Benjamin Obdyke Incorporated
d. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
e. Kingspan Insulation LLC

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2. Drainage Wrap Type: Type I, ASTM E2556/E2556M.
3. Composition Type: Nonwoven polyolefin with nondirectional drainage pattern.
4. Water-Vapor Permeance: Minimum 15 perms in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
5. Air Permeance: Maximum 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. at 0.3 inch wg when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
6. Drainage: Not less than 98 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273.
7. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not more than 120 days.

2.2 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Requirement: Provide primers, fasteners, seam tapes, flashing, transition strips, termination strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by weather barrier manufacturer to produce a complete weather barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary weather barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.

B. Drainage Mat: Free-draining polymer-strand mesh sheets or strips with thickness not less than full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity, with additional strips 4 inches high above flashing locations and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity to maintain a continuous open space behind exterior cladding.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Advanced Building Products Inc.
b. CavClear; a division of Archovations, Inc.
c. Dorken Systems Inc.
d. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
e. Keene Building Products
f. Mortar Net Solutions
g. Stuc-O-Flex International, Inc.
h. Wire-Bond

2. Location: Underneath siding.

C. Drainage Accessories: Furring strips installed between water-resistive barrier and exterior cladding to create a continuous open space behind exterior cladding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF WEATHER BARRIERS

A. Weather Barriers:

1. Building Paper: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

requirements.

2. Building Wrap or Drainage Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
3. Drainage Material: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install weather barrier accessories for a complete installation with weather barriers in accordance with manufacturers written instructions.

END OF SECTION 072500

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 072600 - VAPOR RETARDERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Polyethylene vapor retarders.
2. Reinforced-polyethylene vapor retarders.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for under-slab vapor retarders.
2. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for vapor retarders integral with insulation products.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Polyethylene vapor retarders.
2. Reinforced-polyethylene vapor retarders.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D4397, 10-mil- thick sheet, with maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm**.

2.2 REINFORCED-POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: Sheet with outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 20 lb/1000 sq. ft., with maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm**.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. ISI Building Products
b. Reef Industries, Inc.
c. Viaflex
d. W. R. Meadows, Inc

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

B. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and has demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.

C. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS ON FRAMING

A. Place vapor retarders on side of construction indicated on Drawings.

B. Extend vapor retarders to extremities of areas to protect from vapor transmission. Secure vapor retarders in place with adhesives, vapor retarder fasteners, or other anchorage system as recommended by manufacturer. Extend vapor retarders to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.

C. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping no fewer than two studs and sealing with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.

D. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarders.

E. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarders.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS IN CRAWL SPACES

A. Install vapor retarders over prepared grade. Lap joints a minimum of **12 inches** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape. Install second layer over pathways to equipment.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Extend vapor retarder over footings and seal to foundation wall or grade beam with manufacturer's recommended tape.

1. Extend vapor retarder vertically minimum 24 inches above top of footing.

C. Seal around penetrations such as utilities and columns in order to create a monolithic, airtight membrane at grade surface, perimeter, and all vertical penetrations.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect vapor retarders from damage until concealed by permanent construction.

END OF SECTION 072600

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 072613 – GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pre-coated galvanized stainless-steel downspouts.
2. Decorative rain chains.
3. Pre-finished gutters.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials:
1. ASTM A 48 – Grey Iron Castings.
2. ASTM A 167 – Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip.
3. ASTM A 361 – Sheet Steel, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by Hot-Dip Process for Roofing and Siding.
4. ASTM A 446 – Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, Structural (Physical) Quality.
5. ASTM B 32 – Solder Metal.
6. ASTM B 209 – Aluminum Allow Sheet and Plate.

B. Federal Specifications: FS TT-C-494 – Coating Compound, Bituminous, Solvent Type, Acid Resistant.

C. SMACNA – Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Provide technical data, installation instructions, and general recommendations for each specified sheet material and fabricated product.

B. Shop Drawings: Showing layout, profiles, jointing methods, fastening details, locations, and installation details.

C. Samples: Submit 6” long samples of factory-fabricated products illustrating component design, finish, color, and configuration.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Five years documented experience installing sheet metal systems.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable code for size and method or rain water discharge. Comply with SMACNA Manual for sizing components for rainfall intensity determined by storm occurrence of 1 in 5 years.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack preformed and prefinished material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope to drain.

B. Prevent contact with materials during storage which may cause discoloration, staining, or damage.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordination work with roofing work to correct sequencing of items which make up entire weatherproof, rain drainage and sheet metal system.

B. Coordinate work with downspout discharge pipe inlet.

C. Coordinate gutter and downspout system with installation of field fabricated flashing and sheet metal and sheet metal roofing under Section 076200. Work of this Section shall bring gutters and downspouts to point of connection with roofing system, with necessary accommodations for connection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Recycled Content of Aluminum Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products to postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

B. Recycled Content of Ferrous Metal Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products to postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

C. Sheet Steel Sheet: 24 gage galvanized steel, ASTM A 361, G90 zinc coating.

D. Pre-Coated Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 446, Grade A, G90 zinc coating; 24 gage core steel, shop pre-coated.

E. Fasteners: Galvanized steel screws, bolts or nuts, as applicable.

F. Stiffener Angles: Formed steel, type to match gutters.

G. Solder: ASTM B 32, 50-50 percent tin/lead solder with rosin flux for use with steel.

H. Neutralizer: 5 percent to 10 percent washing soda solution.

I. Protective Back Paint for Galvanizing: Zinc chromate or galvanized iron type.

J. Bituminous Coating: FS TT-G-494, or MIL-C-18480, or SSPC-12, cold-applied bituminous mastic, compound, for 15 mil dry film thickness coating.

K. Wire Screen: ½" mesh, stainless steel.

2.2 FABRICATION

A. Decorative Rain Chains: Stainless Steel Profile per Drawings. Anchor below grade.

2.3 FINISHES

A. Down Spouts: 70-75 percent fluorocarbon resin equivalent to Kynar 500/Hylar 5000; color as selected by Architect.

B. Back paint concealed metal surfaces with protective backing paint to minimum dry thickness of 15 mils.

C. Apply bitumen protective backing paint on surfaces in contact with dissimilar materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install downspouts, and rain chains in accordance with SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.

END OF SECTION 072613

SECTION 074113.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Clipless, standing-seam metal roof panels.
2. Vapor retarder.
3. Roof insulation.
4. Cover board.
5. Underlayment.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 074293 "Soffit Panels" for metal panels used in horizontal soffit applications.
2. Section 077253 "Snow Guards" for prefabricated devices designed to hold snow on the roof surface, allowing it to melt and drain off slowly.
3. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for miscellaneous sheet metal.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel System: A roof system designed to resist positive and negative loads applied normal to the metal roof panel surface without the benefit of a supporting deck or sheathing.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate metal roof panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal roof panel Installer, metal roof panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal roof panels, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
3. Review methods and procedures related to metal roof panel installation, including

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

manufacturer's written installation instructions.

4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
5. Review loading limitations of supporting structure during and after roofing.
6. Review flashings, special details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect metal roof panels.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for metal roof panel systems during and after installation.
9. Review procedures for repair of metal roof panels damaged after installation.
10. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For standing-seam metal roof panels. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal roof panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than **1-1/2 inches per 12 inches**.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color charts, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.

1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed finish for metal roof panels and metal panel accessories.

1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates for portable roll-forming equipment.

B. Product Test Reports: For standing-seam metal roof panels, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Qualification Statements: For roof installers.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

E. Sample warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal roof panels.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.9 MOCKUPS

A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical roof area and eave , including fascia, as shown on Drawings; approximately 48 inches square by full thickness, including attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
2. Build mockups for typical roof area only, including accessories.

a. Size: 12 ft. long by 6 ft..
b. Each type of exposed seam and seam termination.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, metal roof panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal roof panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal roof panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal roof panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal roof panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal roof panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal roof panels during installation.

E. Copper Roof Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal roof panels to be performed in accordance with manufacturers' written installation instructions and warranty requirements.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal roof panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
b. Deterioration of metal and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal roof panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel systems that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide metal roof panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads when tested in accordance with ASTM E1592:

1. Wind Loads:Per local AHJ + NC Building Code.
2. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/240 of the span.

B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than **0.06 cfm/sq. ft.** when tested in accordance with ASTM E1680 or ASTM E283/E283M at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..

C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested in accordance with ASTM E1646 or ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft..

D. Watertightness: No water penetration when tested in accordance with ASTM E2140 for hydrostatic-head resistance.

E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS, GENERAL

A. Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with seamed joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include all accessories required for weathertight installation.

B. Metal Roof Panels: Formed with attachment flanges at panel edges for direct mechanical attachment of panel to solid deck and designed for sequential installation by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels.

1. Structural Support: Over solid deck.
2. Panel Profile: Flat pan.
3. Seam Type:Double-fold mechanical.
4. Panel Coverage: 16 inches.
5. Panel Height: 2.0 inches.
6. Attachment: Manufacturer's standard fasteners designed to withstand design loads.

2.3 METAL ROOF PANEL MATERIAL

A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A653/A653M, **G90** coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A792/A792M, **Class AZ50** coating designation; structural quality. Sheet prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.

1. Nominal Thickness: 0.028 inch.
2. Surface: Smooth, flat texture.
3. Exterior Finish: Metallic fluoropolymer.
4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 SUBSTRATE BOARD

A. Perlite Board: ASTM C728, seal coated.

1. Thickness: 3/4 inch.

B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.5 VAPOR RETARDER

A. Rubberized-Asphalt-Sheet Vapor Retarder, Self-Adhering: ASTM D1970/D1970M polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive, minimum **40-mil** total thickness; maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm**; cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

B. Butyl Rubber Sheet Vapor Retarder, Self-Adhering: Polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive, minimum **30-mil** total thickness; maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm**; cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

C. Laminated Sheet Vapor Retarder: Two layers, fire-retardant polyethylene laminate, reinforced with cord grid.

1. Permeance Rating: Not more than **0.062 perm** when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 5 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 35 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

2.6 ROOF INSULATION

A. Insulation over Solid Deck:

1. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1 felt facer on both major surfaces.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Atlas Polyiso Roof and Wall Insulation
2) Carlisle Syntec Systems
3) CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
4) Elevate; Holcim Building Envelope
5) GAF
6) Hunter Panels; a Carlisle company
7) IKO Industries Inc.
8) Insulfoam; a Carlisle Company
9) Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
10) Kingspan Insulation LLC
11) Polyglass U.S.A., Inc.
12) Rmax, A Business Unit of Sika Corporation
13) Atlas Polyiso Roof and Wall Insulation
14) Carlisle Syntec Systems
15) CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
16) Elevate; Holcim Building Envelope
17) GAF

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

18) Hunter Panels; a Carlisle company
19) IKO Industries Inc.
20) Insulfoam; a Carlisle Company
21) Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
22) Kingspan Insulation LLC
23) Polyglass U.S.A., Inc.
24) Rmax, A Business Unit of Sika Corporation

B. Insulation over Open Framing:

1. Mineral-Fiber-Blanket Insulation: ASTM C665, type indicated below; consisting of fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.

a. Nonreflective Faced: Type II (blankets with nonreflective membrane covering), Category 1 (membrane is a vapor retarder), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less).
b. Reflective Faced: Type III (blankets with reflective membrane covering), Category 1 (membrane is a vapor retarder), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less).
c. Unfaced: Type I (blankets without membrane covering), passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.

2.7 UNDERLAYMENT

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of **30 mils** thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following:

a. **ATAS International, Inc.**
b. **Carlisle WIP Products; a brand of Carlisle Construction Materials**
c. **GCP Applied Technologies Inc.**
d. **Henry, a Carlisle Company (formerly Henry Company and Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc. brands)**
e. **Owens Corning**
f. **Polyglass U.S.A., Inc.**
g. **Protecto Wrap Company**
h. **SDP Advanced Polymer Products Inc.**

2. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at **220 deg F**; ASTM D1970/D1970M.
3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at **minus 20 deg F**; ASTM D1970/D1970M.

B. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felts.

C. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum ASTM A653/A653M, **G90** hot-dip galvanized coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, **Class AZ50** coating designation. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.

B. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight metal roof panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, fasteners, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.

1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal roof panels.
2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at roof panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum **1-inch-** thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal roof panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal roof panels.

D. Roof Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.

E. Roof Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with metal roof panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch** wide and **1/8 inch** thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal roof panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal roof panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.9 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate and finish metal roof panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. On-site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal roof panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate in accordance with equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

shown.

C. Provide roof panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

D. Fabricate metal roof panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.

1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
3. Seams for other than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with manufacturer's recommendations.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not permitted on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal roof panel manufacturer.

a. Size: As recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.10 FINISHES

A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal roof panel supports, and other conditions

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

affecting performance of the Work.

1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.

    a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal roof panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal roof panels before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages in accordance with ASTM C754 and metal roof panel manufacturer's written installation instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

A. Install vapor retarder in a single layer over roof area in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 and 6 inches**, respectively.

1. Extend vertically up parapet walls and projections to a minimum height equal to height of insulation and cover board.
2. Continuously seal side and end laps with adhesive.

B. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into roofing system.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF INSULATION

A. General: Install insulation concurrently with metal roof panel installation, in thickness indicated to cover entire surface, in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

1. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder toward warm side of construction unless otherwise indicated. Do not obstruct ventilation spaces except for firestopping.
2. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder and seal each continuous area of insulation to the surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.

B. Blanket Roof Insulation: Comply with the following installation method:

1. Over-Framing Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder over and perpendicular

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

to top flange of secondary framing. Hold in place by metal roof panels fastened to secondary framing.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARD

A. Install cover board over insulation in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of **6 inches** in each direction.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than **6 inches** staggered **24 inches** between courses. Overlap side edges not less than **3-1/2 inches**. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

1. Apply over the entire roof surface.

B. Slip Sheet: Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.

C. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3.7 INSTALLATION OF STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

A. Install metal roof panels in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and approved Shop Drawings in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.

1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal roof panels.
2. Flash and seal metal roof panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal roof panels are installed.
3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
5. Install flashing and trim as metal roof panel work proceeds.
6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
7. Align bottoms of metal roof panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal roof panel manufacturer.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

C. Concealed Clip, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

D. Clipless, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with screw fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.

E. Roof Panel Joints: Fasten panel joints to substrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved, motorized seamer tool so clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.
2. Watertight Installation:

a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal roof panels, using sealant or tape as recommended in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
c. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum **6-inch** end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.

G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements and manufacturer's written installation instructions. Provide concealed fasteners where possible and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of **10 ft.** with no joints allowed within **24 inches** of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch** deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

H. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than **36 inches** o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.

I. Downspouts: Rainchains per details. Anchor below grade.

J. Roof Curbs: Install curbs at locations indicated on Drawings. Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.

K. Pipe and Conduit Penetrations: Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.8 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panels within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 ft.** on slope and location lines as indicated and within **1/8-inch** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.

B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal roof panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal roof panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

B. Replace metal roof panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113.16

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 074646 - FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes fiber-cement siding mounted on furring strips with reveal.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For fiber-cement siding and trim profiles.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 25 years from date of Final Acceptance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

A. General: ASTM C 1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E 136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84. **Basis of Design: NichiPanel.**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. CertainTeed Corporation.

b. GAF.
c. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.
d. MaxiTile, Inc.
e. Nichiha Fiber Cement.
f. Norandex Building Materials Distribution, Inc.

B. Labeling: Provide fiber-cement siding that is tested and labeled according to ASTM C 1186 by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 5/16 inch (8 mm).

D. Reveal: ¼ inch.

E. Panel Size: 48 inches wide and 144 inches tall.

F. Panel Texture: Smooth texture.

G. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.

B. Flashing: Provide aluminum flashing complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.

1. Finish for Aluminum Flashing: Factory-prime coating.

C. Fasteners:

1. Corrosion resistant fasteners, such as hot-dipped galvanized nails and stainless steel screws appropriate to local building codes and practices must be used. Use Stainless Steel fasteners in high humidity and high-moisture regions. Do not use aluminum fasteners, staples, clipped head nails or fasteners that are not rated or designed for intended use. Refer to manufacturer’s instructions for appropriate fasteners for construction method used.

2. Fasteners must penetrate at least 1 inch into wood stud and ½ inch into metal studs.

3. Fastener head must be flush to the board surface.

4. Horizontal Joints: Non-corrosive Z-flashing shall be used. Do not fill the gap between the bottom of the panel and the flashing with sealant.

D. Trim:

Basis of Design: Tamlyn Xtreme Trim.

Profiles as follows: TM (vertical T mold), BRH ((horizontal bead reveal (drip edge))

PROTECTION

A. Protect installed composite trim to ensure that, except for normal weathering, trim will be without damage or deterioration at time of Final Acceptance.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.

1. Install fasteners no more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.

B. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.

B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 074646

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Custom flashing and trim fabrications, made from the following:

1. Sheet metal materials.
2. Underlayment.
3. Miscellaneous materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 074113.16 " Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels " for materials and installation of sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.
3. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings, roof-edge specialties, roof-edge drainage systems, reglets, and counterflashings.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
3. Identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

expansion and contraction from fixed points.
8. Details of roof-penetration flashing.
9. Details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
10. Details of special conditions.
11. Details of connections to adjoining work.
12. Formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than **1-1/2 inches per 12 inches**.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, **12 inches** long by actual width.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.

E. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed finish for sheet metal and other metal accessories.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Manufacturers' standard size. Include finished seam with required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Anodized Aluminum Samples: Samples to show full range to be expected for each color required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested.

B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Research Reports: For copings and roof edge flashing, from an agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction showing compliance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.

D. Qualification Statements: For fabricator.

E. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Entity that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

B. For roof edge flashings and copings that are ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested , shop is to be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.7 MOCKUPS

A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical roof eave, including built-in gutter fascia, approximately 2 feet long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.

B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, are to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim are not to rattle, leak, or loosen, and are to remain watertight.

B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install roof edge flashings and copings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:

1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.

D. FM Approvals Listing: Manufacture and install roof edge flashings and copings that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4471 as part of a roofing system and that are listed in FM Approvals' "Approval Guide" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1A-130. Identify materials with name of fabricator and design approved by FM Approvals.

E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A653/A653M, **G90** coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A792/A792M, **Class AZ50** coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.

1. Nominal Thickness: 0.028 inch.
2. Surface: Smooth, flat.
3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:

a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions .
b. Metallic Fluoropolymer: Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions .

4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
5. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of **0.5 mil**.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of **30 mils** thick, specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at **240 deg F**; ASTM D1970/D1970M.
2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at **minus 20 deg F** or lower; ASTM D1970/D1970M.
3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. ATAS International, Inc.
    b. Carlisle WIP Products; a brand of Carlisle Construction Materials
    c. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
    d. Henry, a Carlisle Company (formerly Henry Company and Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc. brands)
    e. Owens Corning
    f. Polyglass U.S.A., Inc.
    g. Protecto Wrap Company
    h. SDP Advanced Polymer Products Inc.

B. Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.

C. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, **3 lb/100 sq. ft.** minimum, of type required for application.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Provide materials and types of fasteners , protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal unless otherwise indicated.

B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal .

1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.

2. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M.

C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch** wide and **1/8 inch** thick.

D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.

G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 ft.** on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within **1/8-inch** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.

C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch** deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.

E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.

F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

G. Seams:

1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.

H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Hanging Gutters:

1. Fabricate to cross section required, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required.
2. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch** long sections.
3. Furnish flat-stock gutter brackets and flat-stock gutter spacers and straps fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by cited sheet metal standard, but with thickness not less than twice the gutter thickness.
4. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, gutter bead reinforcing bars, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
5. Gutter Profile:Per Drawings Style C in accordance with cited sheet metal standard.
6. Expansion Joints: Lap type.
7. Accessories: Wire-ball downspout strainer Valley baffles.
8. Gutters with Girth up to 15 Inches (380 mm): Fabricate from the following materials:

a. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Downspouts: Fabricate round downspouts to dimensions indicated on Drawings, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers from .

1. Hanger Style: Per Drawings.

2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS
2.8 STEEP-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Apron, Step, Cricket, and Backer Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.022 inch** thick.

B. Drip Edges: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

C. Eave, Rake, Ridge, and Hip Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.

D. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

E. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.

2.9 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum **96-inch-** long, but not exceeding **12 ft.** long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend **6 inches** beyond each side of wall openings; and form with **2-inch-** high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch thick.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with **2-inch-** high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

A. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.

1. Lap horizontal joints not less than **4 inches**.
2. Lap end joints not less than **12 inches**.

B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:

1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.
2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.
4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than **6 inches** staggered **24 inches** between courses.
5. Overlap side edges not less than **3-1/2 inches**. Roll laps and edges with roller.
6. Roll laps and edges with roller.
7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

C. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
2. Lap joints not less than **2 inches**.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

D. Install slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
2. Lapp joints not less than **4 inches**.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM, GENERAL

A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

1. Install fasteners , protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
5. Space individual cleats not more than **12 inches** apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
6. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
7. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
8. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.

1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.

C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 ft. with no joints within **24 inches** of corner or intersection.
2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch** deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.

F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.

1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.

a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than **1 inch** into sealant.
b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between **40 and 70 deg F**, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.

1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below **40 deg F**.

2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.

B. Hanging Gutters:

1. Join sections with joints sealed with sealant.
2. Provide for thermal expansion.
3. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchor them in position.
4. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant.
5. Slope to downspouts.
6. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
7. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches apart.
8. Anchor gutter with gutter brackets spaced not more than 36 inches apart to roof deck unless otherwise indicated, and loosely lock to front gutter bead.
9. Anchor gutter with spikes and ferrules spaced not more than 24 inches apart.
10. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated on Drawings, but not exceeding, 50 ft. apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
11. Install continuous gutter screens on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, hinged to swing open for cleaning gutters.

C. Downspouts:

1. Join sections with **1-1/2-inch** telescoping joints.
2. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls.
3. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately **60 inches** o.c.
4. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF SLOPED ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements , sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard.

1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.

B. Roof Edge Flashing:

1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.

C. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.

1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
2. Extend counterflashing **4 inches** over base flashing.
3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of **4 inches**.
4. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.

D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with butyl sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Equipment Support Flashing:

1. Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment.
2. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.8 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 ft.** on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within **1/8-inch** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.

B. Clean off excess sealants.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.

C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.

D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 076200

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 077253 - SNOW GUARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rail-type, flat-mounted snow guards.
2. Rail-type, seam-mounted snow guards.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

1. Rail-type, flat-mounted snow guards.
2. Rail-type, seam-mounted snow guards.

B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans showing layouts and attachment details of snow guards.

1. Include details of rail-type snow guards.

C. Samples:

1. Rail-Type Snow Guards: Bracket, **12-inch-** long rail, and installation hardware.

a. For units with factory-applied finishes, submit manufacturer's standard color selections.

D. Delegated Design Submittals: For snow guards, include analysis reports signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Include calculation of number and location of snow guards.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated design engineering services of the kind indicated, including documentation that the engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located.

B. Product Test Reports: For each type of snow guard, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating load at failure of attachment to roof system identical to roof system used on this Project.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit adhesive-mounted snow guards to be installed, and adhesive cured, according to adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design snow guards, including attachment to roofing material and roof deck, as applicable for attachment method, based on the following:

1. Roof snow load.
2. Snow drifting
3. Roof slope.
4. Roof type.
5. Roof dimensions.
6. Roofing substrate type and thickness.
7. Snow guard type.
8. Snow guard fastening method and strength.
9. Snow guard spacing.
10. Coefficient of Friction Between Snow and Roof Surface: 0.
11. Factor of Safety: 2.

B. Performance Requirements: Provide snow guards that withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

C. Structural Performance: Snow guards to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Snow Loads: Per jurisdiction.

2.2 RAIL-TYPE SNOW GUARDS

A. Rail-Type, Seam-Mounted Snow Guards:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Alpine SnowGuards
b. IceBlox Inc.
c. Rocky Mountain Snow Guards, Inc.
d. S-5! Metal Roof Innovations, Ltd.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2. Description: Snow guard rails fabricated from metal pipes, bars, or extrusions, anchored to brackets and equipped with one rail.
3. Brackets and Baseplate: ASTM B209 aluminum; mill finished ASTM B209 aluminum; clear anodized.
4. Bars: ASTM B221 aluminum; mill finish ASTM B221 aluminum, clear anodized.

    a. Profile: Round **with integral track to accept color-matching inserts of material and finish used for metal roof**.

5. Seam Clamps: **ASTM B221** aluminum extrusion or ASTM B85/B85M aluminum casting with stainless steel set screws incorporating round nonpenetrating point; designed for use with applicable roofing system to which clamp is attached.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, snow guard attachment, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean and prepare substrates for bonding snow guards.

B. Prime substrates according to snow guard manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install snow guards according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Space rows as indicated on Drawings.
2. Space rows as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Attachment for Standing-Seam Metal Roofing:

1. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate metal roofing or fastening methods that void metal roofing finish warranty.
2. Rail-Type, Seam-Mounted Snow Guards:

    a. Install brackets to vertical ribs in straight rows.
    b. Secure with stainless steel set screws, incorporating round nonpenetrating point, on same side of standing seam.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

c. Torque set screw in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
d. Install cross members to brackets.

C. Attachment for Exposed Fastened Metal Roofing:

1. Do not use fasteners that will void metal roofing finish warranty.
2. Rail-Type, Flat-Mounted Snow Guards:

a. Install brackets in straight rows.
b. Mechanically fasten to metal roofing, using sealant and mechanical fasteners identical to those used to secure metal roofing to substrate.
c. Install cross members to brackets.

END OF SECTION 077253

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
3. Interior custom hollow-metal doors and frames.
4. Exterior custom hollow-metal doors and frames.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 081119 "Stainless-Steel Doors and Frames" for hollow-metal doors and frames manufactured from stainless steel.
2. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.
3. Section 080671 for Door Hardware Schedule.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings in accordance with NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
3. Interior custom hollow-metal doors and frames.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

4. Exterior custom hollow-metal doors and frames.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:

1. Elevations of each door type.
2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
8. Details of accessories.
9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For hollow-metal doors and frames with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for Verification:

1. Finishes: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than **3 by 5 inches**.
2. Fabrication: Prepare Samples approximately 12 by 12 inches to demonstrate compliance with requirements for quality of materials and construction:

a. Doors: Show vertical-edge, top, and bottom construction; core construction; and hinge and other applied hardware reinforcement. Include separate section showing glazing if applicable.
b. Frames: Show profile, corner joint, floor and wall anchors, and silencers. Include separate section showing fixed hollow-metal panels and glazing if applicable.

F. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
3. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Product Test Reports: For each type of fire-rated hollow-metal door and frame assembly for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.

C. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire-rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:

1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

B. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:

1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum **4-inch-** high wood blocking. Provide minimum **1/4-inch** space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Curries, AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY Group
2. Karpen Steel Custom Doors & Frames
3. Republic Doors and Frames; a Allegion brand

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
2. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
3. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than **450 deg F** above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.

B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9.

C. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 3 for basic protection.

D. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.38 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. when tested in accordance with ASTM C1363 or ASTM E1423.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Standard-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 1; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level C. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.

1. Frames:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.042 inch**.
b. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
c. Construction: Slip-on drywall.

2. Exposed Finish: Prime.

C. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 2; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level B. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.

1. Doors:

a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
b. Thickness: **1-3/4 inches**.
c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.042 inch**.
d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
f. Core: Polyisocyanurate.
g. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel stiffener laminated mineral board core for fire-rated [**and temperature-rise-rated**] doors.

2. Frames:

a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch**.
b. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
c. Construction: Full profile welded.

3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.4 BORROWED LITES

A. Fabricate of metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch**.

B. Construction: Knocked down.

C. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as metal as frames.

D. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 HOLLOW-METAL PANELS

A. Provide hollow-metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as adjacent door assemblies.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.6 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:

1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each **24 inches** of frame height above **7 feet**.
3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum **3/8-inch-** diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.

B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.

C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than **2-inch** height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.

D. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), **04Z** coating designation; mill phosphatized.

1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

2.7 MATERIALS

A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

B. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.

C. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.

D. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.

F. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

G. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.

H. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.8 FABRICATION

A. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum **3/4 inch** beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.

B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.

1. Sidelite and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding , or by rigid mechanical anchors.
2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.

    a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule on Drawings, and templates.

1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.

D. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with mitered hairline joints.

1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with square stops unless otherwise indicated.
2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than **9 inches** o.c. and not more than **2 inches** o.c. from each corner.

2.9 STEEL FINISHES

A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

B. Factory Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.3.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.10 LOUVERS

A. Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, which comply with SDI 111, with blades or baffles formed of **0.020-inch-** thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into **0.032-inch-** thick steel frame.

1. Sightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted-V or inverted-Y blades.
2. Lightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with baffles to prevent light from passing from one side to the other.
3. Fire-Rated Automatic Louvers: Louvers constructed with movable blades closed by actuating fusible link, and listed and labeled for use in fire-rated door assemblies of type and fire-resistance rating indicated by same qualified testing and inspecting agency that established fire-resistance rating of door assembly.

B. Form corners of moldings with hairline joints. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.

B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.

1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.

2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.

a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.

4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:

a. Squareness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
b. Alignment: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
c. Twist: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
d. Plumbness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs at floor.

C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.

1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances in accordance with NFPA 80.
3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors in accordance with NFPA 105.

D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.

B. Inspections:

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 REPAIR

A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 081119 - STAINLESS-STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Stainless steel doors and frames.
2. Stainless steel panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for stainless steel doors.
2. Section 080671 for Door Hardware Schedule.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate anchorage installation for stainless steel frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Stainless steel doors and frames.
2. Stainless steel panels.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:

1. Elevations of each door type.
2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
8. Details of accessories.
9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

D. Samples:

1. Finishes: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than **3 by 5 inches**.
2. Doors: Show vertical-edge, top, and bottom construction; core construction; glazing; and hinge and other applied hardware reinforcement.
3. Frames: Show profile, corner joint, floor and wall anchors, and silencers. Include separate section showing fixed hollow-metal panels and glazing if applicable.

E. Product Schedule: For stainless steel doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
3. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

B. Product Test Reports: For each type of fire-rated stainless steel door and frame assembly for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.

C. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies must meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

following:

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver stainless steel doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store stainless steel doors and frames under cover at Project site with head up. Place units on minimum **4-inch-** high wood blocking.

D. Provide minimum **1/4-inch** space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.

B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for some and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

C. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9.

2.2 STAINLESS STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AMBICO Limited
2. Ceco Door; AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
3. Curries, AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY Group
4. Custom Metal Products
5. DCI Hollow Metal on Demand
6. DE LA FONTAINE

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

7. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; ASSA ABLOY Group
8. Hollow Metal Xpress
9. MegaMet Industries
10. Mesker Door; Mesker Openings Group
11. Next Door Company
12. Security Metal Products; a brand of ASSA ABLOY
13. Stainless Doors, Inc.
14. Steelcraft; Allegion plc
15. Titan Metal Products

B. Construct stainless steel door and frame assemblies to comply with NAAMM-HMMA 866 for the application indicated, including materials, fabrication methods, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified. Comply with SDI ANSI/A250.4, for Physical Performance Level A.

C. Doors and Frames for Aesthetic Environments: At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.

1. Stainless Steel Frames:

a. Materials: Type 304 stainless steel sheet.
b. Door Frames for Openings 48 Inches (1219 mm) Wide or Less: Fabricate from stainless steel sheet, minimum thickness 0.062 inch.
c. Door Frames for Openings More Than 48 Inches (1219 mm) Wide: Fabricate from stainless steel sheet, minimum thickness 0.078 inch.
d. Construction: Slip on.

2. Hardware Reinforcement: Uncoated steel sheet.
3. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4, Directional Satin.

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, austenitic stainless steel, Type 304.

B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel, Type B.

C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, commercial steel, Type B; with minimum **G60** or **A60** metallic coating.

D. Foam-Plastic Insulation: Manufacturer's standard polystyrene board insulation with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, in accordance with ASTM E84. Enclose insulation completely within door.

E. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation made of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers.

F. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners:

1. Stainless steel components complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 for bolts and nuts.
2. Hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.4 STAINLESS STEEL PANELS

A. Stainless Steel Panels: Same construction, materials, and finish as specified for adjoining stainless steel doors.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Provide anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.

B. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum **3/8-inch-** diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.

C. Number and Spacing:

1. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than **18 inches** from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than **32 inches** o.c.
2. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than **18 inches** from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than **32 inches** o.c. Two anchors per head for frames more than **42 inches** wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
3. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each jamb.
4. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than **6 inches** from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than **26 inches** o.c.

D. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.

1. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than **2-inch** height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.

E. Material:

1. Stainless steel sheet. Same type as door face.
2. Steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Stainless Steel Door Fabrication: Provide doors rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal.

1. Tolerances: Fabricate doors to tolerances indicated in NAAMM-HMMA 866.
2. Stops and Moldings: Factory cut openings in doors. Provide minimum **0.038-inch-** thick, stainless steel stops and moldings around glazed lites. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.

a. Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of door.
b. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Stainless Steel Frame Fabrication: Provide stainless steel frames rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal.

1. Tolerances: Fabricate frames to tolerances indicated in NAAMM-HMMA 866.
2. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
3. Borrowed-Lite Frames: Fabricate from 0.062-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet.
4. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricate from stainless steel sheet of same thickness as adjacent door frame.
5. Mullions, Rails, and Transom Bars: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding according to joint designs in NAAMM-HMMA 820.
6. Provide countersunk, flat-, or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
7. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped and gasketed frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Provide plastic plugs to keep holes clear during construction.

    a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

8. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings formed integrally with stainless steel frames around glazed lites and, minimum **5/8 inch** high unless otherwise indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.

    a. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites and Panels: **0.038-inch-** thick, stainless steel.
    b. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of door or frame.
    c. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings such that each lite is capable of being removed independently.
    d. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing or panel and type of installation.
    e. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than **9 inches** o.c. and not more than **2 inches** o.c. from each corner.

9. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than **9 inches** o.c. and not more than **2 inches** o.c. from each corner.
10. Grouted Frames:

    a. Plaster Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises and mounting holes in frames to be grouted.
    b. Head Reinforcement: For frames more than **48 inches** wide, provide continuous head reinforcement for full width of opening, welded to back of frame at head.

C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare stainless steel doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping, in accordance with the Door Hardware Schedule on Drawings, and templates.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Reinforce doors to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
2. Comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.

2.7 FINISHES

A. Stainless Steel Finishes: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

B. Grain Direction: For finishes exhibiting grain, run grain vertically on door faces and frame jambs.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

A. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

B. Grout: Comply with ASTM C476, with a slump of not more than **4 inches** as measured in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M.

C. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation made of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

B. Prior to installation and with installation spreaders in place, adjust and securely brace stainless steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:

1. Squareness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb, and perpendicular to frame head.
2. Alignment: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
3. Twist: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
4. Plumbness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.

C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install stainless steel doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Stainless Steel Frames:

1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, without damage to completed Work.

a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
b. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.

2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.

a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.

4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
5. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors.
6. Installation Tolerances: Adjust stainless steel frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:

a. Squareness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb, and perpendicular to frame head.
b. Alignment: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
c. Twist: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
d. Plumbness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs at floor.

C. Stainless Steel Doors: Fit and adjust stainless steel doors accurately in frames within clearances specified below:

1. Non-Fire-Rated Doors: Comply with NAAMM-HMMA 841 and NAAMM-HMMA 866.
2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances in accordance with NFPA 80.
3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors in accordance with NFPA 105.

D. Glazing: Install glazing in sidelites, transoms, and borrowed lites to comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Inspections:

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.

C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Clean grout and other bonding material off stainless steel doors and frames immediately after installation.

B. Stainless Steel Touchup: Immediately after erection, smooth any scratched or damaged areas of stainless steel; polish to match undamaged finish.

END OF SECTION 081119

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-core seven-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors and transom panels for transparent finish.
2. Solid-core flush wood doors and transom panels with plastic-laminate-faces.
3. Light frames and louvers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for field finishing doors.
2. Section 064101 "Architectural Wood Casework" for matching door finishes to casework.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Solid-core five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors and transom panels for transparent finish.
2. Solid-core five-ply flush wood doors and transom panels for opaque finish.
3. Solid-core seven-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors and transom panels for transparent finish.
4. Solid-core seven-ply flush wood doors and transom panels for opaque finish.
5. Solid-core flush wood doors and transom panels with plastic-laminate-faces.
6. Hollow-core flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
7. Hollow-core flush wood doors for opaque finish.
8. Hollow-core flush wood doors with plastic-laminate faces.
9. Fire-rated wood door frames.
10. Light frames and louvers.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product, including the following:

1. Door core materials and construction.
2. Door edge construction
3. Door face type and characteristics.
4. Door louvers.
5. Door trim for openings.
6. Door frame construction.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

7. Factory-machining criteria.
8. Factory- finishing specifications.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

1. Door schedule indicating door and frame location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
7. Clearances and undercuts.
8. Requirements for veneer matching.
9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors and factory-finished door frames.

E. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately **8 by 10 inches**, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
2. Plastic laminate, **6 inches** square, for each color, texture, and pattern selected.
3. Polymer edging, in manufacturer's standard colors.
4. Corner sections of doors, approximately **8 by 10 inches**, with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.
5. Louver blade and frame sections, **6 inches** long, for each material and finish specified.
6. Frames for light openings, **6 inches** long, for each material, type, and finish required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
3. Submit copy of DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Special warranties.

B. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies complies with qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:

B. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies complies with qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Package doors individually in cardboard cartons, and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting.

C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of construction period.
2. Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between **60 and 90 deg F** and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during remainder of construction period.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors and frames that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Delamination of veneer.
b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than **1/4 inch** in a **42-by-84-inch** section.
c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding **0.01 inch in a 3-inch**

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

span.

2. Warranty also includes installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors and frames.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Exterior Doors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain flush wood doors indicated to be blueprint matched with paneling from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Wood Door and Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings [**and temperature-rise limits**] indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C or NFPA 252.

2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS AND FRAMES, GENERAL

A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with

1. Provide labels and from AWI certification program indicating that doors and frames comply with requirements of grades specified.

    a. Contractor registers the Work under this Section with the AWI Quality Certification Program at www.awiqcp.org or by calling 855-345-0991.

2. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with the Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.
3. Hardwood Plywood: 0.05 ppm.
4. Particleboard: 0.09 ppm.
5. MDF More Than **5/16 Inch** Thick: 0.11 ppm.
6. MDF **5/16 Inch** or Less in Thickness: 0.13 ppm.

2.4 SOLID-CORE SEVEN-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS AND TRANSOM PANELS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Doors, Seven-Ply Veneer-Faced:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

the following:

a. ABS- American Building Supply- Doormerica
b. General Veneer Manufacturing Co
c. Haley Brothers, Inc
d. Lambton Doors
e. Vancouver Door Company

2. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Standard Duty.
3. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Quality Grade: Premium.
4. Architectural Woodwork Standards Quality Grade: Premium.
5. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.

a. Species: Match existing.
b. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
f. Room Match:

1) Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridor-door faces do not need to match where they are separated by 10 feet or more.
2) Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.

g. Blueprint Match: Where indicated, provide doors with faces produced from same flitches as adjacent wood paneling and arranged to provide blueprint match with wood paneling. Comply with requirements in Section 064216 "Flush Wood Paneling."

6. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Applied wood-veneer edges of same species as faces and covering edges of faces - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type B.
7. Construction: Seven plies, hot-pressed, bonded or unbonded.

2.5 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads.
3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.

B. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

C. Metal Louvers:

1. Blade Type: Vision-proof, inverted V.
2. Metal and Finish:

a. Match door frame.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.

1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.

B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.

1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
5. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.

C. Transom and Side Panels:

1. Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces, and finish as specified for associated doors.
2. Finish bottom edges of transoms and top edges of rabbeted doors same as door stiles.
3. Provide factory-installed spring bolts for concealed attachment into jambs of metal door frames.

D. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.

1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.

1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location,

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
2. Reject doors with defects.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

B. Install doors and frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.

C. Install frames level, plumb, true, and straight.

1. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches**.
2. Anchor frames to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
    a. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
    b. Use fine finishing nails [**or finishing screws**] for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
        1) For factory-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
3. Install fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
4. Install smoke- and draft-control doors in accordance with NFPA 105.

D. Job-Fitted Doors:

1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below.
    a. Do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors.
2. Machine doors for hardware.
3. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
4. Clearances:
    a. Provide **1/8 inch** at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
    b. Provide **1/8 inch** from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    c. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide **1/4 inch** from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
    d. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
5. Bevel non-fire-rated doors **1/8 inch in 2 inches** at lock and hinge edges.
6. Bevel fire-rated doors **1/8 inch in 2 inches** at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

E. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

F. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.

B. Inspections:

1. Provide inspection of installed Work through AWI's Quality Certification Program, certifying that wood doors and frames, including installation, comply with requirements of AWI/AWMCA/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for the specified grade.
2. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
3. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.

C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 083323 - OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service doors.
2. Insulated service doors.
3. Fire-rated service doors.
4. Fire-rated, insulated service doors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports, door-opening framing, corner guards, and bollards.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of overhead coiling door and accessory.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profiles for slats, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
3. Include description of automatic-closing device and testing and resetting instructions.

B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies, and indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
4. For exterior components, include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for excluding and draining moisture to the exterior.
5. Show locations of controls, locking devices , detectors or replaceable fusible links, and other accessories.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's finish charts showing full range of colors and textures available for units with factory-applied finishes.

1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following components, in

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

manufacturer's standard sizes:

1. Curtain slats .
2. Bottom bar with sensor edge.
3. Guides.
4. Brackets.
5. Hood.
6. Locking device(s).
7. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing and inspecting agency.

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
2. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

B. Oversize Construction Certification: For door assemblies required to be fire-rated and that exceed size limitations of labeled assemblies.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Special warranty.

B. Maintenance Data: For overhead coiling doors to include in maintenance manuals.

C. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.

B. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:

1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain overhead coiling doors from single source from single manufacturer.

1. Obtain operators and controls from overhead coiling-door manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80; listed and labeled by qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at as close to neutral pressure as possible according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.

B. Sound-Control Doors: Assemblies tested in a laboratory for sound-transmission-loss performance according to ASTM E90, calculated according to ASTM E413, and rated for not less than the STC value indicated.

C. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".

D. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Capable of withstanding the following design wind loads:

1. Design Wind Load: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Testing: According to ASTM E330/E330M .
3. Deflection Limits: Design overhead coiling doors to withstand design wind load without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
4. Operability under Wind Load: Design overhead coiling doors to remain operable under design wind load, acting inward and outward.

E. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Provide impact-protective overhead coiling doors that pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests according to ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 3 for basic protection.

F. Seismic Performance: Overhead coiling doors are to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.3 DOOR ASSEMBLY

A. Overhead Coiling Door: Insulated service overhead coiling door formed with curtain of interlocking metal slats.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ACME Rolling Doors
b. Advanced Door Technologies
c. Alpine Overhead Doors, Inc
d. Alumatec Pacific Products
e. Amarr Company
f. ASTA America; Janus International Group
g. C.H.I. Overhead Doors, Inc.
h. City Gates USA
i. Clopay Building Products
j. Cookson; a CornellCookson company
k. Cornell; a CornellCookson company
l. Dynamic Closures Corporation
m. Hormann High Performance Doors
n. Lawrence Roll-Up Doors, Inc.
o. McKeon Door Company
p. Metro Door LLC
q. Overhead Door Corporation
r. Raynor Garage Doors
s. Southwestern Rolling Steel Door Co
t. Wayne Dalton; a division of Overhead Door Corporation
u. Windsor Door

B. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 50,000 cycles. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.

1. Include tamperproof cycle counter.

C. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate of 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at **15 and 25 mph** when tested according to ASTM E283.

D. STC Rating: 26.

E. Insulated Door Curtain R-Value: 4.5 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu.

F. Insulated Door Assembly U-Factor: 0.90 Btu/deg F x h x sq. ft..

G. Door Curtain Material: Anodized Aluminum.

H. Door Curtain Slats: Flat profile slats of 3-1/4-inch center-to-center height.

1. Insulated-Slat Interior Facing: Metal.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2. Gasket Seal. Manufacturer's standard continuous gaskets between slats.

I. Bottom Bar: Two angles, each not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inch thick; fabricated from hot-dip galvanized steel and finished to match door.

J. Curtain Jamb Guides: Galvanized steel with exposed finish matching curtain slats.

K. Hood: Match curtain material and finish.

1. Shape: Round.
2. Mounting: Face of wall.

L. Locking Devices: Equip door with slide bolt for padlock.

1. Locking Device Assembly: Single-jamb side locking bars, operable from inside with thumbturn.

M. Manual Door Operator: Manufacturer's standard crank operator.

1. Provide operator with through-wall shaft operation.
2. Provide operator with manufacturer's standard removable operating arm.

N. Curtain Accessories: Equip door with weatherseals.

O. Door Finish:

1. Aluminum Finish: Anodized color as selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coated Finish: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match finish of exterior curtain-slat face.

2.4 DOOR CURTAIN MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

A. Door Curtains: Fabricate overhead coiling-door curtain of interlocking metal slats, designed to withstand wind loading indicated, in a continuous length for width of door without splices. Unless otherwise indicated, provide slats of thickness and mechanical properties recommended by door manufacturer for performance, size, and type of door indicated, and as follows:

1. Steel Door Curtain Slats: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled structural-steel sheet; complying with ASTM A653/A653M, with **G90** zinc coating; nominal sheet thickness (coated) of **0.028 inch**; and as required.
2. Stainless Steel Door Curtain Slats: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304; sheet thickness of **0.025 inch**; and as required.
3. Aluminum Door Curtain Slats: **ASTM B209** sheet or **ASTM B221** extrusions, alloy and temper standard with manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated; thickness of **0.050 inch**; and as required.
4. Insulation: Fill slats for insulated doors with manufacturer's standard thermal insulation complying with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E84 or UL 723. Enclose insulation completely within

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

slat faces.

5. Metal Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match metal of exterior curtain-slat face, with minimum aluminum thickness of 0.032 inch.

B. Curtain Jamb Guides: Manufacturer's standard angles or channels and angles of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated, with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, to allow curtain to operate smoothly, and to withstand loading. Slot bolt holes for guide adjustment. Provide removable stops on guides to prevent overtravel of curtain , and a continuous bar for holding windlocks.

2.5 HOODS

A. General: Form sheet metal hood to entirely enclose coiled curtain and operating mechanism at opening head. Contour to fit end brackets to which hood is attached. Roll and reinforce top and bottom edges for stiffness. Form closed ends for surface-mounted hoods and fascia for any portion of between-jamb mounting that projects beyond wall face. Equip hood with intermediate support brackets as required to prevent sagging.

1. Galvanized Steel: Nominal **0.028-inch-** thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet with **G90** zinc coating, complying with ASTM A653/A653M.
2. Stainless Steel: **0.025-inch-** thick, stainless steel sheet, Type 304, complying with ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666.
3. Aluminum: **0.040-inch-** thick aluminum sheet complying with **ASTM B209**, of alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

B. Removable Metal Soffit: Formed or extruded from same metal and with same finish as curtain if hood is mounted above ceiling unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 LOCKING DEVICES

A. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on both left and right jamb sides, operable from coil side.

B. Locking Device Assembly: Fabricate with cylinder lock, spring-loaded dead bolt, operating handle, cam plate, and adjustable locking bars to engage through slots in tracks.

1. Lock Cylinders: As specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware" and keyed to building keying system.
2. Keys: Three for each cylinder.

C. Chain Lock Keeper: Suitable for padlock.

2.7 CURTAIN ACCESSORIES

A. Smoke Seals: Equip each fire-rated door with replaceable smoke-seal perimeter gaskets or brushes for smoke and draft control as required for door listing and labeling by a qualified testing agency.

B. Weatherseals for Exterior Doors: Equip each exterior door with weather-stripping gaskets fitted

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

to entire exterior perimeter of door for a weather-resistant installation unless otherwise indicated.

1. At door head, use **1/8-inch-** thick, replaceable, continuous-sheet baffle secured to inside of hood or field-installed on the header.
2. At door jambs, use replaceable, adjustable, continuous, nylon brushes.

C. Astragal for Interior Doors: Equip each door bottom bar with a replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible gasket of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene as a cushion bumper.

D. Push/Pull Handles: Equip each push-up-operated or emergency-operated door with lifting handles on each side of door, finished to match door.

E. Pull-Down Strap: Provide pull-down straps for doors more than **84 inches** high.

F. Pole Hooks: Provide pole hooks and poles for doors more than **84 inches** high.

2.8 COUNTERBALANCE MECHANISM

A. General: Counterbalance doors by means of manufacturer's standard mechanism with an adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to top of curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for rotating members.

B. Counterbalance Barrel: Fabricate spring barrel of manufacturer's standard hot-formed, structural-quality, seamless carbon-steel pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain without distortion of slats and to limit barrel deflection to not more than **0.03 in./ft.** of span under full load.

C. Counterbalance Spring: One or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs. Size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft with cast-steel barrel plugs.

1. Fire-Rated Doors: Equip with auxiliary counterbalance spring and prevent tension release from main counterbalance spring when automatic-closing device operates.

D. Torsion Rod for Counterbalance Shaft: Fabricate of manufacturer's standard cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.

E. Brackets: Manufacturer's standard mounting brackets of either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate.

2.9 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Mill Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

C. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine locations of electrical connections.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install overhead coiling doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.

B. Install overhead coiling doors, hoods, controls, and operators at the mounting locations indicated for each door.

C. Accessibility: Install overhead coiling doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with the accessibility standard.

D. Fire-Rated Doors: Install according to NFPA 80.

E. Smoke-Control Doors: Install according to NFPA 80 and NFPA 105.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Test door release, closing, and alarm operations when activated by smoke detector or building's fire-alarm system. Test manual operation of closed door. Reset door-closing mechanism after successful test.
2. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80,

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

Section 5.2.

C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. After electrical circuitry has been energized, operate doors to confirm proper motor rotation and door performance.
3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.

1. Adjust exterior doors and components to be weather resistant.

B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Adjust seals to provide tight fit around entire perimeter.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead coiling doors.

END OF SECTION 083323

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 014339 "Mockups" for preconstruction laboratory mockup testing.
2. Section 084126 "All-Glass Entrances and Storefronts" for systems without aluminum support framing.
3. Section 081116.13 "Interior Aluminum Doors and Frames" for interior aluminum framing.

1.2 ALLOWANCES

A. See Section 012100 "Allowances" for description of allowances affecting items specified in this Section.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
2. Details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
3. Full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, showing the following:

a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
b. Anchorage.
c. Expansion provisions.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

d. Glazing.
e. Flashing and drainage.

4. Connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
5. Point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the following:

a. Power requirements for each electrically operated door hardware.
b. Location and types of switches, signal device, conduit sizes, and number and size of wires.

6. <**Insert requirements**>.
7. Signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.

D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed finish.

1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.

E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from **12-inch** lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:

1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
2. Anchorage.
3. Expansion provisions.
4. Glazing.
5. Flashing and drainage.

F. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

G. Delegated Design Submittals: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefront systems, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system.

B. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Preconstruction Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Testing Program: Developed specifically for Project.
2. Test Reports: Prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency for each preconstruction test.
3. Record Drawings: As-built drawings of preconstruction laboratory mockups showing changes made during preconstruction laboratory mockup testing.

D. Source Quality-Control Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

E. Field Quality-Control Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

F. Quality-Control Program: Developed specifically for Project, including fabrication and installation, in accordance with recommendations in ASTM C1401. Include periodic quality-control reports.

G. Qualification Statements:

1. For Installer and field testing agency.

H. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

I. Sample Warranties: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

B. Maintenance Data for Structural Sealant: For structural-sealant-glazed storefront. Include ASTM C1401 recommendations for post-installation-phase quality-control program.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in state where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

C. Laboratory Mockup Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E699 for testing indicated .

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E699 for testing indicated and acceptable to Owner and Architect.

E. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies to comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Ch. 7 "Means of Egress," Section "Means of Egress Components," Article "Inspection of Door Openings."
2. Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies to be certified under DHI's certification program as a Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) or a Certified Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (CFDAI).

F. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.

1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

G. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C1401 for design and installation of storefront systems that include structural glazing.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures <**Insert type of failure**>.
b. Faulty operation of components.
c. Deterioration of metals , metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

    a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2244.
    b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4214.
    c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing spandrel panels venting windows and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems to withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
2. Failure also includes the following:

    a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    b. Glass breakage.
    c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    e. Failure of operating units.

C. Structural Loads:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

D. Deflection of Framing Members Supporting Glass: At design wind load, as follows:

1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of length of span of the framing member for lengths of up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1/240 of length of span of the framing member plus 1/4 inch for lengths greater than 13 feet 6 inches.
2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch.

a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum **1/16-inch** clearance between framing members and operable units.

E. Structural: Test in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M as follows:

1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors, do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors and anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.

F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test in accordance with ASTM E331 as follows:

1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas, including entrance doors, when tested in accordance with a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 15 lbf/sq. ft..

G. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Test in accordance with AAMA 501.1 as follows:

1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested at dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 15 lbf/sq. ft..
2. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating assemblies or water appearing on assemblies' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters, or water that is drained to exterior.

H. Seismic Performance: Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Seismic Drift Causing Glass Fallout: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested in accordance with AAMA 501.6 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.

I. Noise Reduction: Test in accordance with ASTM E90, with ratings determined by ASTM E1332, as follows.

1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 26.

J. Blast Resistance:

1. Hazard Rating: In accordance with ASTM F2912, tested in accordance with ASTM F1642/F1642M.

K. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone [**1**][**2**][**3**][**4**] for [**basic**][**enhanced**] protection.

1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet of grade.

L. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: **120 deg F**, ambient; **180 deg F**, material surfaces.
2. Thermal Cycling: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested in accordance with AAMA 501.5.

a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F.
b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F.
c. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.

M. Structural-Sealant Joints:

1. Designed to carry gravity loads of glazing.

N. Structural Sealant: ASTM C1184. Capable of withstanding tensile and shear stresses imposed by structural-sealant-glazed, aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems without failing adhesively or cohesively. When tested for preconstruction adhesion and compatibility, cohesive failure of sealant to occur before adhesive failure.

1. Adhesive failure occurs when sealant pulls away from substrate cleanly, leaving no sealant material behind.
2. Cohesive failure occurs when sealant breaks or tears within itself but does not separate from each substrate, because sealant-to-substrate bond strength exceeds sealant's internal strength.

2.3 ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE AND STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Kawneer Company, Inc.; Arconic Corporation
2. U.S. Aluminum; C.R. Laurence Co., Inc.; CRH Americas, Inc.
3. YKK AP America Inc.

B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Exterior Framing Construction: Thermally broken.
2. Interior Vestibule Framing Construction: Nonthermal.
3. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
4. Glazing Plane: Front.
5. Finish: Clear anodic finish.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

6. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
7. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
8. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.

C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.

D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

E. Venting Windows:

1. As specified in Section 085113 "Aluminum Windows."
2. Manufacturer's standard units, complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, with self-flashing mounting fins, and as follows:

a. Window Type: As indicated on Drawings.
b. Minimum Performance Class: AW.
c. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard; of aluminum, stainless steel, die-cast steel, malleable iron, or bronze; including the following:

1) Cam handle locking system.
2) Multi-point locking system.
3) Pole-operated, cam handle locking system, where rail is more than **72 inches** above floor.
4) Rotary operator.
5) Steel or bronze operating arms.
6) Limit Devices: Concealed friction adjustor and adjustable stay bar limit devices designed to restrict sash opening.

a) Limit clear opening to 4 inches for ventilation; with custodial key release.

d. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.
e. Insect Screens: Provide removable insect screen on each operable exterior sash, with screen frame finished to match window unit, complying with SMA 1004 or SMA 1201, and as follows:

1) Fabric: Manufacturer's standard aluminum wire fabric or glass-fiber mesh fabric.

f. Glazing: Same as adjacent aluminum-framed entrances and storefront glazing.
g. Finish: Match adjacent aluminum-framed entrances and storefront finish.

F. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing or automatic operation.

1. Door Construction: 2- to 2-1/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.

a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.

2. Door Design: Medium stile; 3-1/2-inch nominal width Wide stile; 5-inch nominal width.
3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.

a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

4. Finish: Anodized Aluminum.

2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

B. General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door, to comply with requirements in this Section.

1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and named manufacturers' products.
2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
3. Opening-Force Requirements:

a. Egress Doors: Not more than **15 lbf** to release the latch and not more than **30 lbf** to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open the door to its minimum required width.
b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than **5 lbf** to fully open door.

C. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, quantity, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:

1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.
2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.

D. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.

1. Offset-Pivot Hinges: Provide top, bottom, and intermediate offset pivots at each door leaf.

E. Butt Hinges: BHMA A156.1, Grade 1, radius corner.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Nonremovable Pins: Provide setscrew in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while entrance door is closed.
2. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel, with stainless steel pin.
3. Quantities:

    a. For doors up to 87 inches high, provide three hinges per leaf.
    b. For doors more than 87 and up to 120 inches high, provide four hinges per leaf.

F. Continuous-Gear Hinges: BHMA A156.26.

G. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.

H. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.

I. Automatic and Self-Latching Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.

J. Panic Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing in accordance with UL 305.

K. Cylinders:

1. As specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

L. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.

M. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.

N. Removable Mullions: BHMA A156.3 extruded aluminum.

1. When used with panic exit devices, provide keyed removable mullions listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing in accordance with UL 305. Use only mullions that have been tested with exit devices to be used.

O. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to comply with field conditions and requirements for opening force.

P. Concealed Overhead Holders and Stops: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.

Q. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.

R. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.

1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D2000 molded neoprene or ASTM D2287 molded PVC.
2. Sliding Type: AAMA 701/702, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

S. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.

T. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21 raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of **1/2 inch**.

U. Finger Guards: Manufacturer's standard collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb at center-pivoted doors.

2.5 GLAZING

A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

B. Glazing Gaskets: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

C. Glazing Sealants: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

D. Structural Glazing Sealants: ASTM C1184 chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with system components with which it comes in contact; specifically formulated and tested for use as structural sealant and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer for use in storefront system indicated.

1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

E. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed storefront manufacturers for this use.

1. Color: Match structural sealant.

2.6 MATERIALS

A. Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B209**.

B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: **ASTM B221**.

C. Structural Profiles: ASTM B308/B308M.

D. Steel Reinforcement:

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1008/A1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1011/A1011M.

E. Steel Reinforcement Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods in accordance with recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces in accordance with applicable SSPC standard.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

F. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

A. Automatic Door Operators: Section 087113 "Power Door Operators."

B. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads , fabricated from 300 series stainless steel.

C. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.

1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M requirements.

D. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, 0.018-inch- thick stainless steel, complying with ASTM A240/A240M, of type recommended by manufacturer.

E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for **30-mil** thickness per coat.

F. Rigid PVC filler.

2.8 FABRICATION

A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.

B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.

E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.

1. At interior and exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.

F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.

1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.

G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.

H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project in accordance with Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

B. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

C. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Structural Sealant: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C1401 recommendations, including, but not limited to, assembly material qualification procedures, sealant testing, and assembly fabrication reviews and checks.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE AND STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Do not install damaged components.

C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.

D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.

E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.

F. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

G. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

H. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.

I. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

J. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

K. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

L. Install entrance doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware in accordance with entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

M. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

N. Install structural glazing as follows:

1. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant in accordance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
2. Set glazing into framing in accordance with sealant manufacturer and framing manufacturer's written instructions and standard practice. Use a spacer or backer as recommended by manufacturer.
3. Set glazing with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

4. Hold glazing in place using temporary retainers of type and spacing recommended by manufacturer, until structural sealant joint has cured.
5. Apply structural sealant to completely fill cavity, in accordance with sealant manufacturer and framing manufacturer's written instructions and in compliance with local codes.
6. Apply structural sealant at temperatures indicated by sealant manufacturer for type of sealant.
7. Allow structural sealant to cure in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Clean and protect glass as indicated in Section 088000 "Glazing."
9. After structural sealant has completely cured, remove temporary retainers and insert backer rod between lites of glass as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
10. Install weatherseal sealant to completely fill cavity, in accordance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to produce weatherproof joints.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Install aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: **1/8 inch in 10 feet**; **1/4 inch in 40 feet**.
2. Level: **1/8 inch in 20 feet**; **1/4 inch in 40 feet**.
3. Alignment:

    a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to **1/2 inch** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/16 inch**.
    b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from **1/2 to 1 inch** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/8 inch**.
    c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of **1 inch** wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to **1/4 inch**.

4. Location: Limit variation from plane to **1/8 inch in 12 feet**; **1/2 inch** over total length.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests.

B. Tests: Perform the following tests on representative areas of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect to be tested in accordance with AAMA 501.2 and to not evidence water penetration.

    a. Perform a minimum of two tests in areas as directed by Architect.
    b. Perform tests in each test area as directed by Architect. Perform at least three tests, prior to 10, 35, and 70 percent completion.

2. Air Leakage: ASTM E783 at 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article but not more than **0.09 cfm/sq. ft.** at a static-air-

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

pressure differential of **1.57 lbf/sq. ft.**.

a. Perform a minimum of two tests in areas as directed by Architect.

3. Water Penetration: ASTM E1105 at a minimum uniform static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than **6.24 lbf/sq. ft.**, and to not evidence water penetration.

C. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections.

D. Inspections:

1. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each aluminum-framed entrance door equipped with panic hardware, located in an exit enclosure, electrically controlled, and equipped with special locking arrangements, in accordance with NFPA 101, Ch. 7 "Means of Egress," Section "Means of Egress Components," Article "Inspection of Door Openings."

E. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Entrance Door Hardware Maintenance:

1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.

3.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE SETS

END OF SECTION 084113

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hinges.
2. Continuous, pin-and-barrel-type hinges.
3. Continuous, gear-type hinges.
4. Concealed hinges.
5. Bored locks.
6. Mortise locks.
7. Interconnected locks.
8. Roller latches.
9. Push-pull latches.
10. Electric strikes.
11. Electromagnetic locks.
12. Delayed-egress electromagnetic locks.
13. Electromechanical locks.
14. Self-contained electronic locks.
15. Exit locks and alarms.
16. Surface bolts.
17. Manual flush bolts.
18. Automatic flush bolts.
19. Self-latching flush bolts.
20. Exit devices and auxiliary items.
21. Lock cylinders.
22. Operating trim.
23. Surface closers.
24. Concealed closers.
25. Closer holder release devices.
26. Wall- and floor-mounted stops.
27. Electromagnetic door holders.
28. Door gasketing.
29. Thresholds.
30. Sliding door hardware.
31. Metal protective trim units.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 064100 "Architectural Wood Casework" for cabinet door hardware provided with cabinets.
2. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" .
3. Section 083323 "Overhead Coiling Doors" for door hardware provided as part of overhead coiling door assemblies.
4. Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for entrance door

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

hardware, except cylinders.

5. Section 087113 "Power Door Operators" for low-energy power operators and low-energy power-assist operators.

1.2 ALTERNATES

A. Provide Door Hardware as Owner-Preferred Alternate via Specification Section 080671.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Floor-Recessed Door Hardware: Coordinate layout and installation with floor construction.

1. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.

B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.

D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.

E. Existing Openings: Where hardware components are scheduled for application to existing construction or where modifications to existing door hardware are required, field-verify existing conditions and coordinate installation of door hardware to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Conference participants must include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant and Owner's security consultant.

B. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Conference participants must include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant and Owner's security consultant.
2. Incorporate conference decisions into keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system, including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Flow of traffic and degree of security required.
b. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
c. Requirements for key control system.
d. Requirements for access control.
e. Address for delivery of keys.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For electrified door hardware.

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
2. Include details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.

C. Samples: For each exposed product in each finish specified, in manufacturer's standard size.

1. Tag Samples with full product description to coordinate Samples with door hardware schedule.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.

E. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Coordinate door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.

1. Submittal Sequence: Request product lineup from Owner – applied to Door Hardware allowance. Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of product data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
2. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in door hardware schedule in the Contract Documents.
3. Content: Include the following information:

a. Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, size, and material of each door and frame.
b. Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
c. Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
d. Description of electrified door hardware sequences of operation and interfaces with other building control systems.
e. Fastenings and other installation information.
f. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and designations contained in door hardware schedule.
g. Mounting locations for door hardware.
h. List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.

F. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of electrified door hardware.

1. Certify that door hardware for use on each type and size of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.

C. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Schedules: Final door hardware and keying schedule.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and of an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.

1. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedule.
3. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lockup for door hardware delivered to Project site.

B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.

C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures, including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.

2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise indicated below:

a. Electromagnetic and Delayed-Egress Locks: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
b. Exit Devices: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
c. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

1. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated doors are indicated, provide door hardware complying with NFPA 80 that is listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

B. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than **15 lbf** to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

D. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".

1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than **5 lbf**.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:

   a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: **5 lbf** applied perpendicular to door.
   b. Sliding or Folding Doors: **5 lbf** applied parallel to door at latch.
   c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than **1/2 inch** high.
4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 90 degrees, the door will take at least 5 seconds to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.
5. Adjust spring hinges so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 1.5 seconds to move to the closed position.

2.3 HINGES

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Allegion plc
   b. Baldwin; part of the Spectrum Brands Hardware and Home Improvement Group (HHI)
   c. Bommer Industries, Inc
   d. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
   e. Design Hardware; Mesker Openings Group; dormakaba
   f. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc
   g. Hager Companies
   h. INOX; Unison Hardware, Inc
   i. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
   j. McKinney Products Company; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
   k. STANLEY; dormakaba USA, Inc.

2.4 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Continuous, Pin-and-Barrel-Type Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.26; minimum **0.120-inch-** thick, hinge leaves with minimum overall width of **4 inches**; fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc
c. Hager Companies
d. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
e. Markar Architectural Products, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
f. McKinney Products Company; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
g. PBB, Inc
h. Select Products Limited
i. STANLEY; dormakaba USA, Inc.
j. Zero International; Allegion plc

C. Continuous, Gear-Type Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.26; minimum **0.120-inch-** thick, extruded-aluminum, pinless, geared hinge leaves joined by a continuous extruded-aluminum channel cap; with concealed, self-lubricating thrust bearings. Minimum overall width of **4 inches**; fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc
c. Bommer Industries, Inc
d. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
e. Hager Companies
f. Legacy Manufacturing
g. McKinney Products Company; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
h. PBB, Inc
i. Pemko Manufacturing Company Inc.; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
j. Select Products Limited
k. STANLEY; dormakaba USA, Inc.
l. Zero International; Allegion plc

2.5 CONCEALED HINGES

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Concealed Hinges: Fully concealed within mortises in the door edge and frame and allowing door to swing open 180 degrees.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. McKinney Products Company; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
b. Simonswerk North America, Inc.
c. SOSS Door Hardware; Universal Industrial Products, Inc.
d. Sugatsune America, Inc.

2.6 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.

C. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:

1. Bored Locks: Minimum **1/2-inch** latchbolt throw.
2. Mortise Locks: Minimum **3/4-inch** latchbolt throw.
3. Deadbolts: Minimum 1-inch bolt throw.

D. Lock Backset: **2-3/4 inches** unless otherwise indicated.

E. Lock Trim:

1. Description: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Levers: Forged.

a. <**Insert model number and description**>.

3. Escutcheons (Roses): Forged.
4. Dummy Trim: Match lever lock trim and escutcheons.

F. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.

1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
3. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.
4. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.

G. Bored Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Grade 1, Series 4000.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
c. BEST Access Solutions, Inc.; dormakaba USA Inc.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

d. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
e. Corbin Russwin, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
f. Design Hardware; Mesker Openings Group; dormakaba
g. dormakaba USA Inc.
h. Hager Companies
i. INOX; Unison Hardware, Inc
j. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
k. Marks USA; Napco Security Technologies, Inc.
l. PAMEX Inc.
m. PDQ Industries, Inc.
n. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY
o. SOSS Door Hardware; Universal Industrial Products, Inc.
p. STANLEY; dormakaba USA, Inc.
q. Weiser; part of the Spectrum Brands Hardware and Home Improvement Group (HHI)
r. Yale Security Inc; ASSA ABLOY

H. Mortise Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Security Grade 1; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Accurate Lock & Hardware Co.
b. Adams Rite Manufacturing Company, an ASSA ABLOY Group company
c. Allegion plc
d. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
e. BEST Access Solutions, Inc.; dormakaba USA Inc.
f. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
g. Corbin Russwin, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
h. Design Hardware; Mesker Openings Group; dormakaba
i. dormakaba USA Inc.
j. Hager Companies
k. INOX; Unison Hardware, Inc
l. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
m. Marks USA; Napco Security Technologies, Inc.
n. RR Brink Locking Systems, Inc.
o. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY
p. STANLEY; dormakaba USA, Inc.
q. Yale Security Inc; ASSA ABLOY

I. Roller Latches: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, Grade 1; rolling plunger that engages socket or catch, with adjustable roller projection.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, :

a. Allegion plc
b. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc
c. Baldwin; part of the Spectrum Brands Hardware and Home Improvement Group (HHI)

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

d. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated
e. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc
f. Door Controls International
g. Hiawatha, Inc; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group
h. INOX; Unison Hardware, Inc
i. Rockwood Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
j. Standard Metal Hardware Manufacturing LTD

J. Push-Pull Latches: Bored, ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Series 4000; with paddle handles that retract latchbolt; capable of being mounted vertically or horizontally.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Adams Rite Manufacturing Company, an ASSA ABLOY Group company
b. Allegion plc
c. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc
d. Corbin Russwin, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
e. Rockwood Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
f. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY
g. SOSS Door Hardware; Universal Industrial Products, Inc.
h. Trimco

2. [**Grade 1**][**Grade 2**].

2.7 ELECTROMAGNETIC LOCKS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Electromagnetic Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.23; electrically powered; with electromagnet attached to frame and armature plate attached to door; full-exterior or full-interior type, as required by application indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. ASSA ABLOY Electronic Security Hardware; ASSA ABLOY
c. Door Controls International
d. dormakaba USA Inc.
e. Dortronics Systems, Inc
f. DynaLock Corp
g. Hager Companies
h. Rutherford Controls Int'l. (RCI); dormakaba Group
i. Security Door Controls

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

C. Delayed-Egress Electromagnetic Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.24; electrically powered; with electromagnet attached to frame and armature plate attached to door; depressing push bar for more than three seconds initiates irreversible alarm and adjustable time delay for egress. When integrated with fire alarm, fire alarm voids time delay.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Door Controls International
c. DynaLock Corp
d. Rutherford Controls Int'l. (RCI); dormakaba Group

2.8 SELF-CONTAINED ELECTRONIC LOCKS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Self-Contained Electronic Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.25, bored; with internal, battery-powered, self-contained electronic locks; consisting of complete lockset, motor-driven lock mechanism, and actuating device; enclosed in zinc-dichromate-plated, wrought-steel case, and strike that suits frame. Provide key override, low-battery detection and warning, LED status indicators, and ability to program at the lock.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. BEST Access Solutions, Inc.; dormakaba USA Inc.
c. Kaba Ilco Corp.
d. Marks USA; Napco Security Technologies, Inc.
e. Onity; a Honeywell Company
f. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY
g. Yale Security Inc; ASSA ABLOY

2.9 EXIT LOCKS AND EXIT ALARMS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Exit Locks and Alarms: ANSI/BHMA A156.29, Grade 1.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
b. Detex Corporation
c. Precision Hardware, Inc.; dormakaba Group

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

d. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY

2.10 SURFACE BOLTS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Surface Bolts: ANSI/BHMA A156.16.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated
c. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc
d. Door Controls International
e. Hiawatha, Inc; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group
f. Standard Metal Hardware Manufacturing LTD
g. Trimco

2.11 AUTOMATIC AND SELF-LATCHING FLUSH BOLTS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Automatic Flush Bolts: ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Type 25; minimum **3/4-inch** throw; with dust-proof strikes; designed for mortising into door edge. Include wear plates.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated
c. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
d. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc
e. Door Controls International
f. Rutherford Controls Int'l. (RCI); dormakaba Group
g. Standard Metal Hardware Manufacturing LTD
h. Trimco

C. Self-Latching Flush Bolts: ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Type 27; minimum **3/4-inch** throw; with dust-proof strikes; designed for mortising into door edge. Include wear plates.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

c. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
d. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc
e. Door Controls International
f. Rutherford Controls Int'l. (RCI); dormakaba Group
g. Standard Metal Hardware Manufacturing LTD
h. Trimco

2.12 EXIT DEVICES AND AUXILIARY ITEMS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Exit Devices and Auxiliary Items: ANSI/BHMA A156.3.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Adams Rite Manufacturing Company, an ASSA ABLOY Group company
b. Allegion plc
c. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
d. C.R. Laurence Co., Inc.; CRH Americas, Inc.
e. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
f. Corbin Russwin, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
g. Design Hardware; Mesker Openings Group; dormakaba
h. Detex Corporation
i. Door Controls International
j. dormakaba USA Inc.
k. Hager Companies
l. INOX; Unison Hardware, Inc
m. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
n. PAMEX Inc.
o. Precision Hardware, Inc.; dormakaba Group
p. Rutherford Controls Int'l. (RCI); dormakaba Group
q. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY
r. STANLEY; dormakaba USA, Inc.
s. Yale Security Inc; ASSA ABLOY

2.13 LOCK CYLINDERS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver. **Provide cylinder from same manufacturer of locking devices.**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

b. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
c. ASSA, Inc.
d. BEST Access Solutions, Inc.; dormakaba USA Inc.
e. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
f. Corbin Russwin, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
g. Hager Companies
h. Medeco Security Locks; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
i. PAMEX Inc.
j. PDQ Industries, Inc.
k. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY
l. STANLEY; dormakaba USA, Inc.
m. Yale Security Inc; ASSA ABLOY

C. Standard Lock Cylinders: ANSI/BHMA A156.5, Grade 2 permanent cores; face finished to match lockset.

1. Core Type: Removable.

D. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.

E. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

2.14 KEYING

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, appendix. Provide one extra key blank for each lock. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.

1. No Master Key System: Only change keys operate cylinders.

a. Provide three cylinder change keys.

2. Master Key System: Change keys and a master key operate cylinders.

a. Provide three cylinder change keys and five master keys.

3. Grand Master Key System: Change keys, a master key, and a grand master key operate cylinders.

a. Provide three cylinder change keys and five each of master and grand master keys.

4. Great-Grand Master Key System: Change keys, a master key, a grand master key, and a great-grand master key operate cylinders.

a. Provide three cylinder change keys and five each of master, grand master, and great-grand master keys.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

5. Existing System:

a. Master key or grand master key locks to Owner's existing system.
b. Re-key Owner's existing master key system into new keying system.

6. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.

C. Keys: Brass.

1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:

a. Notation: "DO NOT DUPLICATE."

2.15 OPERATING TRIM

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Operating Trim: ANSI/BHMA A156.6; stainless steel unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated
c. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc
d. Forms+Surfaces
e. Hager Companies
f. Hiawatha, Inc; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group
g. INOX; Unison Hardware, Inc
h. Rockwood Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
i. Standard Metal Hardware Manufacturing LTD
j. Trimco

2.16 ACCESSORIES FOR PAIRS OF DOORS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Coordinators: ANSI/BHMA A156.3; consisting of active-leaf, hold-open lever, and inactive-leaf release trigger; fabricated from steel with nylon-coated strike plates; with built-in, adjustable safety release [**; and with internal override**].

C. Carry-Open Bars: ANSI/BHMA A156.3; prevent the inactive leaf from opening before the active leaf; provide polished brass or bronze carry-open bars with strike plate for inactive leaves of pairs of doors unless automatic or self-latching bolts are used.

D. Astragals: ANSI/BHMA A156.22.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.17 CONCEALED CLOSERS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Concealed Closers: ANSI/BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. dormakaba USA Inc.
c. Norton Door Controls; ASSA ABLOY
d. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; ASSA ABLOY
e. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY

2.18 CLOSER HOLDER RELEASE DEVICES

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Closer Holder Release Devices: ANSI/BHMA A156.15, Grade 1; closer connected with separate or integral releasing and fire- or smoke-detecting devices. Door must become self-closing on interruption of signal to release device. Automatic release is activated by loss of power.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Corbin Russwin, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
c. dormakaba USA Inc.
d. Norton Door Controls; ASSA ABLOY
e. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; ASSA ABLOY
f. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY
g. STANLEY; dormakaba USA, Inc.

2.19 MECHANICAL STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Wall- and Floor-Mounted Stops: ANSI/BHMA A156.16.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc
c. ASI-American Specialties, Inc.
d. Baldwin; part of the Spectrum Brands Hardware and Home Improvement Group (HHI)
e. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated
f. Cal-Royal Products, Inc
g. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc
h. Door Controls International
i. Hager Companies
j. Hiawatha, Inc; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group
k. Rockwood Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY Accessories and Door Controls Group, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
l. Trimco

2.20 ELECTROMAGNETIC STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Per Owner-provided Specification Sheet.

B. Electromagnetic Door Holders: ANSI/BHMA A156.15, Grade 1; floor-mounted electromagnet single unit with strike plate attached to swinging door; coordinated with fire detectors and interfaced with fire-alarm system for labeled fire-rated door assemblies.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allegion plc
b. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc
c. dormakaba USA Inc.
d. Hager Companies
e. INOX; Unison Hardware, Inc
f. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
g. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY

2.21 FABRICATION

A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rating labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.

1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.

B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and ANSI/BHMA A156.18.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended; however, aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware unless otherwise indicated.

1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
2. Fire-Rated Applications:

a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:

1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames; **use threaded-to-the-head wood screws for wood doors and frames**.
2) Strike plates to frames.
3) Closers to doors and frames.

b. Steel Through Bolts: For the following unless door blocking is provided:

1) Surface hinges to doors.
2) Closers to doors and frames.
3) Surface-mounted exit devices.

3. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
4. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

2.22 FINISHES

A. Provide finishes complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface-applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6.

B. Wood Doors: Comply with door and hardware manufacturers' written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF DOOR HARDWARE

A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
3. Wood Doors: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."

B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.

1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.

C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every **30 inches** of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.

D. Intermediate Offset Pivots: Where offset pivots are indicated, provide intermediate offset pivots in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than one intermediate offset pivot per door and one additional intermediate offset pivot for every **30 inches** of door height greater than **90 inches**.

E. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.

1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as directed by Owner.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.

F. Key Control System:

G. Boxed Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings. Verify location with Architect.

1. Configuration: Provide one power supply for each door opening with electrified door hardware.

H. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.

I. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.

1. Do not notch perimeter gasketing to install other surface-applied hardware.

J. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.

K. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 70 degrees and so that closing time complies with accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware.

3.8 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

A. Reference 080671 Owner-Preferred Alternate Hardware Schedule.

END OF SECTION 087100

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Glass products.
2. Insulating glass.
3. Glazing tapes.
4. Miscellaneous glazing materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 088300 "Mirrors."
2. Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts."

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters in accordance with ASTM C1036.

C. IBC: International Building Code.

D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances to achieve proper safety margins for glazing retention under each design load case, load case combination, and service condition.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Glass Samples: For each type of the following products; **12 inches** square.

1. Coated glass.
2. Laminated glass.
3. Insulating glass.
4. Fritted glass.

C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants and colored spacers, in **12-inch** lengths.

D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer manufacturers of fabricated glass units glass testing agency and sealant testing agency.

B. Product Certificates: For glass.

C. Product Test Reports: For fabricated glass and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.

D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.

E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.

B. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.

1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2. Use ASTM C1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
3. Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
4. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below **40 deg F**.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

instructions. Evidence of failure is obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

D. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Heat-Soaked Tempered Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace heat-soaked tempered glass units that spontaneously break due to nickel sulfide (NiS) inclusions at a rate exceeding 0.3 percent (3/1000) within specified warranty period. Coverage for any other cause is excluded.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: For each product and installation method, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.

C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined in accordance with the IBC and ASTM E1300:

1. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or **1 inch**, whichever is less.
2. Thermal Loads: Design glazing to resist thermal stress breakage induced by differential temperature conditions and limited air circulation within individual glass lites and insulated glazing units.

D. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for basic protection.

1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet of grade.
2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located between **30 feet** and 60 feet grade.

E. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1201, Category II.

F. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:

1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick of thickness indicated.
2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 100 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program, expressed as **Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F**.
5. SHGC and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 200 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program.
6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 300.

G. Acoustic Performance:

1. Exterior Glazing: 35 OITC.
2. Interior Glazing: 35 STC.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1. NGA Publications: [**"Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and**] "Glazing Manual."
2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
3. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."
4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."

B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

C. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than thickness indicated.

1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

D. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Low-Iron Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class I (clear), Quality-Q3; and with visible light transmission of not less than 91 percent and SHGC of not less than 0.87.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AGC Glass Company North America, Inc.
b. Guardian Glass LLC
c. Pilkington North America; NSG Group
d. Vitro Architectural Glass

B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

D. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1048, Condition C, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3; and complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in NGA's "Engineering Standards Manual."

E. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C1048, Type I, Condition B, Quality-Q3.

F. Reflective- and Low-E-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C1376, Kind CS.

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified in accordance with ASTM E2190.

1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
2. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General:

1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.

2.7 GLAZING TAPES

A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:

1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:

1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as primary sealant.
2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, recommended in writing by manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

C. Setting Blocks:

1. EPDM with Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

D. Spacers:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Neoprene blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

E. Edge Blocks:

1. EPDM with Shore A durometer hardness per manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.

a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.

C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:

1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.

C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.

D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than **50 inches**.

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide **1/8-inch-** minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and in accordance with requirements in referenced glazing publications.

H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.

K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.

B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.

C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.

D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.

E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.

F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.

G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.

B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.

C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Immediately after installation, remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.

B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.

1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.

C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.

D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 088000

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
2. Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.

B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain each type of gypsum panel and joint finishing material from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings in accordance with ASTM E119; tested by a qualified testing agency.

B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings in accordance with ASTM E90 and classified in accordance with ASTM E413; tested by a qualified testing agency.

2.3 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

A. Size: Provide panel products in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system specified or indicated on Drawings.

2.4 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American Gypsum
b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC
d. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company
e. PABCO Gypsum
f. USG Corporation

2. Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.

B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American Gypsum
b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

d. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company
e. PABCO Gypsum
f. Panel Rey
g. USG Corporation

2. Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.

2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.

1. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:

a. Cornerbead.
b. Bullnose bead.
c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
f. Expansion (control) joint.
g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M requirements.

1. Mold-Resistant Joint Compound: Use mold-resistant formulations with mold-resistant panel products.

B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended in writing by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.

3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless sprayer and to be used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:

1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended in writing by backing panel manufacturer.
2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended in writing by backer unit manufacturer.
3. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended in writing by manufacturer for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise specified or indicated on Drawings.

1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from **0.033 to 0.112 inch** thick.
2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended in writing by panel manufacturer.

D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers as follows:

1. Non-Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: slag or rock wool.
2. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.

E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

F. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 072600 "Vapor Retarders."

2.8 TEXTURE FINISHES

A. Primer: As recommended in writing by textured finish manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

A. Comply with ASTM C840 requirements.

B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.

C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than **1/16 inch** of open space between panels. Do not force into place.

D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.

1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than **8 sq. ft.** in area.
2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow **1/4- to 3/8-inch-** wide joints to install sealant.

G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide **1/4- to 1/2-inch-** wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

I. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.

J. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 requirements and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

K. Install sound-attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:

1. Gypsum Wallboard: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Gypsum Board, Type X: As indicated on Drawings Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly. All locations at Maintenance Building.
3. Impact-Resistant Gypsum Board: As indicated on Drawings.
4. Acoustically Enhanced Gypsum Board: As indicated on Drawings.

B. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise specified or indicated on Drawings or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.

    a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated on Drawings or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, **16 inches** minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over studs or furring members and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated on Drawings or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers [**and face layers separately to supports with screws**][**with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners**].

D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

(other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

E. Curved Surfaces:

1. Install panels horizontally (perpendicular to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus **12-inch-** long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
2. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws **16 inches** o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced **12 inches** o.c.

3.4 APPLICATION OF JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. Finishing Panel Products: Treat joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare panel surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

B. Prefill open joints [**, rounded or beveled edges,**] and damaged surface areas.

C. Apply joint tape over panel joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.

D. Interior Gypsum Board: Finish panels to levels indicated below and in accordance with ASTM C840:

1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
3. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

    a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

4. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings.

    a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

E. Exterior Gypsum Board for Ceilings and Soffits: Finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect adjacent surfaces from joint compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-gypsum board surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during gypsum

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

board installation and finishing.

B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 095123 – ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Acoustical tiles for interior ceilings.
2. Fully concealed, direct-hung, suspension systems.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 095113 "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" for ceilings consisting of mineral-base and glass-fiber-base acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems.
2. Section 095133 "Acoustical Metal Pan Ceilings" for ceilings consisting of metal-pan units with exposed and concealed suspension systems.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct Conference at the Project Site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Product test reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACOUSTICAL TILES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. CertainTeed Corporation; Saint-Gobain North America.
3. USG Corporation.

B. Acoustical Tile Standard: Manufacturer’s standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264.

C. Classication: A.

D. Finish and Color: Smooth and White.

E. Light Reflectance (LR): between 0.80 and 0.90.

F. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): between 20 and 35.

G. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): between 0.45 and 0.75.

H. Articulation Class (AC): between 150 and 180.

I. Edge/Joint Detail: Square, kerfed, and rabbeted; tongue and grooved; or butt.

J. Thickness: ¾” (19mm).

K. Modular Size: Match Existing.

2.2 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.
2. USG Corporation.

B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Manufacturer’s standard, direct-hung, fully concealed, metal suspension system that complies with applicable requirements in ASTM C635/C635M.

C. Direct-Hung, Double-Web Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from and capped with cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 coating designation.
1. Structural Classification: Intermediate -duty system.
2. Access: Upward and end pivoted , with initial access openings of size indicated below and located throughout ceiling within each module formed by main and cross runners, with additional access available by progressively removing remaining acoustical tiles.
a. Initial Access Opening: In each module, 24" x 24" .

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.

B. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical tiles in-place during a seismic event.

2.4 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. CertainTeed Corporation; Saint-Gobain North America
3. Fry Reglet Corporation.
4. USG Corporation.

B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations complying with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for of suspension-system runners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders unless otherwise indicated.

B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

A. Install suspended acoustical tile ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C 636M and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
1. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.

C. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as indicated on reflected ceiling plans.

END OF SECTION 095123

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Thermoset-rubber base.
2. Rubber molding accessories.
3. Vinyl molding accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than **12 inches** long.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than **12 inches** long.

E. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials , from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Coordinate mockups in this Section with mockups specified in other Sections.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **50 deg F** or more than **90 deg F**.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:

1. 48 hours before installation.
2. During installation.
3. 48 hours after installation.

B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.

C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
2.2 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company

B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).

1. Style and Location:

a. Style A, Straight: Provide in areas with carpet.
b. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas with resilient floor coverings.

C. Thickness: **0.125 inch**.

D. Height: 2-1/2 inches.

E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.

F. Outside Corners: Preformed.

G. Inside Corners: Preformed.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

H. Colors: As selected by Architect by Manufacturer's full range.

2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company
2. VPI Corporation

B. Description: Rubber carpet bar for tackless installations nosing for carpet transition strips.

C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.

D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.

E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's full range.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.

B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

C. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish, nominal **2 inches** wide, of height required to protect exposed edges of flooring, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.

1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.

B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.

D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.

H. Job-Formed Corners:

1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.

a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.

2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.

a. Miter corners to minimize open joints.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.

B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:

1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 096813 - TILE CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Carpet tile.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for removing existing floor coverings.
2. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
2. Include manufacturer's written installation recommendations for each type of substrate.

B. Shop Drawings: For carpet tile installation, showing the following:

1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
3. Type of subfloor.
4. Type of installation.
5. Pattern of installation.
6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
7. Pile direction.
8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

10. Transition details to other flooring materials.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of carpet tile.

1. Include Samples of exposed edge, transition, and other accessory stripping involving color or finish selection.

D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: **12-inch-** long Samples.

E. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

B. Qualification Statements: For Installer.

C. Sample Warranties: For carpet tile.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles. Include the following:

1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but no fewer than 10 full-size units.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.8 MOCKUPS

A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockups as dictated in submittal selection.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with CRI 104.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Comply with CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.

C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. More than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, and runs.
b. Loss of tuft-bind strength.
c. Excess static discharge.
d. Delamination.
e. Dimensional instability.

3. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET TILE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Bentley Mills, Inc.
2. Mannington Commercial; a business unit of Mannington Mills, Inc.
3. Mohawk Group
4. Armstrong

B. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

C. Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Fiber Content: 100 percent nylon 6,6.

E. Pile Characteristic: Level-loop pile.

F. Pile Thickness: <> for finished carpet tile in accordance with ASTM D6859.

G. Primary Backing/Backcoating: Manufacturer's standard composite materials.

H. Secondary Backing: Manufacturer's standard material.

I. Size: 24 by 24 inches.

J. Applied Treatments:

1. Soil-Resistance Treatment: Manufacturer's standard treatment.
2. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard treatment that protects carpet tiles as follows:

a. Antimicrobial Activity: Not less than 2 mm halo of inhibition for gram-positive bacteria, not less than 1 mm halo of inhibition for gram-negative bacteria, and no fungal growth, in accordance with AATCC 174.

K. Performance Characteristics:

1. Texture Appearance Retention Rating (TARR): Severe traffic, 3.5 minimum in accordance with ASTM D7330.
2. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm in accordance with NFPA 253.
3. Dry Breaking Strength: Not less than **100 lbf** in accordance with ASTM D2646.
4. Tuft Bind: Not less than 10 lbf in accordance with ASTM D1335.
5. Delamination: Not less than 4 lbf/in. in accordance with ASTM D3936.
6. Dimensional Tolerance: Within **1/32 inch** of specified size dimensions, as determined by physical measurement.
7. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): In accordance with ASTM C423.
8. Colorfastness to Crocking: Not less than 4, wet and dry, in accordance with AATCC 165.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

9. Colorfastness to Light: Not less than 4 after 60 AFU (AATCC fading units) in accordance with AATCC 16.3 Option 3.
10. Electrostatic Propensity: Less than 2 kV in accordance with AATCC 134.

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive types to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that comply with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile, and that are recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.

C. Metal Edge/Transition Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance.

B. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.

C. Concrete Slabs: Verify that finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and that surfaces are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.

1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.

    a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
    c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with CRI 104 and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates.

B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions **1/8 inch** wide or wider, and protrusions more than **1/32 inch** unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Concrete Substrates: Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers.

D. Metal Substrates: Clean grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if recommended in writing by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.

E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 10, "Carpet Tile," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

C. Maintain dye-lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.

D. Maintain pile-direction patterns recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.

G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on carpet tile as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

H. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:

1. Remove excess adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended in

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.

B. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096813

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 099114 - EXTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Surface preparation of substrates and application of the following:

1. Exterior paint systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 051213 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming structural steel substrates.
2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.
3. Section 099124 "Interior Painting (MPI Standards)."
4. Section 099301 "Staining and Transparent Finishing (MPI Standards)" for surface preparation and application of wood stains and transparent finishes on exterior wood substrates.
5. Section 099601 "High-Performance Coatings (MPI Standards)" for tilelike coatings.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. MPI Gloss Level G1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

B. MPI Gloss Level G2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and between 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

C. MPI Gloss Level G3: Between 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

D. MPI Gloss Level G4: Between 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

E. MPI Gloss Level G5: Between 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

F. MPI Gloss Level G6: Between 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

G. MPI Gloss Level G7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
3. Indicate VOC content.

B. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat. Submit paint manufacturer's standard printed cards for verification Samples.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, **8 inches** square.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

E. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in applicable exterior painting schedule articles to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match paint products applied and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint Products: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.5 MOCKUPS

A. Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.

a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least **100 sq. ft.**.
b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.

a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than **45 deg F**.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between **50 and 95 deg F**.

B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than **5 deg F** above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain each paint product from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 EXTERIOR PAINTS, GENERAL

A. Exterior Paint Systems: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in applicable exterior painting schedule articles for the paint category indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
b. Benjamin Moore & Co.
c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide <**Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation**> or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
b. Benjamin Moore & Co.
c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)

B. MPI Standards: Provide products complying with MPI standards indicated in applicable exterior painting schedule articles and listed in the "MPI Approved Products List."

C. Material Compatibility:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

D. VOC Content: For field applications, verify paints and coatings comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:

1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
3. Dry-Fog Coatings: 150 g/L.
4. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 100 g/L.
5. Rust-Preventive Coatings: 100 g/L.
6. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 100 g/L.
7. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.

E. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

1. 30 percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Cementitious Composition Board: 12 percent.
3. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
4. Wood: 15 percent.
5. Portland Cement Plaster (Stucco): 12 percent. Verify that plaster is fully cured.

C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Steel Substrates: Remove loose rust, loose mill scale, loose shop primer, and other loose foreign matter. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:

1. SSPC-SP 2.
2. SSPC-SP 3.
3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
4. SSPC-SP 11.

G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.

J. Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view and remove sanding dust.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

K. Canvas and Cotton Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

L. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 APPLICATION OF EXTERIOR PAINT PRODUCTS

A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
6. Primers specified in applicable exterior painting schedule articles may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if compatible with intermediate and topcoat coatings and acceptable to intermediate and topcoat paint manufacturers.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Painting Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:

1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:

a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
b. Uninsulated metal piping.
c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
d. Pipe hangers and supports.
e. Metal conduit.
f. Plastic conduit.
g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions, apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.
2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
4. Collect waste paint by type and deliver to recycling or collection facility.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, METAL SUBSTRATES

A. Steel and Iron Substrates:

1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating over Epoxy System: MPI EXT 5.1R.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, epoxy, anticorrosive, MPI #101.
b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, high build, low gloss, MPI #108.
c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #161.

2. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1Q.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, metal, surface tolerant, MPI #23.
b. Shop-Applied Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
c. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd paint, matching topcoat.
d. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level G1), MPI #8.

B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Latex System: MPI EXT 5.3H.

    a. Water-Based Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.

        1) <**Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation**>.

    b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #15.

        1) <**Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation**>.

2. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.3N.

    a. Water-Based Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd paint, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level G1), MPI #8 semigloss (MPI Gloss Level G5), MPI #94.

3. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI EXT 5.3M.

    a. Water-Based Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #315.

4. Bituminous Coating System: MPI EXT 5.3E.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, vinyl wash, MPI #80.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Bituminous coating, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Bituminous coating, MPI #35.

C. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:

1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.4F.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd paint, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level G1), MPI #8.

2. Aluminum Paint System: MPI EXT 5.4C.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Aluminum paint, MPI #1.

3.7 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, WOOD SUBSTRATES

A. Glue-Laminated Wood Substrates:

1. Latex over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.1A.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. Prime Coat, Alkyd: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #15.

2. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.1B.

a. Prime Coat, Alkyd: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd paint, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level G1), MPI #8.

3. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI EXT 6.1NN.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #315.

B. Exposed Wood-Framed Substrates:

1. Latex over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.2A.

a. Prime Coat, Alkyd: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #15.

2. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.2C.

a. Prime Coat, Alkyd: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd paint, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level G1), MPI #8.

3. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI EXT 6.2QQ.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #315.

C. Dressed-Wood Substrates: Wood trim Wood board siding.

1. Latex over Latex Primer System: MPI EXT 6.3L.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood, MPI #6.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #15.

2. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.3B.

a. Prime Coat, Alkyd: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd paint, matching topcoat.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level G1), MPI #8.

3. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI EXT 6.3PP.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #315.

D. Wood-Based Panel Substrates:

1. Latex over Latex Primer System: MPI EXT 6.4K.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood, MPI #6.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #15.

2. Latex over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.4G.

a. Prime Coat, Alkyd: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #15.

3. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.4B.

a. Prime Coat, Alkyd: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd paint, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level G1), MPI #8.

4. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI EXT 6.4MM.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood, MPI #5.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high-performance architectural, low sheen (MPI Gloss Levels G3 and G4), MPI #315.

END OF SECTION 099114

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 099124 - INTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Surface preparation of substrates and application of the following:

1. Interior paint systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 051213 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming structural steel substrates.
2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.
3. Section 099114 "Exterior Painting (MPI Standards)."
4. Section 099301 "Staining and Transparent Finishing (MPI Standards)" for surface preparation and the application of wood stains and transparent finishes on interior wood substrates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. MPI Gloss Level G1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

B. MPI Gloss Level G2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and between 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

C. MPI Gloss Level G3: Between 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

D. MPI Gloss Level G4: Between 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

E. MPI Gloss Level G5: Between 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

F. MPI Gloss Level G6: Between 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

G. MPI Gloss Level G7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, in accordance with ASTM D523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
2. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3. Indicate VOC content.

B. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat. Submit paint manufacturer's standard printed cards for verification Samples.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, **8 inches** square.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

E. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Interior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match paint products applied and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint Products: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.5 MOCKUPS

A. Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.

a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least **100 sq. ft.**.
b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.

a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than **45 deg F**.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between **50 and 95 deg F**.

B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures of less than **5 deg F** above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain each paint product from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 INTERIOR PAINTS, GENERAL

A. Interior Paint Systems: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include but are not limited to products listed in the applicable interior painting schedule articles for the paint category indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
b. Benjamin Moore & Co.
c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:

a. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
b. Benjamin Moore & Co.
c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)

B. MPI Standards: Provide products complying with MPI standards indicated in applicable interior painting schedule articles and listed in the "MPI Approved Products List."

C. Material Compatibility:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products must be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

D. VOC Content: For field applications verify paints and coatings comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:

1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 100 g/L.
4. Rust-Preventive Coatings: 100 g/L.
5. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 100 g/L.
6. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
7. Floor Coatings: 50 g/L.
8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.

E. Low-Emitting Materials: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, verify 90 percent of paints and coatings comply with requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

F. Material Emissions and Pollutant Control: Verify not less than 85 percent of field-applied paints and coatings that are inside the weatherproofing system comply with either of the following:

1. Low-Emitting Materials: Verify VOC emissions comply with requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Verify formaldehyde emissions do not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.
2. Verify VOC content does not exceed limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:

    a. Flat Coatings: 50 g/L.
    b. Nonflat Coatings: 100 g/L.
    c. Nonflat - High-Gloss Coatings: 150 g/L.
    d. Concrete/Masonry Sealers: 100 g/L.
    e. Floor Coatings: 100 g/L.
    f. Industrial Maintenance Coatings: 250 g/L.
    g. Low-Solids Coatings: 120 g/L.
    h. Mastic Texture Coatings: 100 g/L.
    i. Metallic Pigmented Coatings: 500 g/L.
    j. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
    k. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 100 g/L.
    l. Reactive Penetrating Sealers: 350 g/L.
    m. Recycled Coatings: 250 g/L.
    n. Rust-Preventive Coatings: 250 g/L.

G. VOC Emissions: For field applications inside the building, wall paints shall contain no more

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

than half of the chronic REL of VOCs when tested according to the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." The building concentration of formaldehyde shall not exceed half of the indoor recommended exposure limit or 33 mcg/cu. m and that of acetaldehyde shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m.

H. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

1. 30 percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Cementitious Composition Board: 12 percent.
3. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
4. Wood: 15 percent.
5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent. Verify that finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.
6. Plaster: 12 percent. Verify that plaster is fully cured.

C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with finishes and primers. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Steel Substrates: Remove loose rust, loose mill scale, loose shop primer, and other loose foreign matter. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:

1. SSPC-SP 2.
2. SSPC-SP 3.
3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
4. SSPC-SP 11.

G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

H. Galvanized Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.

J. Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for interior use in paint system indicated.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view and remove sanding dust.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 APPLICATION OF INTERIOR PAINT PRODUCTS

A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
6. Primers specified in applicable interior painting schedule articles may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if compatible with intermediate and topcoat coatings and acceptable to intermediate and topcoat paint manufacturers.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Painting Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:

1. Paint the following work where exposed to view in equipment rooms:

a. Equipment, including panelboards.
b. Uninsulated metal piping.
c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
d. Pipe hangers and supports.
e. Metal conduit.
f. Plastic conduit.
g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
h. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.

2. Paint the following work where exposed to view in occupied spaces:

a. Equipment, including panelboards.
b. Uninsulated metal piping.
c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
d. Pipe hangers and supports.
e. Metal conduit.
f. Plastic conduit.
g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
h. Other items as directed by Architect.

3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.

1. Touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.
3. Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.
2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
4. Collect waste paint by type and deliver to recycling or collection facility.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, METAL SUBSTRATES

A. Steel and Iron Substrates:

1. Latex System, Alkyd Primer: MPI INT 5.1Q.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal, MPI #76.
b. Shop-Applied Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G4), MPI #43.

2. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.1RR.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive, for metal, MPI #79.
b. Shop-Applied Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, matching

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

topcoat.
d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #139.

3. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1EE.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive, for metal, MPI #79.
b. Shop-Applied Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
c. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
d. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #51.

4. Alkyd over Surface-Tolerant Primer System: MPI INT 5.1T.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, metal, surface tolerant, MPI #23.
b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #51.

5. Alkyd over Rust-Inhibitive Primer System: MPI INT 5.1TT.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based, MPI #107.
b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #51.

6. Alkyd over Shop-Applied Quick-Drying Shop Primer System: MPI INT 5.1W.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for shop application, MPI #275.
b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #51.

7. Alkyd, Dry-Fall System: MPI INT 5.1DD.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive, for metal, MPI #79.
b. Shop-Applied Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
c. Topcoat: Dry fall, alkyd, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #89.

8. Alkyd Dry-Fall over Quick-Drying Primer System: MPI INT 5.1ZZ.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for shop application, MPI #275.
b. Topcoat: Dry fall, alkyd, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #89.

9. Aluminum Paint System: MPI INT 5.1MM.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive, for metal, MPI #79.
b. Shop-Applied Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
c. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint, matching topcoat.
d. Topcoat: Aluminum paint, MPI #1.

B. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

1. Latex System: MPI INT 5.4H.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G4), MPI #43.

2. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 5.4G.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, (MPI Gloss Level G4), MPI #146.

3. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.4F.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #139.

4. Aluminum Paint System: MPI INT 5.4D.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, vinyl wash, MPI #80.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Aluminum paint, MPI #1.

5. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.4J.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #51.

C. Stainless Steel Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.6G.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, solvent based, MPI #69.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, (MPI Gloss Level G2), MPI #138.

2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.6B.

    a. Prime Coat: Primer, vinyl wash, MPI #80.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #51.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3.7 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, WOOD SUBSTRATES

A. Glued-Laminated Wood Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 6.1N.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, for interior wood, MPI #39.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, (MPI Gloss Level G4), MPI #140.

B. Exposed Wood Framed Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 6.2B.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, for interior wood, MPI #39.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #139.

C. Finish Carpentry Substrates: Wood trim Doors Windows and Wood board paneling.

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 6.3A.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, for interior wood, MPI #39.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, (MPI Gloss Level G4), MPI #140.

3.8 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, GYPSUM-BASED SUBSTRATES

A. Gypsum Board and Plaster Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 9.2B.

a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high-performance architectural, (MPI Gloss Level G4), MPI #140.

3.9 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, MISCELLANEOUS SUBSTRATES

A. Canvas and Cotton Insulation-Covering Substrates: Including pipe and duct coverings.

1. Alkyd System: MPI INT 10.1B.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #51.

2. Aluminum Paint System: MPI INT 10.1C.

a. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint matching topcoat.
b. Topcoat: Aluminum paint, MPI #1.

B. Bituminous-Coated Substrates:

1. Latex System: MPI INT 10.2A.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based, MPI #107.
b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G4), MPI #43.

2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 10.2B.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based, MPI #107.
b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, interior, (MPI Gloss Level G3), MPI #51.

3. Aluminum Paint System: MPI INT 10.2C.

a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based, MPI #107.
b. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint, matching topcoat.

END OF SECTION 099124

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 099301 - STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING (MPI STANDARDS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Staining and transparent finishing of exterior and interior wood surfaces.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for stains and transparent finishes on concrete floors.
2. Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for transparent high-performance coatings on concrete floors and clay masonry.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
2. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
3. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
4. Indicate VOC content.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of product.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of finish system and in each color and gloss of finish required.

1. Submit Samples on representative samples of actual wood substrates, 8 inches square.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: Cross-reference to finish system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials , from the same product run, to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Stains and Transparent Finishes: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

color applied.

1.4 MOCKUPS

A. Apply mockups of each finish system indicated and each color selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of finish system and substrate.

a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least **100 sq. ft.**.
b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Final approval of stain color selections will be based on mockups.

a. If preliminary stain color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional stain colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than **45 deg F**.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply finishes only when temperature of surfaces to be finished and ambient air temperatures are between **50 and 95 deg F**.

B. Do not apply finishes when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, at temperatures of less than **5 deg F** above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.

C. Do not apply exterior finishes in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING (MPI STANDARDS)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.2 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each coating product from single source from single manufacturer.

2.3 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."

B. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: 350 g/L.
3. Clear Wood Finishes, Lacquers: 550 g/L.
4. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
5. Stains: 250 g/L.
6. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 100 g/L.
7. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: 275 g/L.
8. Clear Wood Finishes, Lacquers: 275 g/L.
9. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
10. Stains: 100 g/L.
11. Low-Emitting Materials: VOC emissions shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.
12. Low-Emitting Materials: VOC emissions shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
13. VOC content shall not exceed limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:

    a. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
    b. Stains: 250 g/L.
    c. Clear Wood Finishes (Varnishes, Sanding Sealers, and Lacquers): 275 g/L.

C. Stain Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Exterior Wood Substrates: 15 percent, when measured with an

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

electronic moisture meter.

C. Maximum Moisture Content of Interior Wood Substrates: 10 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.

D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

E. Proceed with finish application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Beginning finish application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and finishing.

1. After completing finishing operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

C. Clean and prepare surfaces to be finished according to manufacturer's written instructions for each substrate condition and as specified.

1. Remove dust, dirt, oil, and grease by washing with a detergent solution; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry. Remove grade stamps and pencil marks by sanding lightly. Remove loose wood fibers by brushing.
2. Remove mildew by scrubbing with a commercial wash formulated for mildew removal and as recommended by stain manufacturer.

D. Exterior Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.

a. For solid hide stained wood, stain edges and ends after priming.
b. For varnish-coated stained wood, stain edges and ends and prime with varnish. Prime undersides and backsides with varnish.

3. Countersink steel nails, if used, and fill with putty or plastic wood filler tinted to final color. Sand smooth when dried.

E. Interior Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Apply wood filler paste to open-grain woods, as defined in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual," to produce smooth, glasslike finish.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3. Sand surfaces exposed to view and dust off.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dry.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply finishes according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for finish and substrate indicated.
2. Finish surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces.
3. Do not apply finishes over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

B. Apply finishes to produce surface films without cloudiness, holidays, lap marks, brush marks, runs, ropiness, or other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing finish application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered materials by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from finish application. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced finished wood surfaces.

3.5 EXTERIOR WOOD-FINISH-SYSTEM SCHEDULE

A. Wood Substrates, Glued-Laminated Construction:

1. Water-Based Varnish System MPI EXT 6.1M:

a. Prime Coat: Water-based varnish matching topcoat.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based varnish matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat, Velvet: Water-based varnish (MPI Gloss Level 2) , MPI #192.
d. Topcoat, Eggshell: Water-based varnish (MPI Gloss Level 3) , MPI #193.
e. Topcoat, Satin: Water-based varnish (MPI Gloss Level 4) , MPI #194.

B. Wood Substrates, Exposed Framing:

1. Water-Based Semitransparent Stain System MPI EXT 6.2P:

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. Prime Coat: Stain, exterior, water based, semitransparent, matching topcoat.
b. Intermediate Coat: Stain, exterior, water based, semitransparent, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Stain, exterior, water based, semitransparent , MPI #156.

2. Clear, Two-Component Polyurethane Varnish System MPI EXT 6.2Q:

a. Prime Coat: Varnish, aliphatic polyurethane, two component, matching topcoat.
b. Intermediate Coat: Varnish, aliphatic polyurethane, two component, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat, Gloss or High Gloss: Varnish, aliphatic polyurethane, two component (MPI Gloss Level 6 or 7) , MPI #78.

C. Wood Substrates, Wood-Based Panel Products:

1. Water-Based Semitransparent Stain System MPI EXT 6.4L:

a. Prime Coat: Stain, exterior, water based, semitransparent, matching topcoat.
b. Intermediate Coat: Stain, exterior, water based, semitransparent, matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Stain, exterior, water based, semitransparent , MPI #156.

3.6 INTERIOR WOOD -FINISH-SYSTEM SCHEDULE

A. Wood Substrates, Exposed Framing:

1. Water-Based Varnish over Stain System MPI INT 6.2M:

a. Stain Coat: Stain, semitransparent, for interior wood , MPI #90.
b. First Intermediate Coat: Water-based varnish matching topcoat.
c. Second Intermediate Coat: Water-based varnish matching topcoat.
d. Topcoat, Satin: Varnish, water based, clear (MPI Gloss Level 4) , MPI #128.

END OF SECTION 099301

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 101423.16 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

B. Furnish templates for placement of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.

1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements , including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.

1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Room-Identification Signs: Full-size Sample.
2. Variable Component Materials: Full-size Sample of each base material, character (letter, number, and graphic element) in each exposed color and finish not included in Samples above.
3. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
4. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in Project.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

E. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials , from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Variable Component Materials: 12 replaceable text inserts and interchangeable characters (letters, numbers, and graphic elements) of each type.
2. Tools: One set(s) of specialty tools for assembling signs and replacing variable sign components.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices and electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".

2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign system with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
b. Advance Corporation
c. Allen Industries
d. APCO Graphics, Inc
e. ASE, Inc
f. ASI Sign Systems, Inc
g. Best Sign Systems, Inc.
h. Clarke Systems
i. Cosco
j. Diskey Sign Company
k. Foresight Supersign
l. inpro Corporation
m. Mohawk Sign Systems
n. Nelson-Harkins Industries
o. Poblocki Sign Company, LLC
p. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
q. Signature Signs, Inc.
r. Signs & Decal Corp
s. Vista System, LLC
t. Vomar Products, Inc

2. Stainless Steel Room Sign, match existing Wake County Standards.

B. Provide per Architect's drawings and Wake County GSA Standards.

2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B209**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

B. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

C. Vinyl Film: UV-resistant vinyl film with pressure-sensitive, permanent adhesive; die cut to form characters or images as indicated on Drawings [**and suitable for exterior applications**].

D. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:

1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
2. For exterior exposure, furnish stainless-steel devices unless otherwise indicated.
3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:

    a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened sign unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Fastener Heads: Use flathead screws and bolts with tamper-resistant Allen-head slots unless otherwise indicated.

4. Sign Mounting Fasteners:

    a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material or screwed into back of sign assembly unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Through Fasteners: Exposed metal fasteners matching sign finish, with type of head indicated, and installed in predrilled holes.

B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.

C. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, **0.045 inch** thick, with adhesive on both sides.

D. Hook-and-Loop Tape: Manufacturer's standard two-part tape consisting of hooked part on sign back and looped side on mounting surface.

E. Magnetic Tape: Manufacturer's standard magnetic tape with adhesive on one side.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.

1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.

B. Signs with Changeable Message Capability: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages as follows:

1. For snap-in changeable inserts beneath removable face sheet, furnish one suction or other device to assist in removing face sheet. Furnish initial changeable insert. Furnish two blank inserts for each sign for Owner's use.
2. For slide-in changeable inserts, fabricate slot without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner.
3. For frame to hold changeable sign panel, fabricate frame without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial sign panel. Subsequent changeable sign panels are by Owner.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and according to the accessibility standard.

C. Mounting Methods:

1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.

    a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
    b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.

2. Through Fasteners: Drill holes in substrate using predrilled holes in sign as template. Countersink holes in sign if required. Place sign in position and flush to surface. Install through fasteners and tighten.
3. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
4. Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage tape adhesive.
5. Hook-and-Loop Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply sign component of two-part tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage; push to engage tape adhesive. Keep tape strips 0.250 inch away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges when sign is initially installed or reinstalled. Apply substrate component of tape to substrate in locations aligning with tape on back of sign; push and rub well to fully engage tape adhesive to substrate.
6. Magnetic Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.

C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423.16

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:

a. Portable fire extinguisher.
b. Portable fire extinguisher and fire-hose valve.
c. Portable fire extinguisher, fire hose, rack, and fire-hose valve.
d. Fire-hose valve.
e. Fire hose, rack, and fire-hose valve.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets.
2. Section 211000 "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for fire-hose connections.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCE

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to fire-protection cabinets, including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Schedules and coordination requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
2. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples **6 by 6 inches** square.

F. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 SECURITY FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. JL Industries; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
2. Larsen's Manufacturing Company

B. Security Fire-Protection Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

C. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.

1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls lined with minimum

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

5/8-inch- thick fire-barrier material.

D. Cabinet Material: 0.068-inch- thick steel sheet.

1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.

E. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

1. Square-Edge Trim: **1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch** backbend depth.
2. Rolled-Edge Trim: **2-1/2-inch** backbend depth.

F. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless steel sheet.

G. Door Material: 0.078-inch- thick stainless steel sheet.

H. Door Style: Solid opaque panel with frame.

I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated, and as follows:

1. Recessed door pull.
2. Continuous Hinge: Same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
3. Mechanical Deadlock:

a. Lockbolt retracted and extended by five-tumbler paracentric cylinder; keyed one side.

1) Lockbolt: **1-1/2 inches high by 3/4 inch** thick; **5/8-inch** throw.

4. Mechanical Snaplatch:

a. Automatic snaplatch when closed; latchbolt retracted by five-tumbler paracentric cylinder; keyed one side.

1) Lockbolt: **1 inch high by 7/16 inch** thick; **5/16-inch** throw.

J. Accessories:

1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to security fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as directed by Architect.

a. Identify fire extinguisher in security fire-protection cabinet with the words " FIRE EXTINGUISHER."

1) Location: Applied to location indicated on Drawings.
2) Application Process: Engraved.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

3) Lettering Color: White.
4) Orientation: As indicated on Drawings.

3. Keys: Three per door lock.

K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

a. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
b. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.

a. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 directional satin finish.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.

1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
5. Install door locks at factory.

B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.

1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum **1/2 inch** thick.
2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.

C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.

D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for hose racks and cabinets to verify actual locations of piping connections before cabinet installation.

B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed cabinets will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare recesses for recessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.

E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 123661 - SIMULATED STONE COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Quartz agglomerate countertops.
2. Accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for cantilever supports.
2. Section 224100 "Residential Plumbing Fixtures" and Section 224200 "Commercial Plumbing Fixtures" for non-integral sinks and plumbing fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of countertop material.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Plans, sections, details, edge and backsplash profiles, and attachment to other work.
2. Locations and details of joints.
3. Locations, quantity, and type of supports/brackets.
4. Direction of directional pattern, if any.
5. Locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in countertop.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Countertop material, **6 inches** square.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Indicate locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in countertops or backsplashes.

B. Qualification Statements: For fabricator.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include product data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses,

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver countertops only after casework and supports on which they will be installed have been completed in installation areas.

B. Store countertops in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

C. Keep surfaces of countertops covered with protective covering during handling and installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work..

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with ANSI/AWI 1236 for grades of simulated stone countertops indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1. The Contract Documents contain more stringent requirements than that of the referenced quality standard. Comply with requirements of the Contract Documents in addition to those of referenced quality standard.

2.2 SOLID SURFACE MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

A. Solid Surface Countertop Type :

1. Grade: Premium.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

2.3 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

A. Quartz Agglomerate Countertop Type :

1. Grade: Premium.

B. Quartz Agglomerate Material: Homogenous fabrication of natural quartz aggregates and pigments bound together with a matrix of polymers and resins, complying with ISFA 3-01.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Cambria
b. Cosentino North America; C&C North America, Inc.
c. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.

2. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Countertop:

a. Thickness: 0.787 inch.
b. Exposed Edge Treatment: Eased.
c. Provide drip groove 1/8 inch by 1/8 inch set back 3/8 inch from front edge of countertop.
d. Backsplash: Detached straight.

1) Height: Per Drawings.

e. End Splash: None.

4. Sink Bowls:

a. Separate unit for under-counter mounting.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Grommets:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:

a. Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.
b. Hafele America Co.
c. W.W. Grainger, Inc.

2. Wire-Management Grommets: Circular, grommets and matching caps with slot for wire passage.

a. Finish: Metal.
b. Outside Diameter: 2 inches.
c. Color: Brushed, nickel plated.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

B. Support Brackets:

1. Countertop:

a. Type: Hidden.
b. Material: Stainless steel.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate countertops in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated.

B. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
2. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in the shop.

C. Joints:

1. Fabricate countertops without joints.
2. Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field , with joints at locations indicated.

a. Joint Locations: Not within **18 inches** of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than **36 inches** long would result, unless unavoidable.
b. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints where indicated. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit.

D. Cutouts and Holes:

1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.

a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting **3/16 inch** into fixture opening.

2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for grommets, plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.
4. Counter-Mounted Cooktops: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for cooktops. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

2.6 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

a. Hardwood Plywood: 0.05 ppm.
b. Particleboard: 0.09 ppm.
c. MDF More Than 5/16 Inch (8 mm) Thick: 0.11 ppm.
d. MDF 5/16 Inch (8 mm) or Less in Thickness: 0.13 ppm.

B. Adhesive: Product recommended by manufacturer.

C. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates to receive countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Before installation, condition countertops to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.

B. Examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SIMULATED STONE COUNTERTOPS

A. Grade: Install countertops to comply with specified grade.

B. Assemble countertops and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.

1. Provide cutouts not finished in the shop. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.

C. Countertop Installation:

1. Scribe and cut countertops to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
2. Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
3. Anchor wall cleating necessary for proper setting for countertops not supported by casework.
4. Install countertops level to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 8 ft.**, **1/4 inch** maximum. Do not

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

exceed **1/64-inch** difference between planes of adjacent units.

5. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
6. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
7. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
8. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.

    a. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints where indicated. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
    b. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.

9. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
10. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
11. Seal joints between countertop and backsplash, if any, and joints where countertop and backsplash abut walls. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective countertops, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace countertops. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

B. Clean countertops on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces.

C. Protection: Provide Kraft paper or other suitable covering over countertop surfaces, taped to underside of countertop at a minimum of **48 inches** o.c. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 123661

Copyright © 2024 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

SECTION 129300 – SITE FURNISHINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Benches.
2. Bicycle racks.
3. Trash receptacles.
4. Picnic Tables.
5. Overlook Binoculars.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete footings.
2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavation for installation of concrete footings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Size: Not less than 6-inch long linear components and 4-inch square sheet components.

D. Product Schedule: For site furnishings. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

E. Material Certificates: For site furnishings, signed by manufacturers.

1. Wood Preservative Treatment: Include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standards.
2. Sustainably Harvested Wood: Include certification by manufacturer and from sources that participate in sustained yield programs.

F. Maintenance Data: For site furnishings to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of site furnishing(s) through one source from a single manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKED BENCHES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide two (2) six foot (6') backed benches. Backed benches shall be the PCXB-6 Treated Southern Yellow Pine Bench by Pilot Rock or approved equal.

2.2 ACCESSIBLE PICNIC TABLE

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide six (6) six foot (6') accessible picnic table. Table shall be the WPTS Square Frame Accessible Picnic Table from Pilot Rock or approved equal.

2.3 BIKE RACK

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide four (4) bike racks. Bike racks shall be the HM-1284CG238 Single Loop Bike Rack by Belson Outdoors or approved equal. Bike rack shall be powder coated black.

2.4 LITTER RECEPTACLE

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one (1) combined trash and recycling receptacle and one (1) trash-only receptacle. Combined trash and recycling receptacle shall be the BPRT3-108 welded steel receptacle by Pilot Rock or approved equal. Trash-only receptacle shall be the BPRT1-36 welded steel receptacle by Pilot Rock or approved equal. Receptacles shall be welded steel and powdered coated green in color.

2.5 ACCESSIBLE OVERLOOK BINOCULARS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one (1) accessible overlook binocular. Accessible overlook binoculars shall contain two (2) Mark II binocular viewers with a dual base by Seecoast Manufacturing Company or approved equal. A Half Base shall also be included at column base. Accessible overlook binoculars shall be aluminum alloy and color sepia hammertone.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Metal Components: Form to required shapes and sizes with true, consistent curves, lines, and angles. Separate metals from dissimilar materials to prevent electrolytic action.

B. Welded Connections: Weld connections continuously. Weld solid members with full-length, full-penetration welds and hollow members with full-circumference welds. At exposed connections, finish

surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness or unevenness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.

C. Pipes and Tubes: Form simple and compound curves by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required; maintain cylindrical cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of handrail and railing components.

D. Preservative-Treated Wood Components: Complete fabrication of treated items before treatment if possible. If cut after treatment, apply field treatment complying with AWPA M4 to cut surfaces.

E. Exposed Surfaces: Polished, sanded, or otherwise finished; all surfaces smooth, free of burrs, barbs, splinters, and sharpness; all edges and ends rolled, rounded, or capped.

F. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in the factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Clearly mark units for assembly in the field.

2.7 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel, Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked, polyester, powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

2.9 STEEL AND GALVANIZED STEEL FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel, Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked, polyester, powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

B. PVC Finish: Manufacturer's standard, UV-light stabilized, mold-resistant, slip-resistant, matte-textured, dipped or sprayed-on, PVC-plastisol finish, with flame retardant added; complying with coating manufacturer's written instructions for pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

2.10 IRON FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel, Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked, polyester, powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

2.11 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

A. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.

B. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for correct and level finished grade, mounting surfaces, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Complete field assembly of site furnishings where required.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, install site furnishings after landscaping and paving have been completed.

C. Install site furnishings level, plumb, true, and securely anchored at locations indicated on Drawings and manufactures recommendations.

3.3 CLEANING

A. After completing site furnishing installation, inspect components. Remove spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finishes to match original finish or replace component.

END OF SECTION 129300

SECTION 220500 - BASIC PLUMBING MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
2. Sleeves.
3. Escutcheons.
4. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
5. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than plumbing and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and plumbing equipment rooms.

C. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.

B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.

B. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

2.3 SLEEVES

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

2.4 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.

C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.

1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.

1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.

C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping shall be at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited. All piping shall be installed plumb, level, square, and parallel to the building. Piping shall be routed high as possible.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

G. Install piping at indicated slopes.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections. 90 degree angle only.

J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.

N. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

O. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.4 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.

END OF SECTION 220500

SECTION 220523 - PLUMBING VALVES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following general-duty valves:

1. Copper-alloy ball valves.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated. Include body, seating, and trim materials; valve design; pressure and temperature classifications; end connections; arrangement; dimensions; and required clearances. Include list indicating valve and its application. Include rated capacities; furnished specialties; and accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASME Compliance: ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1. Exceptions: Domestic hot- and cold-water piping valves unless referenced.

B. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.

2.2 VALVES, GENERAL

A. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of valves.

B. Bronze Valves: NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Threaded ends, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

D. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Valve Actuators:

1. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
2. Lever Handle: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller, except plug valves.

F. Extended Valve Stems: On insulated valves.

2.3 BALL VALVES

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Ball Valves:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Grinnell Corporation.
d. NIBCO INC.

B. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves, General: MSS SP-110.

C. Two-Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: Brass or bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE seats; and 400-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Refer to piping Sections for specific valve applications. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball valves.
2. Throttling Service: Ball valves.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP class or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Domestic Water Piping: Use the following types of valves:

1. Ball Valves: Two-piece, 400-psig (2760-kPa) CWP rating, copper alloy.

D. Select valves, except wafer and flangeless types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Solder-joint or threaded ends, except provide valves with threaded ends for heating hot water services.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

C. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

D. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

E. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods" for basic piping joint construction.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes hangers and supports for plumbing system piping and equipment.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design channel support systems for piping to support multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

B. Design heavy-duty steel trapezes for piping to support multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of pipe hanger, channel support system component, and thermal-hanger shield insert indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Pipe Hangers, Supports, and Components: MSS SP-58, factory-fabricated components.

1. Available Manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc.
    b. Carpenter & Patterson, Inc.
    c. Grinnell Corp.
    d. GS Metals Corp.
    e. National Pipe Hanger Corp.
    f. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.

2. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: For piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: On attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

B. Channel Support Systems: MFMA-2, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Available Manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc.
    b. Grinnell Corp.
    c. GS Metals Corp.
    d. National Pipe Hanger Corp.
    e. Thomas & Betts Corp.
    f. Unistrut Corp.

2. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish, unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: On attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive-strength insulation, encased in sheet metal shield.

1. Available Manufacturers:

    a. Carpenter & Patterson, Inc.
    b. Pipe Shields, Inc.
    c. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    d. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

2. Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type I cellular glass or water-repellent-treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate.
3. For Trapeze or Clamped System: Insert and shield cover entire circumference of pipe.
4. For Clevis or Band Hanger: Insert and shield cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
5. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Powder-Actuated Drive-Pin Fasteners: Powder-actuated-type, drive-pin attachments with pull-out and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Anchor Fasteners: Insert-type attachments with pull-out and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars, black and galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Specific hanger requirements are specified in Sections specifying equipment and systems.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Specification Sections.

C. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).

D. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20 (DN 20 to DN 500).
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20 (DN 20 to DN 500), if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

E. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.

F. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:

1. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
2. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
3. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
4. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
5. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
6. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (675 kg).
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1350 kg).

7. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
8. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.

G. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe, 360-degree insert of high-density, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive-strength, water-repellent-treated calcium silicate or cellular-glass pipe insulation, same thickness as adjoining insulation with vapor barrier and encased in 360-degree sheet metal shield.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Pipe Hanger and Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

B. Channel Support System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled channel systems. Field assemble and install according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Heavy-Duty Steel Trapeze Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated, heavy-duty trapezes. Support pipes of various sizes together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.

D. Install building attachments to structural steel. Space attachments within maximum piping span length indicated in MSS SP-69. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, guides, strainers, and expansion joints, and at changes in direction of piping.

E. Install powder-actuated drive-pin fasteners in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.

F. Install mechanical-anchor fasteners in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," is not exceeded.

K. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

    a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles, if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span arc of 180 degrees.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

    a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
    b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.

5. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 METAL FABRICATION

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for heavy-duty steel trapezes and equipment supports. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field-weld connections that cannot be shop-welded because of shipping size limitations. Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustment: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touching Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following mechanical identification materials and their installation.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STENCILS

A. Stencils for Piping:

1. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping and at least 2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm) and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
2. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
4. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.2 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2 inch (13 mm) numbers, with numbering scheme. Provide 5/32 inch (4 mm) hole for fastener.

1. Material: 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick brass.
2. Valve-Tag Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 22 Sections. If more than single-type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

3.2 PIPING IDENTIFICATION

A. All exposed pipe and pipes in accessible chases will be painted. Colors will be selected by Engineer.

B. Stenciled Pipe Label: Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

C. Locate labels where piping is exposed in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior nonconcealed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and non-accessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced markers.

3.3 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

    a. Cold Water: 2 inches (50 mm), round.

2. Valve-Tag Color:

    a. Cold Water: Blue.

3. Letter Color:

    a. Cold Water: White.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Relocate identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work.

B. Clean faces of identification devices.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220700 – PLUMBING PIPE INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes semirigid and flexible piping insulation, insulating cements, field-applied jackets, accessories and attachments, and sealing compounds.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Shop fabrication and installation details for the following:

1. Application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at pipe hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
3. Removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively, according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:

a. CertainTeed Manson.

b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
d. Schuller International, Inc.

2.2 PIPE INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin complying with the following:

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 547, Type 1, with factory-applied, all-purpose, vapor-retarder jacket.
2. Fire-Resistant Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C Class 1, Grade A for bonding glass cloth and tape to unfaced glass-fiber insulation, for sealing edges of glass-fiber insulation, and for bonding lagging cloth to unfaced glass-fiber insulation.
3. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Fire and water-resistant, vapor-retarder mastic for indoor applications. Comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
4. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 195.
5. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 196.
6. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

B. Field-Applied Jackets: ASTM C 921, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Canvas jacket with vapor-retarder mastics.

C. Accessories and Attachments:

1. Glass Cloth and Tape: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I for cloth and Type II for tape. Woven glass-fiber fabrics, plain weave, presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (270 g/sq. m).
2. Bands: 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide aluminum.
3. Wire: 0.080 inch (2.0 mm), nickel-copper alloy; 0.062 inch (1.6 mm), soft-annealed, stainless steel; or 0.062 inch (1.6 mm), soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; and free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.

E. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.

F. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.

G. Apply insulation over fittings and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

I. Insulation Terminations: Seal ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder. Hollowed-out or thinned insulation will not be accepted.

J. Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through walls and partitions, except fire-rated walls and partitions.

K. Floor Penetrations: Terminate insulation at underside of floor assembly and at floor support at top of floor.

3.2 PIPE INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE

A. Service: Domestic cold water.

1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 60 deg F (2 to 15 deg C).
2. Insulation Material: Mineral-fiber preformed pipe.
3. Insulation Thickness: 1”.
4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
5. Canvas jacket on exposed piping.

END OF SECTION 220700

SECTION 221113 - WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Except as otherwise stipulated in this section, all work shall conform to Division 15 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition.

B. Work under this section includes, but is not limited to, piping, valves, fire hydrants, water service line, and appurtenances for a complete potable water distribution system.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. Publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.
1. American Society of Sanitary Engineering (ASSE) Standards
   a. 1013 Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers
   b. 1015 Double Check Backflow Prevention Assembly
   c. 1069 Outdoor Enclosures for Backflow Prevention Assemblies
2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
   a. C443 Flexible Watertight Joints for Precast Manhole Sections
   b. C478 Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections
   c. C890 Minimum Structural Design Loading for Monolithic or Sectional Precast Concrete Water and Wastewater Structures
   d. C923 Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes and Laterals.
3. American Water Works Association (AWWA)
   a. B300 Hypochlorites
   b. B301 Liquid Chlorine
   c. C104 Cement-Mortar Lining for Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water
   d. C105 Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Piping for Water and Other Liquids
   e. C110 Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings, 3 inch through 48 inch, for Water and Other Liquids
   f. C115 Flanged Ductile-Iron Pipe with Ductile Iron or Gray Iron Threaded Flanges
   g. C150 Thickness Design of Ductile Iron Pipe
   h. C151 Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water
   i. C153 Ductile-Iron Compact Fittings, 3 inch through 24 inch and 54 inch through 64 inch, for Water Service
   j. C502 Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants
   k. C504 Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves
   l. C508 Swing-Check Valves for Waterworks Service, 2 inch Through 24 inch NPS
   m. C509 Resilient Seated Gate Valves for Water and Sewerage Systems
   n. C510 Double Check Valve Backflow-Prevention Assembly
   o. C511 Reduced-Pressure Principle Backflow-Prevention Assembly
   p. C512 Air-Release, Air / Vacuum, and Combination Air Valves for Waterworks Service
   q. C550 Protective Epoxy Interior Coatings for Valves and Hydrants
   r. C600 Standard for Installation of Ductile Iron Water Mains and Their Appurtenances
   s. C651 Disinfecting Water Mains
   t. C800 Underground Service Line Valves and Fittings
   u. C909

4. National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) Standards
   a. 14 Plastic Piping Components and Related Materials
   b. 60 Drinking Water Treatment Chemicals – Health Effects
   c. 61 Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects
5. Raleigh Water – Public Utility Design Manual

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 02000 - Contractor Submittal Procedures:
   1. Affidavit of Compliance: Affidavit shall attest that supplied products conform to the referenced standard and this specification and that all tests set forth in each applicable referenced publication have been performed and that all test requirements have been met. Submit for each of the following materials:
      a. Pipe and Fittings
         1) PVC
      b. Valves
         1) Gate
            a) Resilient-Seated
            b) Tapping
         2) Butterfly
         3) Check
      c. Service valves and fittings
         1) Corporation valves
         2) Meter setter with meter valve and check valve
   2. Catalog Data: Submit manufacturer's standard drawings or catalog cuts for the following. Clearly indicate equipment to be furnished for the Project including options to be provided.
      a. Pipe and Fittings
         1) PVC
      b. Valves
         1) Gate
            a) Resilient-Seated
            b) Tapping
         2) Butterfly
         3) Check
      c. Castings
      d. Tapping sleeves
      e. Valve boxes
      f. Service valves and fittings
         1) Service saddles
         2) Corporation valves
   3. Reports:
      a. Field test report for each section of pipe for the following:
         1) Measured chlorine residual
         2) Bacteriological test
         3) Pressure test
   4. Operation and Maintenance Instructions: Submit complete operation and maintenance manual for the following:
      a. Valves

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Provide a suitable pipe hook or rope sling when handling the pipe. Lifting of the pipe shall be done in a vertical plane. Under no conditions shall the sling be allowed to pass through the pipe unless adequate measures are taken to prevent damage to both the bell and spigot ends.

B. Deliver pipe in the field as near as practicable to the place where it is to be installed. In road right-of-way, distribute pipe daily along the side of the trench opposite to the spoil bank. Stringing pipe in road right-of-way except on a daily basis is not allowed. In easements, distribute pipe along the side of the trench opposite to the spoil bank. Stringing pipe in easements is allowed. Where necessary to move the pipe longitudinally along the trench, it shall be done in such a manner as not to injure the pipe or coating.

C. Shield PVC pipe and fittings stored on site from the sun's ultraviolet rays by suitable cover, or indoor storage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Products with surfaces intended to be in contact with the drinking water shall be certified and listed in accordance with NSF 61 for potable drinking water.

2.2 TAPPING SLEEVE

A. Tapping Sleeve: Sleeves shall be flanged for the tapping valve and manufactured for a working pressure of 150 psi. Sleeve shall have a full body 360-degree gasket. Sleeve shall have a 3/4-inch test plug. Bolts and nuts shall be stainless steel. Tapping Sleeve shall be Mueller mechanical joint, Mueller Outlet Seal, American Uniseal, Kennedy Square Seal, or Clow F5205 or F5207. 100% stainless steel sleeves may be used, as manufactured by Rockwell, Romac, Ford, or JCM, provided that all metallic parts of the sleeves shall be 100% stainless steel including bolts. Ductile iron flanges may be included on sleeves or saddles.

B. Tapping saddles may be used on mains 16-inches and larger. In 16 and 24 inch saddles as manufactured by Mueller, American, Kennedy and Clow tapping saddles shall be manufactured of ductile iron providing a factor of safety of 2.5 at a working pressure of 250 psi. In main sizes of 30-inch and larger, ductile iron tapping saddles as manufactured by American Pipe Company or U.S. Pipe Company shall be utilized. Saddles shall be equipped with a standard AWWA C-110-98 flange connection. Sealing gaskets shall be “O” ring type, high quality molded rubber having an approximate seventy durometer hardness, placed into a groove on the curved surface of the tapping saddle. Straps shall be of alloy steel. Saddles may be used for taps one-half the size of the main or less (i.e. 8-inch tapping saddle for use on a 16-inch main).

2.3 VALVES

A. General: Valves shall meet the following requirements:
   1. Size shall be as required for the pipe size and material as indicated on the Drawings and specified.
   2. Open by counterclockwise rotation.
   3. Provide an interior protective epoxy coating in accordance with AWWA C550 on ferrous surfaces in contact with the liquid.
   4. Components in contact with the liquid shall be in compliance with NSF 61.

5. Standard system working pressure is 175 psi.
6. Equip valves with a suitable means of operation.
7. Ends shall be mechanical joint for underground location and flanged joint for above ground location/underground utility vaults.
8. For buried valves over 5 feet deep, provide extension stems of cold rolled steel to bring the operating nut to within 2 feet of the ground surface. Extension stems shall also be provided as required for floor stands and to floor valve box.
9. Provide valve accessories as required for proper valve operation for valve locations as indicated on the Drawings and as recommended by valve manufacturer.
10. Similar valve types shall be of one manufacturer. Valves shall be manufactured by Mueller, Kennedy, Pratt, or American.

B. Gate Valves, Resilient-Seated: Gate valves 3-inch to 20-inch shall conform to AWWA C509 for and to the following requirements:
1. O-ring stem seal on non-rising (NRS) stem valves.
2. Shall be cast iron or ductile iron.
3. Valves shall be non-rising stem (NRS) with wrench nut for underground locations and Outside Screw and Yoke (OS&Y) with handwheel for above ground locations unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
4. Valves shall be as manufactured by American, Mueller, Kennedy, AVK, Clow, M&H, or Waterous.

C. Tapping Valves: Tapping valves shall conform to the specifications for the gate valves as indicated in this Section and the following:
1. Valve shall be specifically modified for the passage and clearance of the tapping machine cutter.
2. The mating end to the tapping sleeve shall be raised male surface to provide true alignment to the sleeve and tapping machine. The valve shall be compatible with the tapping sleeve.

D. Butterfly Valves: Butterfly valves 3-inch through 72-inch shall conform to AWWA C504 for potable water and to the following requirements:
1. Valve body shall be ductile iron and mechanical joint for below ground locations and flanged short body in underground vaults and above ground locations. End mechanical joints shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 and ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11. End flanges shall conform to ANSI B16.1, class 125 and ANSI/AWWA C110/21.10.
2. Valves shall be class 150B.
3. Rubber seats shall mate with stainless steel, bronze mating or resilient material surfaces.
4. Valve shafts shall consist of one-piece unit extending completely through the valve disc for valves under 12-inches. Above this size, shaft shall be one piece or the stub-shaft type. Shafts shall be type 304 stainless steel.
5. Valve discs shall be cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
6. Valve Actuator
7. Manual Actuator: Manual actuator shall be of the traveling nut type. Valves for buried service shall have a standard AWWA nut. Valves for above ground shall have a handwheel, or chain wheel as indicated on the Drawings.
8. Shall be as manufactured by Philadelphia Gear Works or EPI.
9. Valve shall be manufactured by Mueller, Kennedy, Pratt, or American.

E. Swing-Check Valves: Swing-check valves 2 to 24-inch shall conform to AWWA C508 and to the following requirements:
1. Provide lever and weight for swing check control.
2. Metal to Metal seat construction.
3. Ends shall be flanged.

2.4 CASTINGS

A. General
   1. Made of gray iron, ASTM A-48 - class 30, or ductile iron, ASTM A536, grade 65-45-12.
   2. Castings shall be free from imperfections not true to pattern. Casting tolerances shall be plus or minus 1/16 inch per foot of dimension. Top shall set neatly in frame, with edges machined for even bearing and proper fit to prevent rattling and flush with the edge of frame.
   3. Castings shall be as manufactured by Neenah Foundry Co., U.S. Foundry & Manufacturing Corp., Vulcan Foundry, or approved equal.

2.5 VALVE ACCESSORIES

A. Valve Box, Below Ground: Boxes shall be high strength cast iron, class 35, of the screw or telescopic type. Box shall consist of a flare base section, center extension as required, and a top section with the word “WATER” cast in the cover. Length of box shall be such that full extension of box is not required at the depth of water main cover.

B. Extension Stem (if necessary): Stem shall be sized so as to transmit full torque from the operating mechanism to the valve stem without binding, twisting, or bending. Stem shall be made from extra heavy steel pipe. Stem shall be complete with couplings for connection to valve and floor stand where required. When valve extension kits are used they must be as recommended by the valve manufacturer.

2.6 SERVICE VALVES AND FITTINGS

A. Service saddle: Provide service saddle for service pipe connection to main pipe material. Saddles shall meet the following requirements:
   1. Bronze body to conform to the outside dimension of the main.
   2. O-ring, Buna N rubber gasket to provide watertight connection.
   3. Hinged, double bottom strap design.
   4. Threaded outlet to match threads on corporation valve.

B. Corporation valve
   1. Stop size shall be the same as service line.
   2. Inlet thread shall be as per AWWA C800.
   3. Outlet thread shall be as required for the pipe material specified.

C. Curb Stop
   1. Installed in approved valve box
   2. Bronze ball valve material

D. Pressure reducing valve
   1. Shall meet ASSE 1003.
   2. Bronze body, renewable stainless steel seat.
   3. Suitable for reducing from an inlet pressure range of 100 – 150 psi to an outlet pressure of 40 psi.

E. THURST BLOCKING
   1. Provide concrete thrust blocking in accordance with the detail on the Drawings.
   2. Thrust blocking is not required where restrained joint fittings and equivalent length of restrained joint pipe are used unless shown otherwise on the Drawings.

2.7 DISINFECTANT

A. The following products may be used as the disinfectant:
   1. Chlorine, liquid: AWWA B301.
   2. Hypochlorite, calcium and sodium: AWWA B300.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Pipe installation shall meet the following general guidelines:
   1. Lay pipe in the presence of Engineer, unless specifically approved otherwise.
   2. Handle pipe and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Take particular care not to damage pipe coatings.
   3. Carefully inspect pipe immediately prior to laying. Do not use defective pipe. Replace pipe damaged during construction.
   4. Lay pipe to grade and alignment indicated on the Drawings.
   5. Provide proper equipment for lowering pipe into trench.
   6. Do not lay pipe in water or when the trench or weather conditions are unsuitable for the work.
   7. Provide tight closure pipe ends when work is not in progress.
   8. Keep pipe interior free of foreign materials.
   9. Clean bell and spigots before joining. Make joints and lubricate gasket in accordance with pipe manufacturer recommendation.
   10. Disinfection of pipe during installation:
   11. Soak gaskets for minimum of one hour in a 50 - 100 ppm hypochlorite solution prior to installation.
   12. Mop bells and spigots of pipe, fittings and valves with a 50 - 100 ppm hypochlorite solution immediately prior to making joints.
   13. Block fittings with concrete or restrain as indicated on the Drawings.

3.2 RELATION OF WATER MAINS TO SEWERS

A. Lateral Separation: Lay water mains at least 10 feet laterally from existing and proposed sewers. Where existing conditions prevent a 10-foot lateral separation, the following shall be followed with approval of the Engineer:
   1. Lay water main in a separate trench, with the elevation of the bottom of the water main at least 18 inches above the top of the sewer.
   2. Lay water main in the same trench as the sewer with the water main located at one side on a bench of undisturbed earth, and with the elevation of the bottom of the water main at least 18 inches above the top of the sewer.

B. Crossing Separation: Lay bottom of water main at least 18-inches above the top of the sewer. Where existing conditions prevent an 18-inch vertical separation, construct both the water main and sewer of ferrous materials and with joints that are equivalent to water main standards for a distance of 10 feet on each side of the point of crossing.

C. Crossing a Water Main Under a Sewer: When it is necessary for a water main to cross under a sewer, construct both the water main and the sewer of ferrous materials and with joints equivalent to water main standards for a distance of 10 feet on each side of the point of crossing. A section of water main pipe shall be centered at the point of crossing.

3.3 WATER SERVICE

A. Water service lines shall extend from the main distribution line to a meter box located at the right-of-way or to a point approximately 5 feet outside the building face, whichever is appropriate.

B. 3/4-inch water service lines may be direct tapped to ductile iron pipe. Water service taps larger than 3/4-inch shall be made using a service saddle.

C. Taps shall be located at 10 or 2 o'clock on the circumference of the pipe.

D. Service taps shall be staggered, alternating from one side of the water main to the other and at least 12 inches apart.

E. Taps on the same side of the main shall be a minimum of 24 inches apart.

F. Install meter boxes and water service components so top of meter will be within 6 inches of the surface.

G. Owner will provide and install water meter.

3.4 VALVES AND FITTINGS

A. Install buried valves on top of an 18-inch square, 3-inch thick, solid concrete pad (minimum dimensions). The concrete pad may be provided by a pre-cast manufacturer or cast-in-place in the field above grade. Concrete used for the pads shall be a minimum 3,000 psi mix. The pads may not be cast-in-place in the pipe trench. Connection to pipe shall be such that there shall be no stress at the joint caused by misalignment or inadequate support of pipe or valve.

B. Valve Box: Set a valve box over each buried valve. Support box so that no stress shall be transmitted to the valve or pipe line. Install box plumb and set top flush with finished grade. Operating nut shall be centered in box. Provide a 24-inch x 24-inch wide by 6-inch thick concrete pad at top of valve boxes outside paved areas. In paved areas, the top of the valve boxes shall be set in the finished paved surfaces matching the paved surface elevation.

C. Valve operation nut shall be within 30 inches of the top of box. Provide stem extension if necessary to bring operating nut to within 30 inches of the top of box.

D. Install fittings as recommended by the manufacturer. Fittings shall be blocked or otherwise restrained from movement.

E. Install valves, gates, and accessories indicated on the Drawings and in complete accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

F. Install air / vacuum valve inside a manhole.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Equipment shall receive the manufacturer's standard coating for the intended application. Coatings shall be suitable for the intended application.

B. Repaint damaged paint services.

C. Above ground piping and piping within vaults shall be painted in accordance with Section, Painting.

3.6 PIGGING

A. All new mains, unless otherwise noted in the Contract Documents, shall be pigged with a polyethylene “pig”, 5#/cubic foot density a the conclusion on installation.

B. Pigs shall be blown at the end of the main by either fire hydrant or blow-off assembly.

3.7 PRESSURE TESTING

A. Pressure test in accordance with AWWA C600 for ductile iron pipe and AWWA C605 and M23 for PVC pipe and as specified herein

B. General:
1. The Engineer shall approve the source, quality, and method of disposal of water to be used in test procedures.
2. Obtain Owner's permission 48 hours prior to filling or flushing of pipe system with water from Owner's water system. Owner shall operate valves connected to the existing water system. Where large quantities of water may be required for flushing, Owner reserves the right to require that flushing be done at periods of low demand.
3. Clean and flush pipe system of foreign matter prior to testing.
4. Provide air vents at the high points in the line section to be tested for releasing of air during filling. Service corporation stops may be used for air vent when located at a high point. Include cost of air vents in price of testing. Leave corporation stops in place after testing and note locations on As-Built Drawings.
5. Allow concrete blocking to reach design strength prior to pressure testing.
6. Test main prior to installation of service taps.
7. Repair defects in the pipe system. Make repairs to the same standard as specified for the pipe system.
8. Retest repaired sections until acceptance.
9. Repair visible leaks regardless of the test results.
10. Pipe sections shall not be accepted and placed into service until specified test limits have been met.

3.8 TESTING

A. Notify Owner and Engineer a minimum of 48 hours prior to testing.

B. Perform tests in the presence of Engineer.

C. Make pressure tests between valves. Furnish suitable test plugs where line ends in "free flow."

D. Upon completing a section of pipe between valves, test pipe by maintaining for a two hour period a hydrostatic pressure of 150 psig.

E. Test pressure shall not vary by more than +/- 5 psi for the duration of the test.

F. No length of line shall be accepted if the leakage is greater than that determined by the following formula based on the appropriate test pressure:

L = Allowable leakage per 1,000 feet of pipe in gallons per hour.
D = Nominal diameter of the pipe in inches.
100 psi: L = D x 0.07
150 psi: L = D x 0.08
200 psi: L = D x 0.09

250 psi: L = D x 0.10

3.9 DISINFECTION

A. After satisfactory completion of the pressure test, disinfect new potable water mains and existing mains that have required repair in accordance with AWWA C651 and as specified herein. Disinfect water mains in a maximum length per day of 2,000 feet.

B. General:
1. Provide a superintendent experienced in the required procedures for disinfecting with chlorine.
2. Obtain Owner's permission 48 hours prior to filling, flushing, and chlorinating of the water mains. Owner shall operate valves connected to the existing water system.
3. Do not allow highly chlorinated water into the existing distribution system.
4. A reducing agent shall be applied to the water to neutralize the residual chlorine. Federal, state, or local environmental regulations may require special provisions or permits prior to disposal of highly chlorinated water.
5. Perform disinfection and testing in presence of Engineer.

C. Connection to Existing System: Notify Owner 48 hours prior to making connections to the existing system. Thoroughly clean the existing water main exterior prior to the installation of tapping sleeves and corporation stops. Lightly dust with calcium hypochlorite powder the water main exterior and the interior surface of the tapping sleeve, and corporation stops.

D. After satisfactory flushing of the main, disinfect by the injection of a chlorine solution. Induce chlorine in sufficient quantity to maintain a chlorine residual of at least 50 ppm throughout the system to be tested. Maintain the chlorine solution in the system for at least 24 hours.

E. Valves and Fire Hydrants: Open and close valves on the mains being disinfected a minimum of three times during the chlorine contact period and a minimum of three times during flushing. Fire hydrants and other appurtenances should receive special attention to insure proper disinfection.

F. For Cut-In Construction: Use the following procedures for disinfecting of the new installation and the existing main at the cut-in point in accordance with AWWA C651, Section 9:
1. Apply liberal quantities of hypochlorite, in the form of tablets, to the open trench.
2. Interior of new pipe and fittings and the ends of the existing mains shall be swabbed or sprayed with a one percent hypochlorite solution before installation.
3. Install a 2-inch tap downstream of the work area. Tap shall be used for blowing off the main, or use the next fire hydrant downstream of the work area for blowing off the main.
4. Install a 2-inch tap just upstream of the new installation. Control Water from the existing system so as to flow slowly into the work area during the application of chlorine. After the line is thoroughly flushed, add chlorine solution at a concentration of 100 ppm by the continuous feed method and hold in the main for one (1) hour.

G. Prior to flushing, the free chlorine residual shall be a minimum of 10 ppm. Flushing of the lines shall not proceed until the lines contain the normal chlorine residual of the system.
1. Dechlorination: No discharge or heavily chlorinated water into a storm sewer or stream will be permitted unless the discharge is first treated by a neutralizing chemical applied to the water to be wasted to neutralize thoroughly the residual chlorine. A declorinating device is required. Disposal of chlorinated water shall meet the applicable sections of AWWA C651, and the NC NPDES General Permit NCG03000 or more current general permit if effective at the time of construction.

H. Test in the field for free chlorine residual:
1. Sample location shall be the same as required for the bacteriological test samples.

2. Immediately after injection of the chlorine solution. Sample shall have a chlorine residual as specified.
3. Prior to flushing of the highly chlorinated water from the potable water system and a minimum of 24-hours after the initial injection of the chlorine. Sample shall have a minimum chlorine residual as specified.

3.10 BACTERIOLOGICAL TESTING

A. Coordinate sampling and testing with the Owner. Follow procedure as outlined in the Raleigh Water – Public Utility Design Manual and below.

B. Required location for obtaining water samples:
1. Between Main Line valves
2. End of each main.
3. A minimum of one from each branch.
4. Mains at cut-in locations: Each side of work area. Time between samples to be determined by Engineer in field.

C. Notify the City of Raleigh Public Utilities Department when the system is ready to sample. The Public Utilities Department will take water samples at each specified location for the bacteriological and turbidity testing.

D. Recommended additional samples. During the required sampling of water from the new system, it is recommended that samples be taken from the existing potable water source to determine if coliforms are present.

E. Care in sampling. No hose or fire hydrant shall be used for the collection of samples. Take samples from an approved sample tap consisting of a corporation stop installed in the main with a copper tube gooseneck assembly. Operation shall be such as to ensure that the sample collected is actually from water that has been in the new system. Copper tube gooseneck assembly shall be removed and sample tap corporation stop shut off upon completion of testing bacteriological testing is requirements.
1. Samples will be tested by the Owner for turbidity in accordance with the Raleigh Water – Public Utility Design Manual. If it passes then the bacteriological test will be performed by Public Utilities.

F. Test samples for the presence of coliform organisms in accordance with the latest edition of Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater. Testing method used shall be the multiple-tube fermentation technique, the membrane-filter technique, or presence/absence.

G. Test for odor. The water in the new system should also be tested to assure that no offensive odor exists due to chlorine reactions or excess chlorine residual.

H. If samples show the presence of coliform, procedure 1 or 2 described below shall be followed, with the approval of the Owner, before placing the unit or facility in service.
1. Take repeat samples at least 24 hours apart until consecutive samples do not show the presence of coliform.
2. Again subject the system to chlorination and sampling as described in this section.

I. If samples are free of coliform, and with the approval of the Owner, the potable water system may be placed in service.

J. Contamination: If, in the opinion of the Engineer, possible contaminants have entered the existing water system, or water samples show the water in the existing system to be unsafe on completion of the work,

the existing water system shall be disinfected as specified herein and shall include all contaminated components. Disinfection of the existing system shall be coordinated with the Owner.

3.11 VALVE OPERATION

A. Prior to final acceptance provide competent personnel to operate each valve in presence of Owner and Engineer. Verify that valves are left in the open position.

END OF SECTION 221133

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes domestic water piping from locations indicated to fixtures and equipment inside the building.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components-Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for potable domestic water piping and components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Transition Couplings: Coupling or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L (ASTM B 88M, Types B), water tube, drawn temper.

1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought- copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.

C. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types K (ASTM B 88M, Type A), water tube, annealed temper.

1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought- copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.

2.2 VALVES

A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Valves" for valves.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Interior Domestic Water Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:

1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); soldered joints.

C. Exterior Domestic Water Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:

1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Annealed copper tube, Type K (Type A); soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Shutoff Duty: Use bronze ball valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
2. Throttling Duty: Use bronze ball valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
3. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods" for basic piping installation.

B. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside building at each domestic water service.

C. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.

D. Fill water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

E. Perform the following steps before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibb.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.

4. Remove filter cartridges from housings, and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and that cartridges are clean and ready for use.

F. Check plumbing equipment and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation. Do not operate water heaters before filling with water.

G. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods" for basic piping joint construction.

B. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sectional valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

B. Install shutoff valve on each water supply to equipment and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures without supply stops. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

C. Install drain valves for equipment, at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.

1. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
2. Install stop-and-waste drain valves where indicated.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Pipe" for pipe hanger and support devices. Install the following:

1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:

    a. MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.

B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Pipe."

C. Support vertical piping and tubing.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).

E. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8 inch (10 mm) rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8 inch (10 mm) rod.
3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8 inch (10 mm) rod.

F. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

G. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8 inch (10 mm) rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8 inch (10 mm) rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8 inch (10 mm) rod.

H. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).

I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect domestic water piping as follows:

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

    a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    b. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Test domestic water piping as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing domestic water piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if methods are not prescribed, procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or as described below:

    a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

        1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
        2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.

    c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - PLUMBING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes plumbing specialties for water distribution systems; and process waste, soil, waste, and vent systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Specification Sections.

B. Submit product data including rated capacities of selected models and weights (shipping, installation, and operation). Indicate materials, finishes, dimensions, required clearances, and methods of assembly of components; and piping and wiring connections:

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Coordinate subparagraphs retained below with subparagraph titles retained in other Part 2 articles.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.

    a. Josam Co.
    b. Smith by Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co. Div., Smith Industries, Inc.
    c. Watts Regulator Co.
    d. Woodford Manufacturing Co. Div., WCM Industries, Inc.
    e. Zurn by Hydromechanics Div., Zurn Industries, Inc.

2.2 HOSE BIBBS/HYDRANTS (HB-1)

A. ANSI/ASSE 1019; exposed, non-freeze, all bronze interior parts, replaceable bronze seat and seat washer, self-draining type with stainless steel face plate in lockable box, thread hose spout, removable key, and vacuum breaker. Woodford model B67 with chrome finish.

2.3 NON-FREEZE YARD HYDRANTS (YH-1)

A. ANSI/ASSE 1057; exposed, non-freeze, self-draining type, thread hose spout with bucket handle hook; adjustable flow, lockable lever handle; stainless steel canister; and vacuum breaker. Woodford model Y34.

2.4 CLEANOUTS

A. Interior Finished Floor Traffic Areas: Lacquered cast iron, two piece body, square with heavy duty scoriated cover, and satin stainless steel finish.

2.5 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER

A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.

B. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.

C. Color: Gray.

D. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.

E. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by stainless steel bolts and inserts, and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.

F. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50 with pull irons.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.

B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

C. Install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor, for floor cleanouts for piping below floors.

D. Install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall, for cleanouts located in concealed piping.

E. Install flashing flange and clamping device with each stack and cleanout passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

F. Fasten wall-hanging plumbing specialties securely to supports attached to building substrate if supports are specified and to building wall construction if no support is indicated.

G. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

H. Nonfreeze, Yard Hydrants: Set with riser pipe in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of pipes and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

D. Field cut openings for pipes according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each piece of equipment.

1. Text: Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
2. Refer to Division 22 Section “Identification for Plumbing Piping” for nameplates and signs.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Thermostat-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
b. Faulty operation of controls.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

a. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters: Five year(s).
b. Expansion Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTRIC, TANKLESS, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Thermostat-Control, Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Standard: UL 499 for electric, tankless, (domestic-water-heater) heating appliance.
3. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.

    a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
    d. Temperature Control: Thermostat.
    e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.

4. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:

1. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water expansion tanks from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:

    a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

B. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters on wall bracket.

1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping.

C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge to floor.

D. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.

E. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

END OF SECTION 223300

SECTION 224000 – PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes plumbing fixtures and trim, fittings, and accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports associated with plumbing fixtures.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for each type of plumbing fixture specified, including fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, supports, construction details, dimensions of components, and finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable manufacturers.

1. Emergency Fixtures:

a. Bradley Corp.
b. Guardian Equipment.

2.2 EMERGENCY EYEWASH (EW-1)

A. ANSI Z358.1; free standing type, 1-1/4 inch galvanized iron pipe pedestal with 9 inch floor flange, self-cleaning, nonclogging eye and face wash with quick opening, full-flow valves, yellow impact resistant plastic wash receptor, twin chrome-plated eye wash heads, copper alloy control valve and fittings. Sign: Universal emergency sign. Bradley model S19-210. Provide emergency thermostatic mixing valve, Bradley model S19-2000.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A. Verify adjacent construction is ready to receive rough-in work of this Section.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install components level and plumb.

B. Seal fixtures to wall and floor surfaces with sealant.

C. Assemble fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Install fixtures level and plumb according to manufacturers’ written instructions and rough-in drawings.

E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping.

F. Install water-supply, flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.

G. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.

H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and counters using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect water supplies from water distribution piping to fixtures.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

B. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust stops or valves for intended water flow rate to fixtures without splashing, noise, or overflow.

B. At completion clean plumbing fixtures and equipment.

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 230500 - BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Mechanical demolition.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Characteristics for Mechanical Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DEMOLITION

A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove mechanical systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

1. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.

B. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 MECHANICAL DEMOLITION

A. Refer to Division 01 Sections "Cutting and Patching" and "Selective Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

B. General: Demolish and remove existing construction; including but not limited to: floors, slabs, walls, ceilings, and soffits, as required to access components or systems indicated to be demolished. Where demolition is outside the new construction area, the contractor shall repair the demolished area to match existing construction and finishes.

C. Disconnect, demolish, and remove mechanical systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

1. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same ductwork material. If duct is insulated, insulate to match adjacent ductwork.
2. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
3. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same ductwork material.
4. Ducts or Pipes that must be extended or reconnected: Extend or reconnect ducts or pipes with same materials.

D. If duct, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

END OF SECTION 230500

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Sheet metal materials.
3. Sealants and gaskets.
4. Hangers and supports.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards -

Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4 inch (6 mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8 inch (10 mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 420 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 (Table 4-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

C. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

D. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved.

B. Install ducts at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited. All ductwork shall be installed plumb, level, square, and parallel to the building. Ductwork shall be routed high as possible.

C. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.

E. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

F. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

G. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

H. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

I. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.

J. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

K. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

3.3 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 (Table 4-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.

C. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).

D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.

C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Terminal Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg (250 Pa).
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 3.

B. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."

C. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."

    a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
    b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manual volume dampers.
2. Flexible ducts.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For each product.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).

C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts.

D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.2 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Standard leakage rating.
2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
3. Frames:
    a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 0.064-inch (1.62-mm) minimum thickness.
    b. Mitered and welded corners.
    c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
4. Blades:
    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
6. Bearings:
    a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 1-inch (25-mm) diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch (19-mm) hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.

B. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel.

C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.

D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

E. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch (1500-mm) lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

F. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus draw tape.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 – HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Sidewall propeller fan.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
3. Material gages and finishes, including color charts.
4. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
5. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
6. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.

D. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Carnes Company.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Loren Cook Company.
4. Price.
5. Penn.

2.2 SIDEWALL PROPELLER FANS

A. Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring, with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.

B. Fan Wheels: Formed-steel blades riveted to heavy-gauge steel spider bolted to cast-iron hub.

C. Fan Drive, Direct: Direct-drive motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.

D. Accessories:

1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal conduit.
2. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers factory set to close when fan stops.
3. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.
4. Wall Sleeve: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Motor Construction: NEMA MG 1, general purpose, continuous duty, Design B.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install plumb, level, and square.

B. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

C. Install in accordance with the manufacturers' written instructions.

3.2 STARTUP SERVICE:

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
5. For direct-drive fans, verify proper motor rotation direction and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

B. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.

C. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest as specified above after repairs or replacements are made.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Square Ceiling Diffuser.
2. Return Grilles.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Anemostat.
b. METALAIRE, Inc.
c. Nailor Industries Inc.
d. Price Industries.
e. Titus.
f. Krueger.

2.2 SUPPLY DIFFUSERS

A. Square Ceiling Diffuser:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
3. Face Style: Flush Four cone.
4. Mounting: Provide inverted T-bar type frame for lay-in ceiling. Plaster frame for gypsum board ceiling.
5. Pattern: Fixed, horizontal discharge.
6. Dampers: Opposed blade.

2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Return Grille:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
3. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1-inch (13-by-13-by-26-mm) grid core.
4. Frame: Provide inverted T-bar type frame for lay-in ceiling. Surface mount for gypsum board ceiling.
5. Mounting: Lay-in.
6. Dampers: Opposed blade.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 237620 – ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Propeller unit heaters with electric-resistance heating coils.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each product indicated. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PROPELLER UNIT HEATERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Berko Electric Heating; a division of Marley Engineered Products.
2. Markel Products; a division of TPI Corporation.
3. QMark Electric Heating; a division of Marley Engineered Products.

4. Trane.

B. Description: An assembly including casing, coil, fan, and motor in horizontal discharge configuration with adjustable discharge louvers.

C. Comply with UL 2021.

D. Cabinet: Removable panels for maintenance access to controls.

E. Cabinet Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel applied to factory-assembled and -tested propeller unit heater before shipping.

F. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

G. Discharge Louver: Adjustable fin diffuser for horizontal units.

H. Electric-Resistance Heating Elements: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in steel or corrosion-resistant metallic sheath with fins no closer than 0.16 inch (4 mm). Element ends shall be enclosed in terminal box. Fin surface temperature shall not exceed 550 deg F (288 deg C) at any point during normal operation.

1. Circuit Protection: One-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection of heaters.
2. Wiring Terminations: Stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant material.

I. Fan: Propeller type with aluminum wheel directly mounted on motor shaft in the fan venturi.

J. Fan Motor Type: Permanently lubricated.

K. Control Devices: Unit-mounted thermostat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

B. Suspend propeller unit heaters from structure with all-thread hanger rods and spring hangers.

C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 237620

SECTION 260100 - BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Connectors.
2. Supporting devices for electrical components.
3. Cutting and patching for electrical construction.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Devices for Utility Company Electricity Metering: Comply with utility company published standards.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate chases, slots, inserts, sleeves, and openings for electrical supports, raceways, and cable with general construction work.

B. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment that requires positioning before closing in the building.

C. Coordinate electrical service connections to components furnished by utility companies.

1. Coordinate installation and connection of exterior underground and overhead utilities and services, including provision for service entrances and electricity-metering components.

D. Where electrical identification devices are applied to field-finished surfaces, coordinate installation of identification devices with completion of finished surface.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORTING DEVICES

A. Material: Cold-formed steel, with corrosion-resistant coating.

B. Metal Items for Use Outdoors or in Damp Locations: Hot-dip galvanized steel.

C. Slotted-Steel Channel: Flange edges turned toward web, and 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter slotted holes at a maximum of 2 inches (50 mm) o.c., in webs. Strength rating to suit structural loading.

D. Slotted Channel Fittings and Accessories: Recommended by the manufacturer for use with the type and size of channel with which used.

1. Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.

E. Raceway and Cable Supports: Manufactured clevis hangers, riser clamps, straps, threaded C-clamps with retainers, ceiling trapeze hangers, wall brackets, and spring-steel clamps or click-type hangers.

F. Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade A, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

G. Cable Supports for Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug for nonarmored electrical cables in riser conduits. Plugs have number and size of conductor gripping holes as required to suit individual risers. Body constructed of malleable-iron casting with hot-dip galvanized finish.

H. Expansion Anchors: Carbon-steel wedge or sleeve type.

I. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.

J. Powder-Driven Threaded Studs: Heat-treated steel.

2.2 ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

A. See Division 26 Section “Identification for Electrical Systems.”

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom.

B. Materials and Components: Install level, plumb, and parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations.

D. Right of Way: Give to raceways and piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 ELECTRICAL SUPPORTING DEVICE APPLICATION

A. Damp Locations and Outdoors: Hot-dip galvanized materials or slotted channel system components.

B. Dry Locations: Steel materials.

C. Strength of Supports: Adequate to carry present and future loads, times a safety factor of at least four with, 200-lb (90-kg) minimum design load for each support element.

3.3 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Support parallel runs of horizontal raceways together on trapeze- or bracket-type hangers.

B. Size supports for multiple raceway or cable runs so capacity can be increased by a 25 percent minimum in the future.

C. Support individual horizontal single raceways with separate, malleable-iron pipe hangers or clamps except use spring-steel fasteners for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller single raceways above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to slotted channel and angle supports.

D. Install sleeves for cable and raceway penetrations of concrete slabs and walls unless core-drilled holes are used. Install sleeves for cable and raceway penetrations of masonry and fire-rated gypsum walls and of all other fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Install sleeves during erection of concrete and masonry walls.

E. Secure electrical items and their supports to building structure, using the following methods unless other fastening methods are indicated:

1. Masonry: Toggle bolts on hollow block and expansion bolts on solid block. Seal around sleeves with mortar, both sides of wall.
2. Structural Steel: Welded threaded studs, Spring-tension clamps, Threaded studs driven by powder charge and provided with lock washers.

    a. Comply with AWS D1.1 for field welding.

3. Light Steel Framing: Sheet metal screws.
4. Fasteners for Damp, Wet, or Weather-Exposed Locations: Stainless steel.
5. Light Steel: Sheet-metal screws.

6. Fasteners: Select so load applied to each fastener does not exceed 25 percent of its proof-test load.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS AND DEVICES

A. Install at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

B. Coordinate names, abbreviations, colors, and other designations used for electrical identification with corresponding designations indicated in the Contract Documents or required by codes and standards. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

C. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before applying.

D. Tag and label circuits designated to be extended in the future. Identify source and circuit numbers in each cabinet, pull and junction box, and outlet box. Color-coding may be used for voltage and phase identification.

3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces required to permit electrical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of trades involved.

B. Repair, refinish and touch up disturbed finish materials and other surfaces to match adjacent undisturbed surfaces. All work to be executed by skilled mechanics.

3.6 ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION

A. Refer to Division 01 Sections "Cutting and Patching" and "Selective Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

B. General: Demolish and remove existing construction; including but not limited to: floors, slabs, walls, ceilings, and soffits, as required to access components or systems indicated to be demolished. Where demolition is outside the new construction area, the contractor shall repair the demolished area to match existing construction and finishes.

C. Disconnect, demolish, and remove electrical systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

1. Wire and conduit to be removed: Remove portion of wire and conduit indicated to be removed back to source.
2. Wire and conduit to be abandoned in Place: Remove conductors and cap ends of conduit. Wire and conduit cannot be abandoned in place without permission from the owner and engineer.
3. Equipment to be Removed: Disconnect and remove equipment complete.
4. Equipment to be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.

5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect services, remove equipment, and deliver to Owner.
6. The electrical panel directories shall be updated. Directories shall be typed.
7. Existing circuits that are routed through demolished devices shall be rerouted to maintain circuit continuity.
8. All existing wire and conduit that is existing to remain shall be properly resupported after demolition is complete.

END OF SECTION 260100

SECTION 260519 – LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes building wires and cables and associated connectors, splices, and terminations for wiring systems rated 600 V and less.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Provide information on each type of conductor.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Manufacturers:

1. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
2. General Cable Corporation.

3. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
4. Southwire Company.

B. Refer to Part 3 "Conductor and Insulation Applications" Article for insulation type, cable construction, and ratings.

C. Conductor Material: Copper, solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

D. Conductor Insulation Types: Type THHN.

E. Multi-conductor Cable: Metal-clad cable, Type MC with ground wire and galvanized steel interlocked armor.

2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Manufacturers:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. AMP Incorporated/Tyco International.
3. Hubbell/Anderson.
4. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
5. 3M Company; Electrical Products Division.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR AND INSULATION APPLICATIONS

A. Exposed Branch Circuits: Type THHN, single conductors in raceway.

B. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN, single conductors in raceway.

C. MC Cable shall only be used where indicated on drawings.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips that will not damage cables or raceway.

D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

E. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."

F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

G. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

H. Wiring to devices shall not exceed the UL rating for the device.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.3.1. Certify compliance with test parameters.

B. Test Reports: When requested, prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes grounding of electrical systems and equipment. Requirements specified in this Section may be supplemented by requirements of other Sections.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled under UL 467 as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Copperweld Corp.
2. Erico Inc.; Electrical Products Group.
3. Ideal Industries, Inc.
4. ILSCO.
5. O-Z/Gedney Co.; a business of the EGS Electrical Group.
6. Raco, Inc.; Division of Hubbell.
7. Superior Grounding Systems, Inc.
8. Thomas & Betts, Electrical.

2.2 GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

A. For insulated conductors, comply with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors."

B. Equipment Grounding Conductors: Insulated with green-colored insulation.

C. Bare, Solid-Copper Conductors: ASTM B 3.

D. Connectors: Comply with IEEE 837 and UL 467; listed for use for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and connected items.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. In raceways, use insulated equipment grounding conductors.

B. Equipment Grounding Conductors: Comply with NFPA 70, Article 250, for types, sizes, and quantities of equipment grounding conductors, unless specific types, larger sizes, or more conductors than required by NFPA 70 are indicated.

1. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors in feeders, branch circuits and receptacle circuits.
2. Signal and Communication Systems: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication systems, provide No. 6 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location. Terminate in junction box with 6” pigtail.

C. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

D. Connections: Make connections so galvanic action or electrolysis possibility is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.

1. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
2. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
3. Make aluminum-to-galvanized steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
4. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
5. Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: For No. 8 AWG and larger, use pressure-type grounding lugs. No. 10 AWG and smaller grounding conductors may be terminated with winged pressure-type connectors.
6. Non-contact Metal Raceway Terminations: If metallic raceways terminate at metal housings without mechanical and electrical connection to housing, terminate each conduit with a grounding bushing. Connect grounding bushings with a bare grounding conductor to grounding bus or terminal in housing. Bond electrically non-continuous conduits at entrances and exits with grounding bushings and bare grounding conductors, unless otherwise indicated.

7. Tighten screws and bolts for grounding and bonding connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Provide information on each support.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.

2. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
3. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
4. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by [NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69 Spring-tension clamps.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet anchorage requirements.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

B. See Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" for supports, anchors, and identification products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For raceways, wireways and fittings, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.

2.2 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Manufacturers:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
3. Electri-Flex Co.
4. Grinnell Co./Tyco International; Allied Tube and Conduit Div.
5. LTV Steel Tubular Products Company.
6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
7. O-Z Gedney; Unit of General Signal.
8. Wheatland Tube Co.

B. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.

C. IMC: ANSI C80.6.

D. EMT and Fittings: ANSI C80.3.

1. Fittings: Compression type.

E. Colored EMT: ANSI C80.3.

1. Fittings: Compression type.
2. Color: Conduit shall be factory galvanized with pigmented coating. Color shall match Wake County standard.

F. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.

G. Fittings: NEMA FB 1; compatible with conduit and tubing materials.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Emerson/General Signal; Appleton Electric Company.
3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Co.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell, Inc.; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co
6. O-Z/Gedney; Unit of General Signal.
7. RACO; Division of Hubbell, Inc.
8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet-PLM Division.
10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Co.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary

B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

D. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

E. Cast-Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

F. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous hinge cover and flush latch.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.

G. See drawings for additional specifications.

2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: For raceway, enclosure, or cabinet components, provide manufacturer's standard galvanized with pigmented coating for factory-assembled surface raceways, enclosures, and cabinets before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Indoors:

1. Exposed: Colored EMT. Color to be selected by Engineer.
2. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC.
3. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.

B. Minimum Raceway Size: Interior - 3/4-inch trade size. Exterior – 1-inch trade size.

C. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

D. Outdoors:

1. Underground or Exposed: Rigid Steel with Threaded fittings.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

B. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."

C. Install temporary closures to prevent foreign matter from entering raceways.

D. Make bends and offsets so ID is not reduced. Keep legs of bends in same plane and keep straight legs of offsets parallel, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Install exposed raceways parallel or at right angles to nearby surfaces or structural members and follow surface contours as much as possible.

1. Run parallel or banked raceways together on common supports.
2. Make parallel bends in parallel or banked runs. Use factory elbows only where elbows can be installed parallel; otherwise, provide field bends for parallel raceways.

F. Join raceways with fittings designed and approved for that purpose and make joints tight.

1. Use insulating bushings to protect conductors.

G. Terminations:

1. Where raceways are terminated with locknuts and bushings, align raceways to enter squarely and install locknuts with dished part against box. Use two locknuts, one inside and one outside box.
2. Where raceways are terminated with threaded hubs, screw raceways or fittings tightly into hub so end bears against wire protection shoulder. Where chase nipples are used, align raceways so coupling is square to box; tighten chase nipple so no threads are exposed.

H. Flexible Connections: Use maximum of 72 (1830 mm) inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures; for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for all motors. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations. Install separate ground conductor across flexible connections.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes electrical identification materials and devices required to comply with ANSI C2, NFPA 70, OSHA standards, and authorities having jurisdiction.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

B. Schedule of Nomenclature: An index of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and NFPA 70 for color-coding.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RACEWAY AND CABLE LABELS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1, Table 3, for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.

1. Color: Black letters on orange field.
2. Legend: Indicates voltage and service.
3. Other colors excepted when required.

B. Adhesive Labels: Preprinted, flexible, self-adhesive vinyl with legend overlaminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating.

C. Colored Adhesive Tape: Self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide (0.08 mm thick by 25 to 51 mm wide).

D. Tape Markers: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive, wraparound type with preprinted numbers and letters.

2.2 NAMEPLATES AND SIGNS

A. Safety Signs: Comply with 29 CFR, Chapter XVII, Part 1910.145.

B. Engraved Plastic Nameplates and Signs: Engraving stock, melamine plastic laminate, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.

1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.

C. Fasteners for Nameplates and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or No. 10/32, stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, one-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength: 50 lb (22.3 kg) minimum.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: According to color-coding.

B. Paint: Formulated for the type of surface and intended use.

1. Primer for Galvanized Metal: Single-component acrylic vehicle formulated for galvanized surfaces.
2. Primer for Concrete Masonry Units: Heavy-duty-resin block filler.
3. Primer for Concrete: Clear, alkali-resistant, binder-type sealer.
4. Enamel: Silicone-alkyd or alkyd urethane as recommended by primer manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Identification Materials and Devices: Install at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

B. Lettering, Colors, and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, colors, and other designations with corresponding designations in the Contract Documents or with those required by codes and standards. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

C. Sequence of Work: If identification is applied to surfaces that require finish, install identification after completing finish work.

D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before applying.

E. Install painted identification according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Clean surfaces of dust, loose material, and oily films before painting.
2. Prime surfaces using type of primer specified for surface.
3. Apply one intermediate and one finish coat of enamel.

F. All conduit shall be painted. Color shall match Wake County standard.

G. Color Raceways:

1. The following colors should be used for the systems listed below:

a. 277/480 Volt System: Color shall match Wake County standard.
b. 120/208 Volt System: Color shall match Wake County standard.

H. Circuit Identification Labels on Boxes: Install labels externally.

1. Junction Boxes: Pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive plastic label on cover.
2. Labeling Legend: Permanent, waterproof listing of panel and circuit number or equivalent.

I. Color-Coding of Secondary Phase Conductors: Use the following colors for service, feeder and branch-circuit phase conductors:

1. 208/120-V Conductors:

a. Phase A: Black.
b. Phase B: Red.
c. Phase C: Blue.

2. 480/277-V Conductors:

a. Phase A: Brown.
b. Phase B: Orange.
c. Phase C: Yellow.

3. Factory apply color the entire length of conductors, except the following field-applied, color-coding methods may be used instead of factory-coded wire for sizes larger than No. 10 AWG:

a. Colored, pressure-sensitive plastic tape in half-lapped turns for a distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Use 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide tape in colors specified. Adjust tape bands to avoid obscuring cable identification markings.

b. Colored cable ties applied in groups of three ties of specified color to each wire at each terminal or splice point starting 3 inches (76 mm) from the terminal and spaced 3 inches (76 mm) apart. Apply with a special tool or pliers, tighten to a snug fit, and cut off excess length.

J. Equipment Identification Labels: Engraved plastic laminate. Install on each unit of equipment, including central or master unit of each system. This includes power, lighting, communication, signal, and alarm systems, unless units are specified with their own self-explanatory identification. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high lettering on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high. Use white lettering on black field. Apply labels for each unit of the following categories of equipment using mechanical fasteners:

1. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
2. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
3. Disconnect switches.
4. Control devices.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 262200 - DRY-TYPE TRANSFORMERS (600 V AND LESS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1500 kVA:

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each product indicated. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with IEEE C 57.12.91.

C. Energy-Efficient Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger: Certified as meeting NEMA TP 1, Class 1 efficiency levels when tested according to NEMA TP 2.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cutler-Hammer.
2. GE Electrical Distribution & Control.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D/Groupe Schneider NA.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.

B. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.

C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices, except for taps.

1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
2. Coil Material: Copper.

2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

A. Comply with NEMA ST 20, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.

B. Cores: One leg per phase.

C. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.

1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.
2. Finish: Comply with NEMA 250 for "Indoor Corrosion Protection."
3. Finish Color: Gray.

D. Insulation Class: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 150 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.

E. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and four 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.91.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install floor-mounting transformers level on concrete bases. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit and 4 inches (100 mm) high. 2500 psi concrete.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors."

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 5 percent. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.

END OF SECTION 262200

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes distribution panelboards and lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Submittal shall include the following:

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
8. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

A. Enclosures: Surface-mounted cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.

2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
4. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.

B. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.

C. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
3. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.

D. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

E. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit

2.2 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

B. Mains: Circuit breaker.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.3 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
    c. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, store and install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407 and NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

C. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

D. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

E. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

F. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads and incorporating Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Duplex receptacles.
2. Single-pole snap switches.
3. Occupancy sensing switches.
4. Device wall plates.
5. Floor-mounted, Recessed Metal Raceway Multi-outlet Assemblies

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Wiring Devices:

a. Bryant Electric, Inc./Hubbell Subsidiary.

b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
c. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.

2.2 RECEPTACLES

A. Straight-Blade-Type Receptacles: 5-20R heavy-duty, comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, DSCC W-C-596G, and UL 498. Hospital grade. Tamper resistant.

B. GFCI Receptacles: Straight blade, non-feed-through type, Heavy-Duty grade, with integral NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R duplex receptacle; complying with UL 498 and UL 943. Design units for installation in a 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) deep outlet box without an adapter.

2.3 SWITCHES

A. Single- and Double-Pole Switches: 20 amp rated, comply with DSCC W-C-896F and UL 20.

B. Snap Switches: Heavy-Duty grade, quiet type, minimum 20 amp rated.

2.4 OCCUPANCY SENSING SWITCHES

A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch or ceiling mount occupancy sensor, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
3. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA fluorescent at 120 V and 800-W incandescent.

B. Ceiling-mounted Sensor:

1. Solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.
2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 30 minutes.
3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
5. Mounting:

a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.

c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.

C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling

D. Wall-Switch Sensor with Built-in Dimmer:

1. General: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox, using hardwired connection.
2. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
5. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
6. Voltage: Dual voltage - 120 and 277 V.
7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 20 minutes.
8. Dimmer: Zero-10 volt wall switch. The device shall fit in a standard single gang switch box. Devise allows the user to increase or decrease the lighting level via 0-10 Vdc output. Device shall be compatible with drives and controller. DIP switch settings enable a variety of control options. Buttons or slide control.
9. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA ballast or LED load at 120 V, 1200-VA ballast or LED load at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.

E. Ceiling-mounted Sensor:

1. Solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.
2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 20 minutes.
3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.

5. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard octagon box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2 inch (13 mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.

F. Ceiling-mounted Sensor with Wall-Mounted Dimmer:

1. Solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.
2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 30 minutes.
3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
5. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard octagon box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2 inch (13 mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
    d. Power Pack: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard octagon box.

6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
8. Connections: RJ-45 communications outlet with cable between the power pack and Dimmer.
9. Dimmer: Zero-10 volt wall switch. The device shall fit in a standard single gang switch box. Devise allows the user to increase or decrease the lighting level via 0-10 Vdc output. Device shall be compatible with drives and controller. DIP switch settings enable a variety of control options.

2.5 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished 304 stainless steel.

3. Material for Exterior Wet Locations: Spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for service use in "wet locations."

2.6 FLOOR-MOUNTED, RECESSED METAL RACEWAY MULTI-OUTLET ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Two-piece flush-mounted, in-floor, metal raceway, with factory-wired multi-outlet harness, for installation flush in floor or under floor finish.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.

C. General Characteristics:

1. Reference Standards: UL 5 for exposed power raceway and fittings, UL 5C for exposed communications raceway and fittings, and UL 2024 for communications cable routing.
2. Provide separate paths for management of telecommunications and power cables.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer designed for use as complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.

E. Floor-Mounted, Recessed Metal Raceway Power and Communications Multi-Outlet Assembly:

1. Options:

a. Load-Bearing Capacity: 1000 lb (450 kg).
b. Box Type: on grade.
c. Box Capacity: 6 gang double sides. Modular.
d. Box accessories: Complete with all components needed for initial installation.
e. Material: Steel, with manufacturer's epoxy coated finish for concrete floor.
f. Power Outlets: Flush type with one receptacle.
g. Power Wiring: Single circuit.
h. Voice and Data Communication Outlets: space for two RJ-45 jacks.
i. Cover: Surface Style cover with solid lid.
j. Cover Finish: Brushed aluminum.
k. Basis of Design: Legrand, “Evolution Series 6 gang floor box.”

2.7 EXTERIOR WEATHERPROOF COVERS

A. Lockable hinged metal gray cover. Similar to Taymac MX3200 or engineer approved equal.

2.8 FINISHES

A. Color:

1. Wiring Devices: Gray, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install devices and assemblies level, plumb, and square with building lines.

B. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical, and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

C. Remove wall plates and protect devices and assemblies during painting.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served.
2. Light switches: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served.
3. All labels used to mark cables, faceplates, patch panels and distribution hardware shall be of the self-laminating type, and shall be machine-printed with black ink on clear background. Labels will have pressure sensitive, permanent acrylic-type adhesive. All labels will be uniform in size using the same font size on letters and numbers throughout. Label printing will be 1/8” minimum in block style.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing wiring devices and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for proper polarity, ground continuity, and compliance with requirements.

B. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Enclosures.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, accessory, and component indicated. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Provide Wiring Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.

2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
4. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.2 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install fuses in fusible devices.

C. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

D. Enclosed switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 265100 - INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Interior lighting fixtures with lamps and ballasts.
2. Emergency lighting units.
3. Exit signs.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture scheduled, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes. Indicate dimensions, weights, methods of field assembly, components, features, and accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. FMG Compliance: Fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FMG.

D. NFPA 101 Compliance: Comply with visibility and luminance requirements for exit signs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.

2.2 LIGHTING FIXTURES

A. Fixtures shall be equal to those scheduled on the drawings.

2.3 EXIT SIGNS

A. General: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:

1. Lamps for AC Operation: Light-emitting diodes, 70,000 hours minimum of rated lamp life.

C. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.

1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type with special warranty.
2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
3. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.

2.4 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.

1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

2.5 FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" for channel and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2 inch (13 mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.

C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2 inch (13 mm) steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.

D. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated.

E. Rod Hangers: 3/16 inch (5 mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Fixtures: Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls. Install lamps in each fixture.

B. Independent Support for Fixtures in or on Grid-Type Suspended Ceilings:

1. Install a minimum of four ceiling support system rods or wires for each fixture. Locate at each fixture corner.
2. Support Clips: Fasten to fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application or sheet metal screws.
3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4 inch (20 mm) metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
4. Install at least one independent support rod or two (2) wires from structure to a tab on recessed down lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
5. As directed by the Electrical Inspector.

END OF SECTION 265100

SECTION 283111 – DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawing and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes fire alarm systems.

B. Definitions:

1. FACP: Fire alarm control panel (existing).
2. LED: Light-emitting diode.
3. Definitions in NFPA 72 apply to fire alarm terms used in this Section.

C. System Description:

1. Existing, noncoded, addressable system; multiplexed signal transmission dedicated to fire alarm service only.

D. Performance Requirements:

1. See fire alarm system input/output matrix on drawings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of new product device indicated to match existing fire alarm system equipment.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Batteries: Size calculations.
2. Amplifiers: Size calculations.
3. Circuits: Voltage drop calculations.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

D. Operation and maintenance data.

E. Documentation:

1. Approval and Acceptance: Provide the "Record of Completion" form according to NFPA 72 to Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Record of Completion Documents: Provide the "Permanent Records" according to NFPA 72 to Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction. Format of the written sequence of operation shall be the optional input/output matrix.

    a. Hard copies on paper to Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Provide computer generated riser with all components, cables, and conduit for complete operation.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Existing “Edwards” FACP and Equipment:

    a. Match existing devices similar to model number specified and compatible with existing equipment.
    b. All equipment provided shall be UL listed to work with the existing Edwards equipment.

2. Wire and Cable:

    a. Match existing.

3. Audible and Visual Signals:

    a. Similar to existing devices.

2.2 FACP

A. General Description:

1. The fire alarm control panel is existing “Edwards” system to be maintained. Programming of system shall be performed or shall be supervised by Schneider Electric.
2. A digital and printed copy of the program will be provided to the contractor.
3. After programming is complete, installed and operating, the Contractor will provide the Owner with a digital and printed copy of the program.
4. All cost and fees associated with Schneider’s involvement is the contractor’s responsibility.

B. Circuits:

1. Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A, Style 6, match existing.
2. Notification-Appliance Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A, Style Z, match existing.
3. Actuation of alarm notification appliances and annunciation shall occur within 10 seconds after the activation of an initiating device.
4. Electrical monitoring for the integrity of wiring external to the FACP for mechanical equipment shutdown and magnetic door-holding circuits is not required, provided a break in the circuit will cause doors to close and mechanical equipment to shut down.

C. Notification-Appliance Circuit: Existing to be maintained.

2.3 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. Description: Equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.

1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated speaker; audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly.
2. Similar to Edwards Model # WG4 Series.

a. Candela ratings as shown on drawings.
b. Ceiling type units as shown on drawing.
c. Device installation ratings shall match installation method.

2.4 BOOSTER POWER SUPPLY (BPS)

A. Booster power supply:

1. Similar to Edwards model BPS10A.

2.5 WIRE AND CABLE

A. Wire and cable for fire alarm systems shall be UL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760. Match existing.

B. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation. Match existing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Audible/Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.

B. All strobes shall be synchronized.

C. Review existing battery loads and provide additional capacity for the new loads indicated with a spare capacity of 25 percent. Provide calculations with shop drawings.

D. Review existing voice amplifier loads and provide additional capacity for the new loads indicated with a spare capacity of 25 percent. Provide calculations with shop drawings.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Install wiring according to the following:

1. NECA 1.
2. TIA/EIA 568-A.
3. As required by manufacturer.

B. Wiring Method: All fire alarm wiring shall be in EMT metal raceway.

1. Fire alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system shall be installed to match existing system.

C. Wiring Method:

1. Cables and raceways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
2. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.

D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

F. Color and style of signal and initiating devices shall be same as devices on other floors.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Division 26 Section “Identification of Electrical Systems.”

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Before requesting final approval of the installation, submit a written statement using the form for Record of Completion shown in NFPA 72.
2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection listed in NFPA 72. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Visual Inspection: Conduct a visual inspection before any testing. Use as-built drawings and system documentation for the inspection. Identify improperly located, damaged, or nonfunctional equipment, and correct before beginning tests.
4. Testing: Follow procedure and record results complying with requirements in NFPA 72.
5. Detectors that are outside their marked sensitivity range shall be replaced.
6. Test and Inspection Records: Prepare according to NFPA 72, including demonstration of sequences of operation by using the matrix-style form in Appendix A in NFPA 70.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the fire alarm system, appliances, and devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures.”

END OF SECTION 283111

SECTION 311000 – SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
2. Removing existing vegetation.
3. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
4. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities
5. Temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for partial demolition of buildings or structures.
2. Section 312500 “Sedimentation and Erosion Control” for stormwater sediment control pollution.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil and is the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.

D. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.

E. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings defined by a circle concentric with each tree with a radius 1.5 times the diameter of the drip line unless otherwise indicated on plans.

F. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

A. Cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing
   1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or videotape.
   2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.

B. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
   1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Street, alley, driveway or any access way to be close shall be requested at least ten (10) days prior to the date for the desired closing.
   3. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by the Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
   4. Provide signage to designate vehicular and pedestrian detours as necessary in accordance with MUTCD and North Carolina Department of Transportation Practices and Standards.

B. Utility Locator Service: Notify ULOCO for area where Project is located before site clearing.

C. Do not commence site clearing operations until a Land Disturbance Permit is obtained from NCDENR and until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and tree protection measures are in place.

D. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones and stream buffers:
   1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
   2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
   3. Foot traffic.
   4. Erection of sheds or structures.
   5. Impoundment of water.
   6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
   7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

E. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.

F. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

G. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the topsoil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Section 312000 "Earthwork."

1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.

B. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
   1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of City of Raleigh and NCDENR.

B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.

C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.

D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

A. General: Protect trees and plants remaining on-site.

B. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Project Landscape Architect.

3.4 EXISTING UTILITIES

A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed or abandoned in place.
   1. Coordinate with Owner prior to shutting off any utilities.
   2. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.

B. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.

C. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify the Owner and Engineer not less than fourteen (14) days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
   2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Engineer's written permission.

D. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.

E. Removal of underground utilities is included in Sections 221133 and 312333.

3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
   1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
   2. Grind down stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
   3. Use only hand methods for grubbing within protection zones.
   4. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.

B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated
   1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.

B. Strip topsoil to depth of 6 inches in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials
   1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.
   1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 96 inches.
   2. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
   3. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
   4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

3.7 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction.

B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
   1. Unless existing full-depth joints are near or coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.

3.8 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

B. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 – EARTHWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Except as otherwise stipulated in this specification, all earthwork shall be performed in accordance with Section 225 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition. The work covered by this section consists of the excavation, placement, and compaction or satisfactory disposal of all materials encountered within the limits of the work necessary for the construction of the project in conformity with the lines, grades, and cross sections shown on the plans or established by the Engineer.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, turf and grasses, and plants.
2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
3. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
4. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
5. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
6. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
7. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation” for recording pre-excavation and earth moving progress.
2. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, and support facilities; also for temporary site fencing if not in another Section.
3. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
4. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
5. Section 312333 “Trenching for Utilities” for installing underground electrical utilities and buried electrical structures.
6. Section 312500 “Sediment and Erosion Control” for wind and stormwater sediment control prevention.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.

1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.

1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices.
2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.

G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:

1. Excavation of Footings, Trenches, and Pits: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch- wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,700 lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,400 lbf with extra-long reach boom; measured according to SAE J-1179.
2. Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 230-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 47,992-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.

I. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material 3/4 cu. yd. or more in volume that exceed a standard penetration resistance of 100 blows/2 inches when tested by a geotechnical testing agency, according to ASTM D 1586.

J. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

K. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.

L. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

M. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:

1. Geotextiles.

2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
3. Geofoam.
4. Warning tapes.

B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:

1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches.
2. Warning Tape: 12 inches long; of each color.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

D. Material Test Reports: For each on-site soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:

1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487.
2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 and ASTM D 3740 for testing indicated.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Utility Locator Service: Notify “ULOCO” for area where Project is located before beginning earth moving operations.

C. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures, specified in Section 312500 "Sediment and Erosion Control" are in place.

D. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:

1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
3. Foot traffic.
4. Erection of sheds or structures.
5. Impoundment of water.
6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

E. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.

F. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups SM, SC, ML, and CL according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

1. Compacted to not less than 95% of the Standard Proctor maximum dry density except under building pads and within final foot of pavement areas where this requirement should be increased to 98% of the Standard Proctor maximum.

C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.

1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.

D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.

I. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.

J. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate.

K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
2. Grab Tensile Strength: 157 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
3. Sewn Seam Strength: 142 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
4. Tear Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
5. Puncture Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
7. Permittivity: 0.1 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
8. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

B. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
2. Grab Tensile Strength: 247 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
3. Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
4. Tear Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
5. Puncture Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
7. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
8. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting**, low-density**, flowable concrete material to be non-excavatable in accordance with 340-2 “NCDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Standards”, 2012.

B. Produce low-density, controlled low-strength material with the following physical properties:

1. As-Cast Unit Weight: 36 to 42 lb/cu. ft. at point of placement, when tested according to ASTM C 138/C 138M.
2. Compressive Strength: 140 psi, when tested according to ASTM C 495.

C. Produce conventional-weight, controlled low-strength material with 140-psi compressive strength when tested according to ASTM C 495.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth moving operations.

B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth moving operations.

C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.

1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Architect. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.

1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.

a. Intermittent drilling; blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.

2. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock. Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:

a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
b. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
c. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
d. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
e. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.

1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.

1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.

C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.

1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
3. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
4. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

D. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 4 inches deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.

1. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

E. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.
3. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 311000 “Site Clearing” Part 3.3 "Tree and Plant Protection."

3.7 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

A. Notify Project Landscape Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.

B. If Project Landscape Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.

C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired [and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Project Landscape Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices.

E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.8 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi, may be used when approved by Project Landscape Architect.

1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Project Landscape Architect.

3.9 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.10 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:

1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, damp proofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
4. Removing concrete formwork.
5. Removing trash and debris.
6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 Section “Cast-in-Place Concrete”

D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.

F. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material and satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit.

1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

G. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

H. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.

I. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.

J. Install detectable warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs. Detectable warning tape shall be minimum 6” bury depth below finished grade.

3.12 SOIL FILL

A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:

1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to Standard Proctor:

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 98 percent.
2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
3. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 95 percent.

3.15 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:

1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.16 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

A. Place subbase course and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course under pavements and walks as follows:

1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
3. Shape subbase course and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
4. Place subbase course and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
5. Place subbase course and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
6. Compact subbase course and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 98 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.17 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:

1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
2. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 98 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.

D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:

1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.

E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.19 PROTECTION

A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Project Landscape Architect; reshape and recompact.

C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.20 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

SECTION 312333 - TRENCHING FOR UTILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

A. Provide labor, equipment, and material to perform required excavating, backfilling, and compacting for utilities and related structures as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings. Work shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
   1. Survey staking as required for construction.
   2. Protection of existing improvements.
   3. Location of existing utilities.
   4. Use of explosives.
   5. Dewatering.
   6. Excavating, backfilling, and compacting for utilities.
   7. Installation of warning / identification tape and tracer wire.
   8. Borrow material.
   9. Disposal of surplus material.
   10. Demolition and removal of existing structures.
   11. Soil Testing.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. The following Sections have work that is directly related to this Section. This does not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility of proper coordination of all the work:

Section 221113	Water Distribution System
Section 311000	Site Clearing
Section 312500	Sedimentation and Erosion Control
Section 329200	Turf and Grasses

B. The City of Raleigh Public Utilities Handbook, as it relates to this Section, shall be used in conjunction with this specification. All aspects of the project construction shall conform to this handbook unless specifically noted otherwise herein. It is the Contractors responsibility to obtain this document from the City's Public Utilities Department. It can be obtained by phone at 919-857-4540 or on the internet at Public Utilities Handbook | Raleighnc.gov under departments and public utilities.

C. In the event of a discrepancy between this specification and the Handbook, the Contractor shall use the more stringent of the two documents. Notify the Owner immediately of the discrepancy.

1.3 REFERENCED STANDARDS

A. The latest revision, at the time of bidding, of the publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.
   1. N.C. Department of Transportation - Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures (NCDOT).
   2. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM)
      a. D698 Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 5.5-lb (2.49 Kg) Rammer and 12-inch Drop (Standard Proctor).

b. D1556 Density of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method.
c. D1586 Penetration Test and Spilt-Barrel Sampling of Soils.
d. D2049 Test for Relative Density of Cohesionless Soils.
e. D2216 Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures.
f. D2487 Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes.
g. D3839 Standard Guide for Underground Installation of "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe and Fittings.

3. American Water Works Association (AWWA)
4. Fiberglass Pipe Design Manual of Water Supply Practices M45
5. PVC Pipe Design and Installation Manual for Water Supply Practices M23
6. Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings Manual for Water Supply Practices M41

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: A specified material used in filling the excavated trench and placed at a specified degree of compaction.

B. Materials: Materials listed herein include processed materials plus the soil classifications listed under the Unified Soil Classification System, (USCS) (Method D2487 and Practice D2488). The soil materials are grouped into five broad categories according to their suitability for this application.

C. Class I: Angular, 6 to 40-mm (1/4 to 1-1/2-in), graded stone, including a number of fill materials that have regional significance such as coral, slag, cinders, crushed stone, and crushed shell.

D. Class II: Coarse sands and gravels with maximum particle size of 40 mm (1-1/2 in.), including various graded sands and gravels containing small percentages of fines, generally granular and noncohesive, either wet or dry. Soil Types GW, GP, SW, and SP are included in this class.

E. Class III: Fine sand and clayey gravels, including fine sands, sand-clay mixtures, and gravel-clay mixtures. Soil Types GM, GC, SM, and SC are included in this class.

F. Class IV: Silt, silty clays, and clays, including inorganic clays and silts of medium to high plasticity and liquid limits. Soil Types MH, ML, CH and CL are included in this class. These materials shall not be used for bedding, haunching, or initial backfill.

G. Class V: This class includes the organic soils OL, OH, and PT as well as soils containing frozen earth, debris, rock larger than 40 mm (1 1/2 in.) in diameter, and other foreign materials. These materials shall not be used for bedding, haunching, or initial backfill.

H. Backfill Zones: Each backfill zone shall extend the full width of the trench bottom.

I. Foundation: Extending down from the bottom of bedding zone as defined below.

J. Pipe Embedment
1. Bedding: Extending from 4 inches below the pipe bottom to the pipe bottom for 30-inch diameter and smaller and 6 inches below the pipe bottom for pipes larger than 30 inches in diameter.
2. Haunching: Extending from the bedding (bottom of the pipe) to the pipe spring line.

3. Initial Backfill: Extending from the haunching (pipe spring line) to 1 foot above the top of the pipe.
4. Final Backfill: Extending from the initial backfill to the finish ground elevation.

K. Laying Conditions:
1. Type 1: Flat bottom trench with loose backfill.
2. Type 2: Flat bottom trench with backfill lightly consolidated to centerline of pipe.
3. Type 3: Pipe bedded in 4 inches minimum of loose soil and backfill lightly consolidated to top of pipe.
4. Type 4: Pipe bedded on Class I material to 1/8 pipe diameter (4 inch minimum) Backfill compacted to top of pipe a minimum of 80 percent of standard proctor.
5. Type 5: Pipe bedded in compacted Class I material to pipe centerline with 4-inch minimum under pipe. Backfill to top of pipe with Class I, II, or III and compact to 95 percent of standard proctor.

L. Compaction: Process of mechanically stabilizing a material by increasing its density at a controlled moisture condition. "Degree of compaction" shall be expressed as a percentage of the maximum dry density obtained by the test procedure presented in ASTM D698 (Standard Proctor).

M. Excavation: The removal of soil or rock to obtain a specified depth or elevation.

N. Lift: Layer of soil placed on top of a previously prepared or placed soil.

O. Rock: Solid, homogeneous material which cannot be removed without the systematic drilling and blasting exceeding 1 cubic yard in volume. Material having a standard penetration rate less than 1-inch of penetration over 50 blows across continuous materials is defined as “rock.” Rock is further defined as materials and obstructions encountered that cannot be practically excavated with a large track mounted backhoe, such as a CAT-325 or larger, equipped with a 42-inch rock bucket and new rock teeth. Practical excavation is defined as the ability to remove at least 10 cubic yards during one (1) hour of continuous digging. Removal of "hard material" will not be considered rock excavation because of intermittent drilling and blasting that is performed merely to increase production.

P. Pipe Springline: A line running horizontally through the center of the pipe.

Q. Topsoil: Natural, friable soil, representative of productive soils in the vicinity of the site. Topsoil shall be free from roots, stones larger than 1 inch, objectionable weed seeds, toxic substances, and materials that hinder grading, planting, and maintenance operations.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 013300, Submittal Procedures:
1. Catalog Data: Submit manufacturer's standard drawings or catalog cuts for the following. Clearly indicate equipment to be furnished for the Project including options to be provided.
2. Warning / Identification tape.
3. Geofabric for trench stone wrap.
4. Test Reports: Submit for the following:
5. Moisture-density relations of soils.
6. Field moisture content.
7. Soil classification.

8. In-place field density.
9. Geotechnical engineer's daily field reports.
10. Third-party test reports for pre-construction condition assessments, crack monitoring and vibration monitoring per Section 312000, Earthwork.

1.6 PRODUCTS

A. Stone
1. Class I material shall be #67 or #78M stone in accordance with NCDOT specifications Section 1005, General Requirements for Aggregate.

B. Warning and Identification Tape
1. Tape shall be a minimum 3-inch wide polyethylene plastic tape manufactured specifically for identification of buried utilities with means of enabling detection by a metal detector to a minimum depth of 3 feet. Tape shall be color coded and continuously imprinted with warning and identification markings in bold black letters to read "CAUTION - BURIED (utility) LINE BELOW." Color and printing shall be permanent, unaffected by moisture or soil and shall be as follows:

Utility	Color	Marking
Reclaimed Water	Purple	Caution – Buried Reclaimed Water Line Below
Sewer	Green	Caution - Buried Gravity Sewer Main Below
		Buried Pressure Sewer Line Below
Water	Blue	Caution – Buried Water Line Below

2. Tape shall be by Blackburn Manufacturing, Joseph G. Pollard Co., or Reef Industries Inc or approved equal.
3. Warning tape shall only be installed for pressure mains constructed of PVC materials.

C. Tracer Wire and Indication Posts
1. All non-ferrous pressure mains shall be provided tracing wire and test ports in such a manner as to be able to properly trace all mains without loss or deterioration of signal or without the transmitted signal migrating off the trace wire.
2. Tracer wire shall be #12 gauge solid (bare) copper and continuous to the greatest extent possible. The tracer wire shall be securely bonded together at all wire joints with an approved industrial crimp connector to provide electrical continuity. It shall be accessible at all tracer wire test ports.
3. Test ports with marker posts shall be located at bends and no further than 500 feet apart. The test port shall consist of a standard valve box (as specified in Section 02530), shall be H-20 traffic load rated flush with grade in non-paved areas and flush with final asphalt or concrete pavement elevation and shall be located over the downstream or outgoing main. The valve box shall be equipped with a lid stamped “TS” and painted blue for water mains. At each test port, a loop of wire shall be brought up and looped inside the box. The loop of wire inside the box shall be a minimum of three feet.

D. Tracer Wire for Nonmetallic Water Service Pipe
1. Where nonmetallic water service pipe is allowed, all new nonmetallic water service pipes shall be provided tracing wire in such a manner as to be able to properly trace all mains and service laterals without loss or deterioration of signal or without the transmitted signal migrating off the trace wire.

2. Tracing shall be #12 gauge solid (bare) copper and continuous to the greatest extent possible. The tracer wire shall be securely bonded together at all wire joints with an approved industrial crimp connector to provide electrical continuity.
3. The meter box at or near the right of way and or easement shall serve as the test port with the tracing wire brought up into the meter box with the service lateral and looped in the meter box. The loop wire inside the meter box shall be a minimum of three feet.
4. For new nonmetallic water service laterals where no tracer is installed on the main, provide an anode (1 pound minimum) for the tracing wire termination at the point of the new tap on the main.
5. For nonmetallic service lateral installations less than 8 feet, the tracing wire shall be attached to the pipe. For nonmetallic service lateral installations deeper than 8 feet, the tracing wire shall be installed at a depth of 7 to 8 feet. For nonmetallic service laterals that are installed in encasement pipe, the tracing wire shall be routed through the encasement pipe.
6. For nonmetallic service lateral that installed by directional drilling, the tracer wire shall be attached to and pulled through with the service pipe.
7. The wire shall be protected from damage during the execution of the work. No breaks or cuts in the tracer wire shall be permitted. Spliced connections shall only be allowed between the main liner tracer wire (if applicable) and the lateral tracer wire. Industrial crimps shall be used to provide electrical continuity and the crimps shall be similar metal to eliminate galvanic corrosion.
8. Contractor shall perform a continuity test on all tracer wire in the presence of the Owner or Owner's representative. If the tracer wire is found to be not continuous after testing, Contractor shall repair or replace the failed segment of wire at his own expense.
9. Copper clad steel tracer wire (#12) as manufactured by Copperhead Industries, or approved equal is an approved alternative to #12 bare solid copper tracer wire.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 PROJECT SAFETY

A. Contractor is responsible for Project safety.

B. Perform work in conformance with applicable State and Federal safety regulations including, but not limited, to the following:

C. North Carolina Safety and Health Standards for the Construction Industry (29CFR 1926 Subpart P and U).

D. NC OSHA Industry Guide No. 14, Excavations.

E. NC OSHA Industry Guide No. 20, Crane Safety.

F. Provide barriers, warning lights, and other protective devices at excavations as necessary for safety of workers and the public.

G. Provide sloping of bank, shoring, sheeting, or other means of maintaining the stability of the trench in accordance with the requirements of the Associated Contractor's Manual of Accident Prevention OSHA, Part 1926.P.

H. In trench depths of 22 feet or greater, provide certification sealed by Structural Engineer certifying that trench box, sheeting and shoring meets OSHA requirements.

2.2 VIDEO AND PHOTOGRAPHIC INSPECTIONS

A. Provide pre and post construction video inspections of the project area in accordance with Section 01320, Video and Photographic Documentation.

B. Submittal shall be in accordance with Section 01330, Submittal Procedures.

2.3 PROTECTION OF UNDERGROUND FACILITIES

A. Refer to paragraph 4.04 of the General Conditions and SC-4.04.A.2 of the Supplementary Conditions concerning the protection of Underground Facilities.

B. Prior to beginning any excavation work or boring, the Contractor shall, through field investigations, determine any conflicts or interferences between existing utilities and new utilities to be constructed under this project. This determination shall be based on the actual locations, elevations, slopes, etc., of existing utilities as determined in the field investigations, and locations, elevation, slope, etc. of new utilities as shown on the Drawings. If an interference exists, the Contractor shall bring it to the attention of the Engineer as soon as possible. If the Engineer agrees that an interference exists that was not apparent from the Contract Documents, or could not have been identified during a site visit during bidding, he shall modify the design as required. Additional costs to the Contractor for this change shall be processed through a Change Order as detailed elsewhere in these Contract Documents. An interference shall be defined for these purposes as a conflict with an existing utility or structure that prevents the proposed utility from being installed where shown or specified after existing utilities and structures are adequately supported by the Contractor. In the event the Contractor fails to complete adequate field evaluations to identify conflicts, or bring a potential conflict or interference to the attention of the Engineer prior to beginning excavation work, any actual conflict or interference which does arise during the Project and could have been avoided with diligent utility location efforts shall be corrected by the Contractor, as directed by the Engineer, at no additional expense to the Owner.

C. A change in conditions may be considered due to the location of the existing facilities as allowed in the General Conditions. This does not include the cost for repair of damaged facilities not properly located in advance of construction.

D. Separation distances shall be in accordance with utilities requirements.

2.4 CONSTRUCTION STAKING

A. Provide construction staking as indicated in paragraph 4.05 of the General Conditions. Engineer will only provide electronic design files for Contractor’s surveyor and key reference points and benchmarks as shown on the Drawings.

B. Contractor shall report to Engineer whenever a reference point or property monument is lost or destroyed or requires relocation because of necessary changes in grades or locations. Contractor shall be responsible for the accurate replacement or relocation of such reference points or property monuments by a registered professional surveyor in the State of North Carolina.

2.5 LOCATION OF INSTALLED UTILITIES

A. Contractor shall be responsible for locating contract installed utilities as requested by third parties proposing to dig in the contract area until the date that the entire contract is recommended for final payment by Engineer to Owner.

2.6 WATER CONTROL

A. Prevent surface water from entering the trench.

B. When trench bottom is below the existing ground water table, install a dewatering system to maintain water table a minimum of two (2) feet below trench bottom. Provide personnel experienced in dewatering work at the job site.

C. Maintain dewatering until backfilling has proceeded above the existing ground water level.

D. Dispose of water from dewatering operations in accordance with the North Carolina Sedimentation Pollution Control Act.

E. In no case shall trench water or groundwater be pumped into or allowed to enter the sanitary sewer system.

2.7 EXCAVATING

A. Excavation shall be by open cut, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or specified herein. Other than where specifically indicated on the Drawings, short sections of trench may be tunneled or direct bored with the approval of the Engineer.

B. Stockpile excavated material in such a manner that it will not obstruct the flow of runoff, streams, endanger Work, impair the use or appearance of existing facilities, or be detrimental to the completed Work.

C. Contractor shall segregate excavated material so as to maintain material suitable for backfill separate from material that is unsuitable.

D. Trench dimensions at the pipe embedment and foundation zone, shall be as detailed on the drawings.

E. Shape trench bedding to provide uniform bearing for the full pipe length. Bottom shall be free of protrusions that could cause point loading on pipe. Provide bell holes as required for properly making pipe joint.

F. Do not over excavate. Excavation below grade without approval of Engineer shall be backfilled with Class I material at no additional cost.

G. Undercut soils that become unsatisfactory by construction activity or by being left exposed to the weather shall be replaced with Class I backfill material at no additional cost.

H. Remove shoring, bracing, and sheeting, unless otherwise noted, as the trench is backfilled. Engineer shall have the authority to require that the sheeting be left in place. Once the trench box has been removed to the top of the pipe (or initial backfill zone), the stone shall be

replenished to have the required stone over the pipe for the entire width of the excavation. This includes area displaced by the trench boxes and any voids outside the box.

I. Excavation of trench shall not advance more than 100 feet ahead of the installation. In no case should the excavation extend beyond that which can be backfilled by the end of the workday.

J. Correct unstable soil conditions encountered at trench foundation by the following method:

K. Excavate below grade as approved by Engineer and backfill with Class I material or approved substitute material at unit price bid as indicated in Section 012200, Unit Prices.

L. Rock and Hard Material

M. Excavate rock and hard material to a minimum depth of 6 inches below the pipe. Excavation shall be backfilled with Class I material.

N. Mechanical removal of rock (i.e., no blasting) may be necessary along portions of the project, as noted on the Drawings or as required by the applicable regulatory agencies, where blasting could result in complications with surrounding infrastructure. This method of rock excavation will be used only when approved by the Owner, as the blasting method shall be the typical method.

O. Pressure Lines: Provide a minimum 3 feet of cover, unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

P. Excavate trenches to provide vertical curve chords that will not exceed the pipe manufacturer's recommended joint deflection.

Q. Provide concrete thrust blocks having a compressive strength of 3,000 psi at 28 days at change in horizontal and vertical direction and reduction in the pipe size, unless other restraint systems are indicated otherwise on the Drawings. Cut trench sides vertical and square to receive concrete. Provide bearing area against trench wall as indicated on the Drawings.

R. Utility Structures: Provide a minimum of 9 inches below subgrade and backfill with Class I compacted to 95 percent maximum density. If the soil conditions are found to be unsuitable for structural stability of the structure, Engineer may require additional depth of Class I material. The additional Class I material will be paid for under the appropriate bid item as indicated in the Bid Form.

2.8 BACKFILLING

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with backfill operations based on the following weather conditions:
   1. Temperature must be above freezing and rising.
   2. In windy, hot, or arid conditions with a high rate of evaporation add moisture to the material to maintain the optimum moisture content.
   3. Do not proceed in rain or on saturated subgrade.
   4. Do not place material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost.

B. General
   1. Maintain backfill operation within 100 feet from pipe laying operation.
   2. Backfill trench to existing ground surface with select excavated material at the specified compaction.

3. If excavated material is unsuitable to obtain specified compaction, provide suitable off-site borrow material for backfill as approved by Engineer.
4. Re-excavate trenches improperly compacted. Backfill and compact as specified.
5. Provide appropriate tamping equipment, and water to obtain proper moisture content, to achieve specified compaction of backfill.
6. Conduct operation of heavy equipment above pipe installation in such a manner as to prevent damage to pipe.
7. Install warning / identification tape over utilities. Bury tape one foot below finished grade above the utility.
8. Install tracer wire for non-metallic pressure pipe. Bury tracer wire one foot below finished grade over the pipe. Wire shall be looped into valve boxes and indication posts to allow access for direct contact location.
9. Backfill in pipe embedment zone (bedding, haunching, and initial backfill).
10. Backfill with material as specified below. Material shall be free from objects larger than 2 inches.
11. Where rock and hard material has been excavated below pipe bottom, backfill and compact bedding with Class I material. Class II or III material may be used for bedding with Engineer's approval unless specified otherwise below.
12. Place backfill material to assure placement of material under pipe haunches.
13. Take care during placement and compacting of material to avoid movement of pipe.
14. Place backfill in bedding and haunching zones in 6 inch maximum lifts in traffic areas and 12 inch maximum lifts in non-traffic areas and compact to 90 percent density. Provide backfill material in pipe embedment zone as specified below.
    a. Pressure Lines (Flexible and Rigid Pipe)
        1) Excavation in Class I, Class II, Class III, and stable Class IV soils suitable for bedding, the bedding surface shall provide a firm foundation of uniform density. Backfill with select excavated material.
        2) Excavation in Class V, unstable Class IV soils, running water, and other unstable soil conditions, excavate a minimum of 6 inches below pipe bottom and provide Class I material for bedding and haunch zone. Backfill with Class I, II, or III material in initial backfill.
    b. Final Backfill
        1) Backfill with materials free of stones and debris larger than 6 inches in dimension. Place backfill in lifts not exceeding the thickness and compacted to the minimum density specified below.
    c. Lifts and density:
        1) Undeveloped areas (i.e., forests, fields, and, croplands): Trench may be filled with bulldozer blade provided material fall will not damage pipe. Mound soil over the trench area sufficiently to settle level over time. Degree of compaction shall be 85 percent.
    d. Lawns: Backfill in 12-inch lifts and compact to 90 percent. Top 12 inches shall be free of material with a dimension over 2 inches.
    e. Roads (including Rights-of-way), drives, parking areas (including areas within 20 feet), and adjacent to existing utilities: Backfill in 6 inch lifts compact to 95 percent. Compact the final 8 inches below finished subgrades beneath pavements/sidewalks to at least 100% of the soil’s Standard Proctor maximum dry density within 2% of optimum moisture.
    f. Within 20 feet of foundations: Backfill in 6-inch lifts compacted to 95 percent.
    g. Utility Structures: Bring backfill to grade in even lifts on all sides. Lift depths and compaction densities shall be as specified according to area of installation for pipe above. Backfill against cast-in-place concrete structure only after concrete has attained the specified 28-day compressive strength.

2.9 ANTI-SEEP COLLARS

A. Anti-seep Collars: Provide anti-seep collars to prevent groundwater flow along pipe in wetlands as indicated on the Drawings. Collars shall extend past trench walls and bear against undisturbed soils. Dimension of collars shall be as indicated on the Drawings. Do not place stone in area of anti-seep collars.

B. Concrete Collar: Provide Class B concrete with minimum cement content of 5 sacks per cubic yard (5.5 sacks for angular course aggregate); 6.8 gallons of water per sack water-cement ratio; 2-4 inch slump range; and 28-day strength of 2,500 psi.

C. Clay Collar: Provide clay of medium to high plasticity with a soil classification of CL or CH and a permeability of 10-5 cm / second. Place clay in 6-inch lifts and compact by use of a mechanical hydraulic tamper to 95 percent.

2.10 SOIL TESTING

A. Provide services of a soil-testing firm as specified in Section 014000, Quality Requirements.

B. Testing laboratory soil specialist shall be at the project site, upon request of the Owner, to perform inspection and in-place density testing as specified in Section 312000 Earthwork.

C. Density tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM D-698, Standard Proctor Method.

D. Submit test reports and soil specialist daily logs in accordance with Section 014000, Quality Requirements.

E. Allowance established in Section 012200, Unit Prices, shall be utilized to pay for costs of the initial tests.

F. For each test that fails the compaction requirements, the testing firm, at the direction of the Engineer, shall make two additional tests. Contractor shall pay for cost of additional tests due to failure of compaction/density test.

G. Based on test results, make corrections, adjustments, and modifications of methods, materials, and moisture content for proper trench compaction.

2.11 PAVEMENT REMOVAL AND PATCHING

A. Repair damaged pavement structure.

B. Cut existing pavement for utility installation in straight lines generally parallel to the utility. Properly dispose of removed pavement structure.

C. Extend pavement patch 1 foot beyond each side of trench on firm subgrade. Slope new surface to drain.

D. Asphalt Pavements: Replace asphalt pavement with a pavement structure equal to existing but no less than as detailed on the Drawings or as indicated in the Encroachment Agreement, whichever is more stringent.

E. Concrete Pavements: Replace concrete pavement with pavement structure equal to existing but no less than as detailed as Drawings. Concrete shall be minimum 3,000 psi. When existing concrete joint is within 5 feet of trench remove existing concrete to joint. Provide expansion joint at edge of existing concrete. Surface treatment shall match existing. For overlays, as indicated on Drawings, set new driveway elevation at overlay depth and transition to existing driveway elevation.

F. Curbs, Gutters, and Sidewalks: Replace curbs and gutters, and sidewalks removed or damaged with similar sections to match the existing. Remove to nearest existing joint.

G. Approval of Other Authorities: Pavements under the jurisdiction of the NC Division of Highways shall be subject to the approval of a representative of that Division.

H. For overlays, coordinate final limits with Owner, Engineer, and NC Division of Highways. Perform in accordance with NCDOT Encroachment Agreement.

I. For overlays, as indicated on Drawings, raise existing and new manholes and valve boxes to finished pavement grade. Excavate around top of existing manhole and valve box as necessary. Remove existing top ring, and install new grade ring(s) as necessary. Install existing cover. Raise existing valve box. Provide concrete collar around manhole ring and valve box per details on the Plans.

J. See Section 02700, Pavement and Appurtenances for additional requirements.

2.12 GRADING AND CLEAN-UP:

A. Provide for testing and clean up as soon as practicable, so these operations do not lag far behind the pipe installation. Perform preliminary clean up and grading as soon as backfill is complete.

B. Provide positive drainage of finished grade and drain away from structures. Finished grade shall be reasonably smooth, compacted, free from irregular surface changes and comparable to the adjacent existing ground surface.

C. Seed disturbed areas in accordance with Section 329200, Turf and Grasses.

D. Upon completion of backfilling, remove and properly dispose of excess material and waste. Surplus materials shall be disposed in an Owner-approved facility. A list of approved facilities is available from City of Raleigh Public Utilities Department. The Contractor may submit an alternate facility for Owner approval, prior to utilization, in accordance with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 312333

SECTION 312500 – SEDIMENT AND EROSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 THE REQUIREMENTS

A. Furnish all labor, equipment and materials required to complete all work associated with providing erosion and sedimentation control and other related and incidental work as required to complete the work on the Drawings and specified herein.

B. It is the intent of this Specification that the Contractor conducts the construction activities in such a manner that erosion of disturbed areas and off site sedimentation be prevented.

C. All work under this Contract shall be done in conformance with and subject to the limitations of the North Carolina Rules and Regulations for Erosion and Sedimentation Control as adopted by the North Carolina Sedimentation Control Commission (15 NCAC, Chapter 4).

D. Refer to the Construction Sequence on the Drawings for additional and specific requirements.

E. The Contractor shall develop and implement additional techniques as may be required to minimize erosion and off-site sedimentation and as directed by North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources (NCDENR) and City of Raleigh Stormwater Management staff. The location and extent of erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be revised at each phase of construction that results in a change in either the quantity or direction of surface runoff from constructed areas. Such changes and any additional measures to prevent off-site sedimentation shall be at no cost to the Owner. All deviations from the erosion and sedimentation control provisions shown on the Drawings shall have the prior acceptance of the Engineer.

F. All excavations shall be in conformity with the lines, grades, and cross sections shown on the Drawings or established by the Engineer. Any excavation or disturbance beyond the limits of this project is strictly prohibited without the approval of the Engineer, installation of additional erosion control measures as necessary, and modification of the Land Disturbance Permit and the approved Erosion Control plans.

G. Drawings approved by NCDENR and City of Raleigh Stormwater Management shall be used and followed unless otherwise modified and directed by NCDENR and City of Raleigh. Additional erosion control devices may be required to keep sedimentation on Project site.

H. NCDENR and/or City of Raleigh Stormwater Management may require additional erosion control devices to be installed based on periodic site inspections.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 311000 – Site Clearing

B. Section 312000 – Earthwork

1.3 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of other requirements of these specifications, all work hereunder shall conform to the applicable requirements of the referenced portions of the following documents, to the extent that the requirements therein are not in conflict with the provisions of this Section.
   1. 15A NCAC, Chapter 4 (NC Sedimentation Pollution Control Act of 1973)
   2. NCDENR Construction Stormwater General Permit (NCG010000)
   3. NCDENR NPDES Stormwater Discharge Permit for Construction Activities

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Section - Submittals, the Contractor shall submit the following:
   1. Name and location of all material suppliers.
   2. Certificate of compliance with the standards specified above for each source of each material.
   3. List of disposal sites for waste and unsuitable materials and all required permits for use of those sites.
   4. Monitoring and Record Keeping Log sheet.

1.5 EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL DEVICES

A. Erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be incorporated into the work and be constructed at the locations shown on the Drawings. Dimensions shall be as shown on the Drawings. Other devices, as necessary and acceptable to the Engineer shall be installed as required.

B. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for additional erosion control devices required to keep sedimentation on Project site.

1.6 GUARANTEE

A. All restoration and revegetation work shall be subject to the two-year guarantee period of the Contract as specified in 329300 Exterior Plants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Materials for use in erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be in accordance with the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

2.2 CLASS 57 STONE

A. Class 57 stone shall meet the requirements of Aggregate Standard Size No. 57 as defined by NCDOT Standard Specifications.

2.3 SILT FENCE

A. Silt Fence shall be a woven geotextile filter fabric made specifically for sediment control. Filter fabric shall not rot when buried and shall resist attack from soil chemicals, alkalies and acids in the pH range from 2 to 13, and shall resist damage due to prolonged ultraviolet exposure. Filter fabric shall be Type FX-11, as manufactured by Carthage Mills, Type GTF-180, as manufactured by LINQ Industrial Fabrics, or Amoco 2130 as manufactured by Amoco Fabrics & Fibers Co.

B. Filter fabric for the silt fence shall have the following minimum properties:

	Value	Test Method
Grab Tensile Strength	110 lbs	ASTM D 4632
Grab Elongation	15%	ASTM D 4632
Trapezoid Tear Strength	50 lbs	ASTM D 4533
Mullen Burst Strength	270 lbs	ASTM D 3786
Puncture Strength	60 lbs	ASTM D 4833
Retained Strength (500 hrs. accelerated UV exposure)	80%	ASTM D 4355
Filtration Efficiency	75%	VTM-51
Flow Rate	.30 gal/ft^2/min	VTM-51
Height	36 inches	

C. Posts for silt fence shall be steel and shall have the following properties:

ASTM Designation:	ASTM A702
Length:	5-Feet Long (T-Type)
Weight:	1.25#/Foot (min.)
Area of Anchor Plate:	14 Sq. In.

Note: Five (T) Fasteners shall be furnished with each post.

D. Wire Fabric for the silt fence shall have the following properties:

Wire Fabric Designation:	832-12-10-12.5 Class 1 Designation: ASTM A116
Width:	32"
Number of Line Wires:	8
Stay Wire Spacing:	12"
Line and Stay Wires:	12.5 Ga.
Top and Bottom Wires:	10 Ga.
Wire Coating:	ASTM Class 1 Zinc Coating

2.4 STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL

A. The Contractor shall place Stone for Erosion Control as shown on the Drawings, as specified herein and as specified in Section 1042-1 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications. The Stone for Erosion Control shall be Class (A) or Class (B), as shown on the Drawings.

2.5 SYNTHETIC GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRIC (Correlates with Type II – Geotextile on Drawings)

The filter fabric shall have the following mechanical properties:

Geotextile Construction Woven

Mass per Unit Area (Unit Weight), ASTM D52611 (oz/yd^2)	5.6
Ultraviolet Resistance, (500 hrs.) ASTM D4355, Average % Strength Retention	90
Grab Tensile Strength (lbs.) ASTM D4632	$390^{(1)}X250^{(2)}$ 370X250
Grab Tensile Elongation (%) ASTM D4632	20 MAX
Wide Width Tensile Strength, (lbs./in.) ASTM D4595	N/A
Burst Strength, ASTM D3786, Diaphragm Method (psi)	480
Apparent Opening Size (AOS), (mm), ASTM D4751	0.21
Permittivity at 50 mm constant head (sec^{-1}), ASTM D4491	N/A
Puncture Resistance, ASTM D4833 (lb)	135

* MINIMUM AVERAGE ROLL VALUE (MARV)

(1) Warp Direction

(2) Fill Direction

Each roll of fabric will be visually inspected by the Engineer or his representative. The Engineer reserves the right to sample and test at any time and reject, if necessary, any material based on visual inspection or verification tests.

2.6 TREE PROTECTION FENCE

A. Tree protection fence shall be installed around the drip line of trees in the construction work area as shown on the plans and as directed by the Engineer. The tree protection fence shall be installed in such a manner that it prevents all construction activities from encroaching into the area inside the drip line of the tree. The material and installation specifications for the tree protection fence shall be approved for use by the Engineer prior to installation. Tree Fencing shall be erected in accordance with details as shown on plan.

PART 3 - MATTING FOR EROSION CONTROL

3.1 GENERAL

A. Matting for erosion control shall be straw matting, coir fiber mat, excelsior matting, or permanent soil reinforcement matting (PSRM). Matting for erosion control shall not be dyed, bleached, or otherwise treated in a manner that will result in toxicity to vegetation.

B. Straw Matting: Straw matting shall be a machine produced matting of 100% grain straw in accordance with Section 1060-8C of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition.

C. Coir Fiber Mat: Coir fiber shall consist of a 100% coconut fiber (coir) twine woven into high strength matrix and in accordance with Section 1060-14 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition. Staples shall be the preferred anchors used.

D. Excelsior Matting: Excelsior matting shall be a machine produced mat of curled wood excelsior in accordance with Section 1060-8(B) of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition.

E. Permanent Soil Reinforcement Matting (PSRM): The product shall be a permanent erosion control reinforcement mat and shall be constructed of synthetic or a combination of coconut and synthetic fibers evenly distributed throughout the mat between a bottom UV stabilized netting and a heavy duty UV stabilized top net. The matting shall be stitched together with UV stabilized polypropylene thread to form a permanent three-dimensional structure.

The mat shall have the following minimum physical properties:

Property	**Test Method**	**Value Unit**
Light Penetration	ASTM D6567	9 %
Thickness	ASTM D6525	0.40 in
Mass Per Unit Area	ASTM D6566	0.55 lb/sy
Tensile Strength	ASTM D6818	385 lb/ft
Elongation (Maximum)	ASTM D6818	49 %
Resiliency	ASTM D1777	>70 %
UV Stability *	ASTM D4355	>80 %
Porosity (Permanent Net)	ECTC Guidelines	>85 %
Maximum Permissible Shear Stress (Vegetated)	Performance Bench Test	>8.0 lb/ft2
Maximum Allowable Velocity (Vegetated)	Performance Bench Test	>16.0 ft/s

*ASTM D1682 Tensile Strength and % strength retention of material after 1000 hours of exposure.

Submit a certification (Type 1, 2, or 3) from the manufacturer showing:

(A) the chemical and physical properties of the mat used, and

(B) conformance of the mat with this specification.

F. Wire Staples: Staples shall be machine-made of No. 11 gage new steel wire formed into a “U” shape. The size when formed shall be not less than 6 inches in length with a throat of not less than 1 inch in width.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. All erosion control matting shall be installed in accordance with Section 1631-3 of the "NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures", latest edition.

PART 4 - EXECUTION

4.1 INSTALLATION AND MAINTENANCE

A. Erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be established prior to clearing operations in a given area.

B. The Contractor shall furnish the labor, materials and equipment required for routine maintenance of all erosion and sedimentation control devices. Maintenance shall be scheduled as required for a particular device to maintain the removal efficiency and intent of the device. Maintenance shall include but not be limited to 1) the removal and satisfactory disposal of trapped sediments from basins or silt barriers and 2) replacement of filter fabrics used for silt fences. Sediment removed from erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be disposed of in locations that will not result in off site sedimentation as acceptable to the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. The Contractor shall provide temporary or permanent ground cover adequate to restrain erosion on erodible slopes or other areas that will be left unworked for periods exceeding 15 calendar days. No specific payment will be made for temporary ground cover. Cost associated with this provision shall be deemed as included in the Lump Sum payment for Maintenance and Restoration of Unpaved Surface.

D.

E. The Contractor shall install rain gauge and maintain Monitoring and Record Keeping Logs as per the requirements of the NCDENR Construction Stormwater General Permit (NCG010000).

F. The Engineer may direct the Contractor to erect and maintain additional erosion control measures at other locations not shown on the Drawings.

G. All streets around the construction area shall be scraped as necessary to prevent accumulation of dirt and debris.

H. The Contractor shall provide adequate means to prevent any sediment from entering any storm drains, curb inlets (curb inlet filter box), ditches, streams, or bodies of water downstream of any area disturbed by construction. Excavation materials shall be placed upstream of any trench or other excavation to prevent sedimentation of offsite areas. In areas where a natural buffer area exists between the work area and the closest stream or water course, this area shall not be disturbed.

4.2 TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCES

A. Temporary construction entrances shall be constructed as necessary to comply with regulations and requirements stated above and as specified herein. The temporary construction entrances shall be constructed and maintained to the satisfaction of the Engineer until the project is completed and final clean-up of the project has been finished. Proper maintenance shall include, but not be limited to, the periodic replacement of the 2" to 3" surge stone and cleaning up of stone scattered away from the temporary construction entrance by the use of the entrance. The cost of the temporary construction entrances shall include the excavation, grading, placement of stone, periodic refreshment of the stone, removal of the stone, and all maintenance activities required.

4.3 SILT FENCE

A. Silt fence shall be erected as shown on the Drawings and specified herein and as necessary to comply with regulations and requirements stated above. Silt fence shall be erected and maintained to the satisfaction of the Engineer until a vegetative ground cover has been established. Proper maintenance shall include, but not be limited to, the periodic removal of trapped sediments and replacement of the filter fabric should it deteriorate to a point that in the opinion of the Engineer it will no longer provide an adequate runoff filter. Replacement of the filter fabric, if required by the Engineer, will be at the Contractor's expense.

B. Silt fence shall be erected around all catch basins which are located downstream from any construction work. Should any catch basins be indicated to be relocated or modified, silt fence shall be utilized until work is completed on the catch basins.

C. Upon completion of the project, the Contractor shall remove all silt fences in areas where a stand of grass has been established and erosion is no longer evident. Removal of the remainder of the silt fence shall occur as other areas are established. Removal of any silt fence shall be permitted only with the prior approval of NCDENR staff or City of Raleigh Stormwater Management staff and the Engineer.

4.4 SILT FENCE OUTLETS

A. Silt Fence Outlets shall be installed in low points of silt fence at necessary locations as shown on the plans and as directed by the Engineer. Silt Fence Outlets shall be installed in accordance with details as shown on plan.

4.5 ROCK DAMS

A. Rock dams shall be constructed as necessary to comply with regulations and requirements stated above and as specified herein. The rock dams shall be constructed and maintained to the satisfaction of the Engineer until a vegetative ground cover has been established. Proper maintenance will include, but not be limited to, the periodic removal of trapped sediments and stone refreshment/replacement. The cost of the rock dams shall include the excavation, grading, stone for erosion control or rip rap, washed stone, etc., periodic stone refreshment/replacement, and all maintenance activities required.

4.6 CLASS 1 RIPRAP AND STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL

A. The Contractor shall place rip rap as necessary to comply with regulations and requirements stated above and as specified herein.

B. Riprap shall be graded so that the smaller stones are uniformly distributed through the mass. The Contractor may place the stone by mechanical methods, augmented by hand placing where necessary or ordered by the Engineer. The placed rip rap shall form a properly graded, dense, neat layer of stone. The placed rip rap shall have a minimum depth of 24-inches and shall have a layer of synthetic geotextile filter fabric as specified below placed between the soil and the stone and extend under flared end sections.

C. Stone for Erosion Control shall be dumped and placed in such a manner that the larger rock fragments are uniformly distributed throughout the rock mass and the smaller fragments fill the voids between the larger fragments. Rearranging of individual stones by equipment or by hand shall only be required to the extent necessary to secure the results specified above and to protect structures from damage when rock material is placed against the structures. The placed stone shall be the minimum thickness shown

on the Drawings and shall have a layer of synthetic geotextile filter fabric as specified below placed between the soil and the stone.

4.7 FURNISH AND PLACE SYNTHETIC GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRIC

A. During all periods of shipment and storage, the fabric shall be wrapped in heavy-duty protective covering which will protect the fabric from sunlight, mud, dust, dirt, and debris. The fabric shall not be exposed to temperatures greater than 140°F. After the protective covering has been removed, the fabric shall not be left uncovered under any circumstances for longer than three (3) days.

B. Filter fabric shall be installed in such a manner that all splice joints are provided with a minimum overlap of 12-inches. Field splices of filter fabric shall be anchored with anchor pins to insure that required overlap is maintained. At the time of installation, the fabric will be rejected if it has defects, rips, holes, flaws, deteriorations, or damage incurred during manufacture, transportation, or storage.

C. Backfilling operations shall be done so as to prevent damage to the filter fabric. Damaged sections of filter fabric shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.

D. Installation of filter fabric shall be done in a manner so as not to rupture, tear, puncture, cut, or abrade the materials. Where such damage occurs, filter fabric will be replaced. Filter fabric shall be protected by an opaque, waterproof, and oil proof covering during transportation and storage. The fabric shall be protected from exposure to sunlight. The maximum cumulative time of exposure to sunlight during transportation, storage, handling, and installation shall not exceed 3 days.

4.8 INLET PROTECTION

A. Inlet protection shall be installed around inlets and any other necessary locations as shown on the plans and as directed by the Engineer. Inlet protection shall be erected in accordance with details as shown on plan

END OF SECTION 312500

SECTION 321216 – ASPHALT PAVEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Retain or delete this article in all Sections of Project Manual.

B. Except as otherwise stipulated in this specification, all asphalt pavement production, installation, and compaction shall be performed in accordance with Division 5 & 6 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition. The work covered by this section consists of the installation and/or removal of aggregate base course, asphalt concrete surface course, asphalt concrete intermediate course, asphalt concrete base course, asphalt tack coat, asphalt prime coat, Geotextile Interlayer, Asphalt Surface Treatments, and utility adjustments.

C. No base material shall be placed on a roadway until the storm sewer, subgrade, utilities and all appurtenances have been inspected and approved by inspector.

D. Before the asphalt surface course is placed on the road, the aggregate base course shall be inspected and approved by the Inspector.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Hot-mix asphalt paving overlay.
3. Asphalt surface treatments.

B. Related Sections

1. Section 312000 “Earthworks” for aggregate subbase and base courses.

1.3 DEFINITION

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 and Standard Specifications of North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) for definitions of terms.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

1. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.

B. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer.

C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Pavement Design Requirements: Refer to the City of Raleigh, Wake County and NCDOT Pavement Design Requirements.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by NCDOT.

C. Installer Qualifications: Imprinted-asphalt manufacturer's authorized installer who is trained and approved for installation of imprinted asphalt required for this Project.

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 and NCDOT for testing indicated.

E. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of the NCDOT Standard Specifications (latest version) for asphalt paving work.

1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Historic Yates Mill County Park, Raleigh, NC.

1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

G. Contractor shall provide and conduct a quality control program as defined as all activities, including mix design, process control inspection, sampling and testing, and necessary adjustments in the process that are related to the production of the pavement in accordance with NCDOT's "Hot Mix Asphalt Quality Management System" (HMA / QMS) manual which is in force on the date of the contract advertisement.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is frozen, wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, in accordance with Table 610-3 from the NCDOT Standard Specifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATE BASE COURSE

A. The base course shall consist of an approved coarse aggregate produced in accordance with Section 520 in the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures." All materials, construction requirements and other provisions in Section 520 shall apply. The subgrade for the coarse aggregate base course shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements of these Specifications.

B. The subgrade shall be thoroughly compacted and constructed to the line, grade, and cross section on the plans or as directed by the Engineer. Before placing the base course, the subgrade shall be inspected and approved by the Inspector, and backfilling behind the curb shall be complete.

C. The base course material shall be placed in lifts not to exceed eight (8) inches. Each layer shall be graded to the required section and compacted to at least one hundred percent (100%) of the density as determined by AASHTO T180. The base material shall be compacted at a moisture content which is approximately that required to produce the maximum density.

D. After final shaping and compacting, the Inspector will check the surface of the base for conformance to grade and typical section. The thickness of the base shall be within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/2 inch of the base thickness required by the plans.

2.2 SUPERPAVE – ASPHALT CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE: TYPE S 9.5 B, S 9.5 C:

A. The Superpave surface course shall be Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S 9.5 B. S 9.5 C and shall be produced, delivered, placed, tested, compacted, and accepted in accordance with Sections 609 and 610 of the most current version of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."

B. Sections of the newly finished pavement shall be protected from traffic until they have become properly hardened. Finished surfaces of the base shall be checked with a 10-foot straightedge, applied parallel to the center of the pavement, and any places that vary more than one-eighth (1/8) of an inch as measured from the bottom of the straightedge to the finished course shall be corrected.

2.3 SUPERPAVE – ASPHALT CONCRETE INTERMEDIATE COURSE: TYPE I 19.0 B

A. The Superpave intermediate course shall be Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type I 19.0 B, I 19.0 C, I 19.0 D and shall be produced, delivered, placed, tested, compacted, and accepted in accordance with Sections 609 and 610 of the most current version of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."

2.4 SUPERPAVE – ASPHALT CONCRETE BASE COURSE: TYPE B 25.0 C

A. The Superpave base course shall be Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type B 25.0 C or shall be produced, delivered, placed, tested, compacted, and accepted in accordance with Sections 609 and 610 of the most current version of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."

2.5 PAVEMENT REPAIR PATCH

A. Where it is necessary to open cut along or across streets with asphalt surfaces, the pavement shall be replaced in accordance with the City of Raleigh's Asphalt Pavement Patch Detail (T-10.05.1-.2) or the NCDOT encroachment agreement (if applicable), whichever is more strict. The replacement surface and/or base shall extend a minimum of 1 foot on each side of the excavated opening. The thickness of the replacement material shall be sufficient to provide a base and surface of equivalent strength to the undisturbed base and surface. The replaced pavement shall meet all applicable material and installation specifications outlined elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

2.6 ASPHALT TACK COAT

A. The tack coat shall be asphalt or asphalt cement and shall meet the general, material, and construction specifications as specified in Section 605 of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures." There will be no direct payment for the work covered by this section.

2.7 ASPHALT PRIME COAT

A. Asphalt Prime Coat is not required unless otherwise directed by the plans or Engineer.

2.8 ASPHALT PLANT MIX

A. The production, delivery, and placement of all types of asphalt plant mixed bases, intermediate, and surface courses shall conform to Sections 609 and 610 of the most current version of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures." There will be no direct payment for this work and all asphalt plant mix shall be considered incidental to asphalt line items unless otherwise directed by the Itemized Proposal.

PART 3 - CONSTRUCTION METHODS

3.1 SUBGRADE

A. This subgrade shall be prepared and compacted in accordance with Section 500 in the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures", latest edition.

3.2 PROOFROLLING

A. Equipment: The equipment shall consist of a loaded tandem-axle dump truck or similar pneumatic-tired equipment of a minimum ten (10) ton static weight. The Contractor is responsible for providing the equipment necessary in order to perform proofrolling at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Method: After the roadbed has been completed within five hundredths (0.05) feet of final grade, the roadbed shall then be compacted and tested with two (2) or more coverages unless otherwise directed by the Owner, using a heavy pneumatic-tired roller meeting the requirements listed above. A coverage is considered that stage in the rolling procedure when the entire width of the area being proofrolled has been in contact with the pneumatic tires of the roller. The roller shall be operated in a systematic manner so that the number of coverages over all areas to be proofrolled can be readily determined and recorded.

C. The equipment shall be operated at a speed between two and one-half (2-1/2) and three and one-half (3-1/2) miles per hour. All proofrolling procedures shall be followed to the satisfaction of the Inspector on site during the proofrolling.

D. Corrective Action: If it becomes necessary to take corrective action, such as, but not limited to, underdrain installation, undercut and backfill of unsuitable materials, and aeration of excessively wet material in areas that have been proofrolled, these areas shall be proofrolled again following the completion of the necessary corrections. If the corrections are necessary due to the negligence of the Contractor or weather, the corrective work and additional proofrolling shall be performed by the Contractor at no cost to the Owner.

3.3 WEATHER, TEMPERATURE, AND SEASONAL LIMITATIONS FOR PRODUCING AND PLACING ASPHALT

A. All weather and seasonal limitations shall be in accordance with Sections 610-4 of the most current version of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."

B. Should rain begin during paving operations, the Owner assumes no responsibility for asphalt left on the trucks at the time that the paving operation is halted.

3.4 PROTECTION OF MATERIAL

A. The Contractor shall provide and have ready for use at all times enough tarpaulins or covers for use in case of rain, chilly wind, or other delay, for the purpose of covering or protecting any material dumped but not spread.

3.5 COMPACTING ASPHALT CONCRETE MIXTURE

A. After placing, the mixture shall be thoroughly and uniformly compacted with tandem rollers of eight (8) or ten (10) ton model weighing not less than 250 pounds per inch width of roller tread. The number and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the mixture to the required density while it is still in a workable condition.

B. Each roller shall be operated by a competent, experienced operator and must be kept in continuous operation as nearly as practicable. Rolling shall start longitudinally at the outer edges and proceed toward the center of the pavement, overlapping on successive trips by at least one half (1/2) the width of the roller.

C. The speed of the roller shall be at all times slow enough to avoid displacement of the hot mixture as a result of reversing. Any displacement shall be immediately corrected. Rolling shall proceed at a rate not in excess of 500 square yards per hour per roller and shall continue until no further visible compaction is obtainable and all roller marks have been eliminated.

D. Rolling shall be started as soon as the mixture will bear the roller without undue misplacement or hairline cracking. Delays in rolling hand raked mixture will not be tolerated.

E. To prevent adhesion of the mixture to the roller, the wheels shall be kept moistened with water. Places not accessible to the roller shall be thoroughly compacted with hot tamps.

3.6 COMPACTED DENSITIES

A. Unless otherwise noted compaction and density control of Asphalt Pavements shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 609 and 610 of the most current version of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures." There will be no direct payment for the work covered by this section.

B. The Contractor shall allow time for the inspections and testing of areas, as needed, by the City of Raleigh or their qualified testing firm, as directed by the Engineer.

3.7 PLANT TICKETS

A. The number of batches and total weight of all loads of mixture shall be recorded in duplicate upon plant ticket forms. With each load delivered to the work, the truck driver shall present one copy of the plant ticket to the Inspector. The driver shall retain one copy for the Contractor. Should the Engineer decide to provide a plant inspector, he/she shall keep the stub copy. The weights to be included in the estimate shall be the total of the tickets delivered by the truck driver to the Inspector at the work site. At any time, for the purpose of checking the weighing equipment at the plant, the Owner may direct the Contractor to weigh or cause to be weighed on tested and approved platform scales at the Contractor's expense the contents of any truckload that is to be delivered to the work site.

3.8 PROTECTION OF PAVEMENT

A. When edges are not protected, planks of the same thickness shall be placed adjacent to longitudinal or transverse joints until the surface course is completed. Sections of newly finished pavements shall be protected from traffic until they have become properly hardened by temperature cooling.

PART 4 - REMOVAL OF EXISTING PAVEMENT

4.1 GENERAL

A. The measurement and payment for removal of existing pavement shall be in accordance with Section 250 in the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures." The work covered by this section shall not include the removal and disposal of sidewalks, driveways, and curb and gutter, which are covered under "Unclassified Excavation".

B. Milling asphalt pavement shall be in accordance with Section 607 of the latest version of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."

C. All materials, which cannot be used in the work, shall be disposed of off site of the right of way in waste areas provided by the Contractor.

PART 5 - ASPHALT RESURFACING

5.1 GENERAL

A. Asphalt Resurfacing shall meet all applicable material and installation specifications outlined elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

B. Should construction take place near signalized intersections of a state maintained roadway, the Contractor shall contact the NCDOT Division Traffic Engineer to schedule the field location of any traffic signal conflicts. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer of any potential conflict prior to construction. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating the conflict relocation with NCDOT during construction.

C. The Contractor shall prepare a weekly schedule detailing the construction activities planned for the following week. This schedule shall be presented to the Inspector before Friday, 12:00 noon of the week preceding the effective date of the schedule. Weekly meetings may be required to review construction activities as directed by the Engineer.

D. In the event that all vehicles are not removed from the construction area despite timely delivery of the construction notice letter, the Contractor shall attempt to contact vehicle owners by other means in an effort to find the vehicle's owner to have the vehicles relocated. If the Contractor is unsuccessful they shall contact the Engineer and provide the make, model, and license plate number of the vehicle as well as the vehicle location. The Engineer shall try contacting the vehicle owner and if unsuccessful shall contact a designated towing company to move the vehicle out of the construction area, to a neighboring street as directed by the Engineer, at the Town of Wake Forest's expense. The towing company shall attach a standard letter to the vehicle upon towing. The Engineer will provide the standard letter.

E. Construction traffic control shall be provided on each street by the Contractor in strict conformance with NCDOT "North Carolina Supplement to the MUTCD," the MUTCD, the Contract Documents, or as directed by the Engineer. No work shall begin on any street without the proper traffic control measures in place.

F. Construction traffic control shall be installed and practiced as a means to inform drivers that asphalt tack coat is being placed on the road surface.

G. The Contractor shall be responsible for spraying or burning all weeds growing on and in the streets. The Contractor shall be responsible for removing and properly disposing of the dead weeds and carefully cleaning each street before beginning asphalt concrete construction operations.

H. Asphalt resurfacing projects shall have a maximum acceptable elevation difference, between the top of the resurfacing layer and the gutter, of 1.25 inch. The Owner shall not accept any newly resurfaced streets exceeding this maximum elevation difference. Should it be determined that the resurfacing layer is more than 1.0 inch higher than the gutter elevation the resurfacing shall be removed and replaced or remedied as directed by the Engineer at the Contractor's expense.

I. The Contractor shall allow time for the inspection of areas, as needed, by a qualified testing firm as directed by the Engineer.

J. The Contractor shall construct all improvements so as to create and/or maintain positive drainage.

K. The above listed requirements of this sub-part are considered incidental to the cost of the asphalt concrete surface course specified in the Itemized Proposal and Contract Documents.

5.2 MATERIALS

A. GEOTEXTILE INTERLAYER INSTALLATION

a. The geotextile interlayer shall be a needlepunched, nonwoven engineering fabric made of polypropylene and staple fiber; calendared on one side. It shall be resistant to ultraviolet degradation and have the following properties:

	Typical	*Test*
Grab Tensile Strength (lbs)	101	ASTM D 4632
Grab Elongation (%)	50	ASTM D 4632
Puncture Strength (lbs)	65	ASTM D 4833
Mullen Burst (psi)	220	ASTM D 3786
Trapezoidal Tear (lbs)	45	ASTM D 4533
Mass Per Unit Area (oz/sq yd)	4.1	ASTM D 5261
Thickness (mils)	35	ASTM D 5199
Melting Point (°F)	Greater than 150	ASTM D 276
UV Resistance (%)	70 at 500 hrs	ASTM D 4355

b. For the tack coat, uncut asphalt cements are preferred, however, cationic or anionic emulsions may be used. For asphalt cements the minimum temperature shall be 150° C, but to avoid damage to the fabric the distributor tank temperatures shall not exceed 160° C. When asphalt emulsions are used, the emulsion shall be cured prior to placing the fabric.

c. The engineering fabric shall be placed onto the asphalt sealant, calendared side up, prior to the time the asphalt has cooled and lost tackiness. Wrinkles or folds in excess of 1 inch shall be slit and laid flat. In order to maximize fabric contact with the pavement surface, blooming or pneumatic rolling will be required. The fabric joints shall be overlapped sufficiently to ensure full closure of the joint, but should not exceed 6 inches. To prevent edge pickup by the paver, transverse joints shall be lapped in the direction of paving. A second application of sealant to the fabric overlaps will be required as directed by the Engineer.

d. Quickly following the fabric installation, the hot-mix overlay should be placed evenly. Should the asphalt bleed through the fabric causing construction problems prior to overlay placement, the affected areas shall be blotted by spreading sand. Turning the paver and other vehicles shall be gradual and kept to a minimum to avoid movement of, or damage to the sealant saturated fabric.

B. ASPHALT SURFACE TREATMENT:

a. Chip seal shall be “straight seal” with 78M stone in accordance with Section 660 of the NCDOT “Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.” Careful attention shall be given to surface preparation (as specified in Section 660) under chip sealing.

b. Cleanup: Excess aggregate resulting from straight seal shall be collected and removed from the construction site either before resurfacing occurs or one (1) week after the straight seal is applied, whichever occurs first.

C. Leveling Course

a. In asphalt resurfacing projects a leveling course of Superpave - Asphalt Concrete Surface Course (Type S 9.5 B, S 9.5 C), as directed by the Engineer, shall be hand-placed in areas where the pavement is depressed, sunken or uneven, and its surface grade varies from

surrounding elevation by one (1) inch or greater. Leveling asphalt shall be placed prior to chip seal applications or as designated by the Engineer.

PART 6 - UTILITY ADJUSTMENTS

6.1 GENERAL

A. No manholes or water valve boxes shall be raised and left for a period of time greater than fourteen (14) days before the street is resurfaced. Should this period of time be exceeded, all work shall be stopped until the resurfacing of such streets has been completed. Immediately after utility adjustments take place the sides of the utility shall be painted bright orange for visibility and if directed by the Engineer 36" (minimum) reflective orange traffic cones or other devices shall also be added for visibility. There will be no separate compensation for this work and shall be considered incidental to the cost of the items as defined under "Basis of Payment."

B. Cast iron risers will not be allowed for adjustment of manholes and water valve boxes.

C. If any existing broken manholes or water valve boxes are discovered, the Owner shall furnish new manhole rings and covers or new water valve boxes for replacement of the broken ones by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner. Replacements will be the same as stocked by the Town of Wake Forest or approved as acceptable alternate by the Engineer.

D. Adjustment of water meters, valve boxes, cleanouts, and/or fire hydrants shall include vertical adjustments only to leave the appurtenances positioned in the same horizontal location in accordance with the plans and standard City of Raleigh Public Utilities Details.

E. Relocation of water meters, cleanouts, and/or fire hydrants shall include both horizontal and vertical adjustments necessary to relocate the appurtenances to a different horizontal and vertical location in accordance with the plans and standard City of Raleigh Public Utilities Details.

END OF SECTION 321216

SECTION 321723 – PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the application of pavement markings on the finished paved area in accordance with these specifications at the locations and of the dimensions shown on the plans. Details not shown on the plans shall be in conformity with the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways published by the U. S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish Manufacturer's Product Data and Material Specifications for all pavement marking material. Only information completely checked by the Manufacturer and the General Contractor will be considered by the Engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Pavement Markings (Permanent) – Thermoplastic Composition

Thermoplastic Alkyd/Maleic and Hydrocarbon pavement markings shall be composed of the following materials:

COMPONENT	BY WEIGHT
Alkyd/Maleic Binder	18.0% Min.
Hydrocarbon Binder	22.0% Min.
Glass Beads (Premixed)	30.0% Min.
Titanium Dioxide (ASTM D-476, Type 2)	10.0% Min.
Yellow Pigment (For Yellow Marking Only)	4.0% Min.

B. Calcium carbonate and inert fillers shall be opted by the manufacturer, providing all other specifications are met.

C. The total silica content used in the formulation of the thermoplastic shall be the premixed glass beads.

D. The pigment, beads, and filler shall be uniformly dispersed in the binder.

E. The Alkyd/Maleic binder shall consist of a mixture of synthetic resins (at least on synthetic resin shall be solid at room temperature) and high boiling point plasticizers. At least one-third of the binder composition shall be 100% maleic-modified glycerol ester of resin and shall be no less than 10% by weight of the entire material formulation. The binder shall contain no petroleum Hydrocarbon resins, tall oil resins or rosins, or any combination of tall oil resins with maleic-modified glycerol esters of rosin.

F. The Hydrocarbon binder shall consist of a mixture of Hydrocarbon resins (at least one Hydrocarbon resin shall be solid at room temperature) and high boiling point plasticizers.

G. The thermoplastic material shall be free of contaminates and shall be dry blended or hot mixed from 100% virgin stock using no reprocessed materials.

H. The thermoplastic material shall be formulated such that when it is on the roadway surface at any natural temperature it exists in a hard, solid state with cold ductility that permits normal movement with the road surface without chipping or cracking.

I. The thermoplastic material shall not deteriorate or discolor when held at the application temperature for periods of time up to 4 hours or upon repeated reheating (a minimum of 4 times).

J. The color, viscosity, and chemical properties versus temperature characteristics of the thermoplastic material shall remain constant for up to 4 hours at the application temperature and shall be the same from batch to batch.

K. The thermoplastic material shall be readily applicable at temperatures between 400 & 440 degrees F from the approved equipment to produce lines and symbols of the required above the pavement thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. The application area shall be free of loose particles. This may be done by brooming or other methods acceptable to the Engineer.

B. Stripes shall be 4 inches wide and in accordance with required striping plan by NCDOT. Traffic arrows shall be 18" wide, stem and letters shall be 18 inches high. Crosswalk Stripes shall be 24” wide.

C. The markings shall be thoroughly mixed prior to application and shall be applied when the air temperature is above 40 degrees Fahrenheit to a clean and dry surface.

D. The application area shall be protected from traffic until the markings are thoroughly dry.

E. All markings shall present a clean cut, uniform and workmanlike appearance. All markings which fail to have a uniform satisfactory appearance, either day or night, shall be corrected by the Contractor at his expense.

F. All markers shall be installed in accordance with NCDOT guidelines for strength, impact, optical performance, etc.

END OF SECTION 321723

SECTION 323113 - POLYOLEFIN-COATED FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fused polyolefin-coated chain link fencing, gates, and accessories

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Cast-In-Place Concrete

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Changes in specifications may not be made after the bid date.

B. Shop drawings: Layout of fences and gates with dimensions, details, and finishes of components, accessories, and post foundations.

C. Product data: Manufacturer’s catalog cuts indicating material compliance and specified options.

D. Samples: Color selection for polyolefin finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Products from qualified manufacturers having a minimum of five years’ experience manufacturing thermally fused chain link fencing will be acceptable providing that they meet the following specifications for design, size gauge of metal parts and fabrication.

B. Obtain chain link fences and gates, including accessories, fittings, and fastenings, from a single source as manufactured by Seegars Fencing Company, or approved equal.

2.2 CHAIN LINK FENCE FABRIC

A. Polyolefin elastomer coating, 6 mil to 10 mil thickness, thermally fused to zinc-coated steel core wire: Per ASTM F668 Class 2b. Core wire tensile strength 75,000 psi.

B. Size: Helically wound and woven to height as indicated on drawings with 2” diamond mesh of 8 gauge core wire with a diameter of 0.148” and a break load of 1290 lbs at all locations. Color shall be black.

C. Selvage of fabric shall be knuckled at top and bottom.

2.3 2.3 STEEL FENCE FRAMING

A. Steel pipe - Type I: ASTM F 1083, standard weight schedule 40; minimum yield strength of 25,000 psi sizes as indicated. Hot-dipped galvanized with minimum average 1.8 oz/ft² of coated surface area.

B. Polyolefin Coated finish: In accordance with ASTM F1043, apply supplemental color coating of minimum 10 mils of thermally fused polyolefin in color to match fabric.
   1. Line, end, gate and corner post 4.0” O.D. 9.12 lbs/ft.
   2. Rails and braces 1.90” O.D. 2.72 lbs/ft

2.4 GATES

A. Chain Link Swing Gates
   1. Gate frames: Fabricate chain link swing gates in accordance with ASTM F 900 galvanized steel tubular members, 2.375” round, weighing 3.65 lb/ft. Weld connections forming rigid one-piece unit.
   2. Chain link fence fabric: Install fabric with hook bolts and tension bars at all 4 sides. Attach to gate frame at not more than 15” on center.
   3. Hardware materials: Hot dipped galvanized steel shapes to suit gate size.
   4. Hinges: Structurally capable of supporting gate leaf and allow opening and closing without binding. Non-lift-off type hinge design shall permit gate to swing 180° outward from field-of-play only.
   5. Latch: Forked type capable of retaining gate in closed position and have provision for padlock. Latch shall permit operation from either side of gate.

B. Polyolefin Coated finish: In accordance with ASTM F1043, apply supplemental color coating of minimum 10 mils of thermally fused polyolefin in color to match fabric.

2.5 POLYOLEFIN COATED ACCESSORIES

A. A. Chain link fence accessories: ASTM F 626 Provide items required to complete fence system. Galvanize and coat each ferrous metal item and finish to match framing.

B. B. Post caps: Formed steel, cast malleable iron, or aluminum alloy weather tight closure cap for tubular posts. Provide one cap for each post.

C. C. Top rail, bottom rail, mid height rail and brace rail ends: Pressed steel per ASTM F626, for connection of rail and brace to terminal posts.

D. D. Wire ties: 6-gauge galvanized steel wire for attachment of fabric to line posts. Hog ring ties of 8 gauge for attachment of fabric to tension wire.

E. E. Brace and tension (stretcher bar) bands: Pressed steel.

F. F. Tension (stretcher) bars: One piece lengths equal to 2 inches less than full height of fabric with a minimum cross-section of 3/16” x 3/4” or equivalent fiber glass rod. Provide tension (stretcher) bars where chain link fabric meets terminal posts.

G. G. Tension wire: Thermally fused polyolefin applied to metallic coated steel wire: Per ASTM F 1664 Class 2 b, 6 gauge diameter core wire with tensile strength of 75,000 psi.

H. H. Truss rods & tightener: Steel rods with minimum diameter of 5/16”. Capable of withstanding a tension of minimum 2,000 lbs.

I. I. Nuts and bolts shall be galvanized but not polyolefin coated.

2.6 SETTING MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Minimum 28 day compressive strength of 3,000 psi.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify areas to receive fencing are completed to final grades and elevations.

B. Ensure property lines and legal boundaries of work are clearly established.

3.2 CHAIN LINK FENCE AND GATE INSTALLATION

A. Install chain link fence on field side of posts in accordance with ASTM F 567.

B. Locate terminal post at each fence termination and change in horizontal or vertical direction of 30° or more.

C. Space line posts uniformly but not greater than 10’ on center.

D. Concrete set posts: Drill holes in firm, undisturbed or compacted soil. Holes shall have diameter 4 times greater than outside dimension of post, and depths not less than 3’-6” (6” deeper than bottom of post). Set post bottom 36” below surface in firm, undisturbed or compacted soil. Place concrete around posts in a continuous pour. Trowel finish around post leaving a sloped top of concrete footing to direct water away from posts.

E. Check each post for vertical and top alignment, and maintain in position during placement and finishing operations.

F. Bracing: Install horizontal pipe brace at mid-height for fences 6’ and over, on each side of terminal posts. Firmly attach with fittings. Install diagonal truss rods at these points. Adjust truss rod, ensuring posts remain plumb.

G. Top and Bottom Rails: Install single length rails between posts with fittings and accessories.

H. Center Rails: Install mid rails between posts with fittings and accessories.

I. Fabric: Install fabric on field side (exterior side at bullpens only) and attach so that fabric remains in tension after pulling force is released. Leave not more than 1” between finish grade and bottom selvage. Attach fabric with wire ties to line posts at 15” on center and to rails and braces at 24” on center.

J. Tension (stretcher) bars: Pull fabric taut; thread tension bar through fabric and attach to terminal posts with bands or clips spaced maximum of 15” on center.

K. Install gates plumb, level and secure for full opening without interference.

L. Attach gate hardware by such means that will prevent unauthorized removal.

M. Adjust gate hardware for smooth operation.

3.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Tie wires: Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to persons and clothing.

B. Fasteners: Install nuts on side of fence opposite fabric side for added security.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean up debris and unused material, and remove from the site.

END OF SECTION 323113

SECTION 329200 - TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Seeding.
2. Sodding.
3. Turf renovation.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 01 General Requirements
2. Division 31 Earthwork.
3. Division 32 Exterior Improvements.
4. Division 33 Utilities

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

B. Manufactured Soil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.

C. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.

D. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately beneath planting soil.

E. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

F. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil, but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surfaces oil can be subsoil.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including planting soil.

1. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer’s application instructions specific to this Project.

B. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture stating the botanical and common name and percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, inert matter, noxious weeds by name & % per pound and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.

1. Product Certificates: For soil amendments and fertilizers, signed by product manufacturer.

C. Qualification Data: For landscape Installer. Include key personnel background and list of similar projects, minimum 3 projects completed and 5 years of experience in turf installation by Installer demonstrating Installer's capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of owners' contact persons.

1. Material Test Reports: For existing surface soil and imported or manufactured topsoil.

D. Product Certificates: For soil amendments and fertilizers, signed by product manufacturer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape installer shall be a licensed Landscape Contractor. Only a landscape Contractor as defined by the General Statutes of North Carolina and licensed in North Carolina shall be permitted to perform this work. A copy of the Landscape Contractor's License or License Number shall be presented to the Owner's representative at the time the contract is executed

1. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when planting is in progress.
2. Personnel Certifications: Installer's field supervisor shall have certification with the Turfgrass Council of North Carolina
3. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.

B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

1. Soil Analysis: Furnish soil analysis by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil.

Based on the test results, state recommended quantities of nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil.
Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Seed: Deliver seed in original sealed, labeled, and undamaged containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws, as applicable.

B. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in Turfgrass Producers International's "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" and "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Transplanting and Installation" in its "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." or other approved

professional organization such as North Carolina State University's Turf Files or Clemson University. Deliver sod in time for planting within 24 hours of harvesting. Protect sod from breakage and drying.

C. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, on sod, or on existing turf areas or plants.
2. Provide erosion control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharged of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Planting Restrictions: Plant during one of the following periods. Coordinate planting periods with maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of Substantial Completion. Variation in schedule shall be pre-approved by Owner.

Temporary Seeding Schedule:

Type	Min.Application Rate
Annual Rye	250 lbs/acre

Permanent Seeding Schedule:

Type	Min.Application Rate
Bermudagrass 'Mohawk', 'Sultan', and 'Sydney'	250 lbs/acre

Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Provide complete maintenance by skilled employees of landscape installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf or naturalized grass, including meadow and no-mow grasses, is established, for not less than 12 months from Substantial Completion, or as directed by Owner.
B. Maintenance Service: Submit to Owner on first day of month Maintenance Report Form (provided) showing weekly maintenance completed. Owner shall verify and sign off on Maintenance Report Form prior to maintenance payment.

1.9 SATISFACTORY TURF AND GRASSES

A. Installer shall repair or replace turf or naturalized grass, including meadow and no-mow grass, and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within 12 months from Substantial Completion. Turf and naturalized grass installation shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:

B. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 95 percent over any 10 sq. ft. and bare spots not exceeding 6 by 6 inches.

C. Renovate, reseed or replace unsatisfactory turf or naturalized grass, as required in Part 3, at end of 12-month maintenance period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BERMUDAGRASS SEED

A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Journal of Seed Technology; Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.

B. Seed Species: Seed of grass species as follows, with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed:

1. Temporary seeding: Annual Rye
2. Permanent seeding: Bermudagrass ‘Mohawk’, ‘Sultan’, and ‘Sydney’

2.2 TURFGRASS SOD

C. Turfgrass Sod: Certified complying with TPI's "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in its "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Furnish viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture, strongly rooted, and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted.

D. Turfgrass Species: Sod of grass species as follows, with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed.

1. Tiftuf Bermudagrass

2.3 PRAIRIE MIX SEED

E. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Journal of Seed Technology; Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.

F. Seed Species: Seed of grass species as follows, with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed. Contractor shall verify that the seed mixture content ratio matches the seed mixture content ratio used in other areas on-site by park staff:

1. Temporary seeding: Annual Rye
2. Permanent seeding: Common Milkweed, Black-Eyed Susan, Spotted Beebalm, Joe-Pye Weed, Purple Coneflower, Big Bluestem, Switchgrass, Yarrow, Blue False Indigo, and Tall Coreopsis.

2.4 PLANTING SOILS

G. Planting soil: ASTM D 5268, pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 20 percent organic material content; free of stones 1/2 inch or larger in any dimension and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

1. Soil Source: Reuse surface soil on-site. Verify suitability of stockpiled surface soil to produce viable planting soil. Remove roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Amend surface soil per soil test recommendations.
2. Supplement with imported or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources when quantities are insufficient.

2.5 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

H. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural limestone containing a minimum 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:

1. Class: Class T, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 8 sieve and a minimum 75 percent passing through No. 60 sieve.
2. Provide lime in form of dolomitic limestone.

I. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 6 sieve and a maximum 10 percent passing through No. 40 sieve.

J. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, free of toxic materials, particle size as approved by Architect.

2.6 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

K. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 3/4-inch sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

L. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.

M. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, and material harmful to plant growth.

2.7 PLANTING ACCESSORIES

N. Selective Herbicides: EPA registered and approved, of type recommended by manufacturer for application.

2.8 FERTILIZER

O. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 4 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphoric acid.

P. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing agency.

Q. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelletized fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing agency.
2. Fish-emulsion, compost tea.

R. Other Organic Fertilizer: Contractor is encouraged to utilize other organic fertilizer with a lower nitrogen value, such as worm castings, sewage sludge. Contractor shall submit product information for Architect's approval prior to application.

2.9 MULCHES

S. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.

T. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.

U. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic; free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.

V. Nonasphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

W. Asphalt Emulsion: ASTM D 977, Grade SS-1; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

2.10 PESTICIDES AND HERBICIDES

X. Pesticides: Registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

Y. Pre-Emergent herbicide: Effective for controlling the germination of growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

Z. Post-Emergent Herbicide: Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.11 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

AA. Erosion-Control Blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior, straw, or coconut-fiber mat enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples.

BB. Erosion-Control Fiber Mesh: Biodegradable twisted jute or spun-coir mesh, a minimum of 0.92 lb/sq. yd., with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive turf and grass for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Grade strictly according to the proposed grading plan. Proceed with installation only after Owner approves the subgrade and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.

Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding overspray.

B. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.3 TURF PREPARATION

A. Limit turf subgrade preparation to areas to be planted.

B. Newly Graded Subgrades: Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

1. Thoroughly blend planting soil mix before spreading or spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil mix.

    a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
    b. Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.

2. Spread planting soil mix to a depth of 6 inches but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.

    a. Spread approximately one-half the thickness of planting soil mix over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil mix.
    b. Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.

C. Unchanged Subgrades: If turf is to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface soil stripping operations, prepare surface soil as follows:

1. Remove existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not mix into surface soil.
2. Loosen surface soil to a depth of 6-12 inches. Apply soil amendments and fertilizers according to planting soil mix proportions and mix thoroughly into top 6 inches of soil. Till soil to a homogeneous mixture of fine texture.
3. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, trash, and other extraneous matter.
4. Legally dispose of waste material, including grass, vegetation, and turf, off Owner's property.

D. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/4 inch of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit fine grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.

E. Moisten prepared turf areas before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

F. Restore areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading and before planting.

3.4 SEEDING

A. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.

1. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.

B. Sow seed at the rate recommended by seed manufacturer and as required to achieve 95% coverage over any 10 sq. ft.

C. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch of topsoil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.

D. Protect seeded areas with slopes exceeding 1:6 with erosion-control fiber mesh and 1:4 with erosion-control blankets installed and stapled according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Protect seeded areas with slopes not exceeding 1:6 by spreading straw mulch. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons/acre to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches in loose depth over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.

1. Anchor straw mulch by crimping into topsoil with suitable mechanical equipment; Or
2. Bond straw mulch by spraying with asphalt emulsion at the rate of 10 to 13 gal./1000 sq. ft. Take precautions to prevent damage or staining of structures or other plantings adjacent to mulched areas. Immediately clean damaged or stained areas.

F. Protect seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying peat or compost mulch within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak and scatter uniformly to a depth of 1/4 inch and roll to a smooth surface. Water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 2 inches.

3.5 SODDING

G. Remove plastic netting or backing from sod.

H. Lay sod as soon as possible after it has been harvested to prevent injury. Sod should be installed within 24 hours of harvesting. While installing, take action as necessary to prevent heat buildup within the unlaid sod. Plan to unstack and unroll the sod if it cannot be laid within 48 hours. Soil should be moist (but not overly wet) before laying sod. Irrigating the soil several days before delivery is often adequate.

I. Start sodding from a straight edge (driveway or sidewalk) and butt strips together, staggering them in a brick-like pattern. Avoid stretching sod. Use a knife or sharp spade for trimming to fit irregularly shaped areas. Lay sod lengthwise across the face of slopes and peg or stake the pieces to prevent slippage. After the sod has been placed, roll the lawn to ensure good sod-to-soil contact.

1. Lay sod across angle of slopes exceeding 1:3.
2. Anchor sod on slopes exceeding 1:6 with wood pegs or steel staples spaced as recommended by sod manufacturer but not less than 2 anchors per sod strip to prevent slippage.

J. Water sod immediately after installation. Soak sod thoroughly enough to penetrate soil below the newly installed sod to a minimum depth of two (2) inches. Contractor is responsible for insuring adequacy of water supply. The Contractor shall provided any necessary temporary means to properly water sod, including temporary pumps and sprinklers. Proper irrigation shall be required by the contractor until the

project has been inspected and is accepted by the Town. (The Contractor shall be required to obtain all applicable watering permits from the Town prior to beginning watering activities.)

3.6 HYDROSEEDING

A. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.

1. Mix slurry with a tackifier.
2. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a one-step process. Apply mulch at a minimum rate of 1500-lb/acre dry weight but not less than the rate required to obtain specified seed-sowing rate.

3.7 SPRIGGING AND STOLONIZING

A. Plant freshly shredded sod sprigs in furrows 2 to 3 inches deep. Place individual sprigs with roots and portions of stem in moistened soil, spaced as recommend by grass manufacturer, and fill furrows without covering growing tips. Lightly roll and firm soil around sprigs after planting.

B. Broadcast sprigs uniformly over prepared surface at the rate recommended by grass manufacturer and mechanically force sprigs into lightly moistened soil.

1. Spread a 1/4-inch-thick layer of peat or compost mulch on sprigs.
2. Apply Ronstar pre-emergent at a rate of 2.5 lbs A.I./1000 sq ft at time of sprig installation
3. Lightly roll and firm soil around sprigs after planting.
4. Water sprigs immediately after planting and keep moist by frequent watering until well rooted.

3.8 TURF RENOVATION

A. Renovate existing turf damaged by Contractor's operations, such as storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles.

1. Reestablish turf where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required.

B. Remove sod and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory turf areas; do not bury in soil.

C. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials resulting from Contractor's operations, including oil drippings, fuel spills, stone, gravel, and other construction materials, and replace with new topsoil.

D. Mow, dethatch, core aerate, and rake existing turf.

E. Remove weeds before seeding. Where weeds are extensive, apply selective herbicides as required. Do not use pre-emergence herbicides.

F. Remove waste and foreign materials, including weeds, soil cores, grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

G. Till stripped, bare, and compacted areas thoroughly to a soil depth of 6 inches.

H. Apply soil amendments and initial fertilizers required for establishing new turf and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of existing soil. Provide new planting soil to fill low spots and meet finish grades.

I. Apply seed and protect with straw mulch as required for new turf.

J. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

3.9 TURF MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and other operations. Roll, regrade, top-dress and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf.

1. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch. Anchor as required to prevent displacement.

B. Watering: Provide and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.

1. Schedule watering to comply with the latest City of Raleigh Water Conservation Ordinance.
2. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
3. Water turf at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week and document on Maintenance Report Form.

C. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 33 percent of grass height. Remove no more than 33 percent of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet.

D. When seeding must take place out-of-season for permanent grass, appropriate temporary seeding shall be done and the contractor shall be responsible for permanent seeding as specified in season at no additional cost to Owner. Do not allow temporary cover to grow over 12 inches in height before mowing.

E. Maintenance to be performed by the Contractor prior to acceptance includes application of fertilizer and pre-emergent. Fertilizer and pre-emergent shall be applied using the following schedule:

1. Once grade is complete, there needs to be an amendment put down (5-3-0 or Milorganite will suffice at four to five pounds / 1,000 square feet)
2. Two week after seed has been laid, fertilize with 18-24-12 at 1 lb.N/1000
3. Two weeks after first fertilization apply 21-0-0 at 1lb. N/1000
4. July fertilizer 28-2-3 25% slow release ½ lb.N/1000
5. August fertilizer 28-2-3 25% slow release ½ lb. N/1000
6. September 1: apply 5-10-30 w/1% Oxadiazon at 200 lbs./acre
7. February 1(2018): 0-0-7 w/1.5% Oxadiazon
8. April 1(2018): Milorganite or 5-3-0 (green resource product) @ 200lbs/acre
9. May 15(2018): 17-17-17 at 1lb. N/1000
10. June 15(2018): 28-2-3 at ½ lb. N/1000
11. July 15(2018): 28-2-3 at ½ lb. N/1000
12. August 15(2018): 28-2-3 at ½ lb. N/1000
13. September 1(2018): 5-10-30 1% Oxadiazon at 200 lbs./Acre

3.10 PESTICIDE AND HERBICIDE APPLICATION

A. Apply pesticides and other chemical projects and biological control agents in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the product label. Coordinate applications with

owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.

B. Post-Emergent Herbicide: Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.11 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect barricades and warning signs as required protecting newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain barricades throughout maintenance period and remove after turf is established.

C. Remove erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

END OF SECTION 329200

SECTION 329300 - EXTERIOR PLANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Trees.
2. Shrubs.
3. Ground cover.
4. Annuals and perennials.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 01 General Requirements
2. Division 31 Earthwork
3. Division 32 Exterior Improvements
4. Division 33 Utilities

1.3 PERMITS FOR PLANTING

A. The Contractor shall obtain a Tree Impact Permit from the Urban Forestry Division for work associated with all trees, existing and proposed, on the project property including but not limited to removal/pruning/trenching/grading/planting. The process shall include a site visit and review of all tree protection fencing areas by Urban Forestry staff.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Exterior plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are grown, with ball size not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of tree or shrub required; wrapped, tied, rigidly supported, and drum-laced as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.

B. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted exterior plants grown in a container with well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for kind, type, and size of exterior plant required.

C. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

D. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.

E. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.

F. Root Flare: Also called “trunk flare”. The area at the base of the plant’s stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk. Root flare shall be set at grade.

G. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or top surface of a fill or backfill, before placing planting soil.

H. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

I. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil, but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including planting soil.

1. Plant Materials: Include quantities, sizes, quality, and sources for plant materials.
2. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer’s application instructions specific to this Project. Comply with City of Raleigh Parks and Recreation Pesticide Policy.

B. Sample of Verification:

1. Nursery Sources: Submit a list of all nurseries that will supply plants, along with a list of the plants they will provide and the location of the nursery. Plants shall have been grown within the cold hardiness zone for the project site.

2. Trees and Shrubs: Provide digital photos from the nursery with height identified (where applicable for trees) for review by Landscape Architect prior to digging. All trees and shrubs shall be reviewed, approved and tagged by Landscape Architect prior to arrival on site, either at place of purchase, nursery or holding yard. Contractor shall be responsible for the cost of travel associated with the plant material review, including time, mileage, meals and lodging, if necessary, incurred by Landscape Architect, unless approved otherwise by Owner.

3. Mulch: 1 lb of each mulch required, in sealed plastic bags labeled with source of mulch. Sample shall be typical of the lot of materials to be delivered and installed on the site; provided an accurate representation of color, texture, and makeup of the material.

C. Qualification Data: For landscape Installer. Include key personnel background and list of similar projects, minimum 3 projects completed and 5 years of experience in landscape installation by Installer demonstrating Installer’s capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of owners’ contact persons.

D. Material Test Reports: For existing surface soil and imported or manufactured topsoil.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape installer shall be a licensed Landscape Contractor. Only a landscape Contractor as defined by the General Statutes of North Carolina and licensed in North Carolina shall be permitted to perform this work. A copy of the Landscape Contractor's License or License Number shall be presented to the Owner's representative at the time the contract is executed.

1. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when exterior planting is in progress.
2. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.
3. Trees shall be installed by or under the supervision of an ISA Certified Arborist or approved professional.

B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

C. Soil Analysis: Furnish soil analysis by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil.

1. Based on the test results, state recommended quantities of nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil.
2. Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.

D. Provide quality, size, genus, species, quantity and variety/cultivar of exterior plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1, "American Standard for Nursery Stock."

E. Tree and Shrub Measurements: Measure according to ANSI Z60.1 with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Do not prune to obtain required sizes. Take caliper measurements 6 inches above ground for trees up to 4-inch caliper size, and 12 inches above ground for larger sizes. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip-to-tip.

F. Observation and Rejection: Landscape Architect shall observe trees and shrubs at place of purchase, nursery holding yard, or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, size, and quality. Landscape Architect retains right to observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, insects, injuries, and latent defects and to reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.

G. Substitutions:

1. Substitutions for the listed plant material will be considered if the listed material cannot be located or confirmed by known suppliers. Plant suppliers must be researched and located prior to submittal. If plant material substitutions are to be made after award of the contract, the substitution must be of similar growth habit, form, and characteristics; similar in specified size; and subject to approval or rejection by the Owner's representative.
2. If for any reason trees cannot be installed according to the plans, the Contractor shall inform the Owner prior to plant material delivery, and alternate planting locations shall be selected by the Owner's representative.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws if applicable.

B. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, storm drains, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
2. Provide erosion control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharged of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

C. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery, except as approved by Landscape Architect. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of exterior plants during delivery. Do not drop exterior plants during delivery.

D. Handle planting stock by root ball. Heavier material shall be handled with straps on the root ball and appropriate equipment such as a small skid steer loader.

E. Deliver bare-root stock plants freshly dug. Immediately after digging up bare-root stock, pack root system in wet straw, hay, or other suitable material to keep root system moist until planting.

F. Store bulbs, corms and tubers in a dark dry place at 45-55 degrees F until planting.

G. Deliver exterior plants after preparations for planting have been completed and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set exterior plants in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.

1. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
2. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
3. Water root systems of exterior plants stored on-site with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet condition.
4. Heel-in bare-root stock. Soak roots that are in dry condition in water for two hours. Reject dried-out plants.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Pre-Installation Conference: Arrange a pre-installation conference with the Landscape Architect and the Owner 2 weeks prior to the initiation of any planting activities.

B. Planting Restrictions: Planting shall occur between October and April for all woody ornamentals. Coordinate planting periods with maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit.

D. Coordination with Lawns: Plant trees and shrubs after finish grades are established and before planting lawns, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.

1. When planting trees and shrubs after lawns, protect lawn areas and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Provide complete maintenance by skilled employees of landscape installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established for not less than 12 months from Substantial Completion.

B. Maintenance Service: Submit to Owner on first day of month Maintenance Report Form (provided) showing weekly maintenance completed. Owner shall verify and sign off on Maintenance Report Form prior to maintenance payment.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Warrant the exterior plants, for the warranty period indicated, against defects including death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from neglect or abuse by Owner, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.

1. Warranty Period for all plants: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

2. Remove dead exterior plants immediately.

3. Replace exterior plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period during designated planting season or as directed by Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANT MATERIAL

A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant Schedule or Plant Legend shown on Drawings and complying with ANSI Z60.1, with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock free of disease, insects, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.

B. Standards: All plant material and installation work shall conform to the standards detailed in the following documents including the latest additions and amendments:

1. *American National Standards for Tree Care Operations, ANSI A300.* American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd Street, New York, N.Y. 10036

2. *American National Standard for Nursery Stock, ANSI Z60.1.* American Nursery and Landscape Association, 1250 Eye Street. NW, Suite 500, Washington, D.C. 20005

3. *Hortus Third*, The Staff of the L.H. Bailey Hortorium. 1976. MacMillan Publishing Co., New York

C. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 for types and form of plants required. Plants of larger size may be used if acceptable to Landscape Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.

D. Label each plant of each variety and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of botanical and common name. Include nomenclature for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable.

E. All plant material shall be free of all pests, diseases, and cankers, in healthy condition, and free of mechanical damage at the time of planting.

2.2 PLANTING SOILS

A. Planting soil: ASTM D 5268, pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 20 percent organic material content; free of stones 1/2 inch or larger in any dimension and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

1. Soil Source: Reuse surface soil stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of stockpiled surface soil to produce viable planting soil. Remove roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Amend surface soil per soil test recommendations and notify Landscape Architect of type and quantity of amendments.
2. Supplement with imported or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources when quantities are insufficient.

2.3 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural limestone containing a minimum 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:

1. Class: Class T, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 8 sieve and a minimum 75 percent passing through No. 60 sieve.
2. Provide lime in form of dolomitic limestone.

B. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 6 sieve and a maximum 10 percent passing through No. 40 sieve.

C. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, free of toxic materials, particle size as approved by Landscape Architect.

2.4 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 3/4-inch sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.

B. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, and material harmful to plant growth.

2.5 FERTILIZER

A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 4 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphoric acid.

B. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing agency.

C. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelletized fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing agency.
2. Fish-emulsion, compost tea.

D. Other Organic Fertilizer: Contractor is encouraged to utilize other organic fertilizer with a lower nitrogen value, such as worm castings, sewage sludge. Contractor shall submit product information for Architect's approval prior to application.

2.6 MULCHES

A. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:

1. Type: Double-shredded hardwood; Ground or shredded bark; leaf mulch; Wood and bark chips.
2. Color: Brown.

B. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.

C. Mineral Mulch: hard, durable stone, washed free of loam, sand, clay, and other foreign substances, of following type, size range, and color:

1. Type: 3" Pennsylvania Blend River Rock or other approved material as project site dictates.
2. Size Range: 3 inches.
3. Color: as approved by Landscape Architect.

2.7 PESTICIDES AND HERBICIDES

A. Pesticides: Registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pre-Emergent herbicide: Effective for controlling the germination of growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicide: Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.8 STAKES AND GUYS

A. Upright and Guy Stakes: Rough-sawn, sound, new hardwood, redwood, or pressure-preservative-treated softwood, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, 2 by 2 inches by length indicated, pointed at one end.

B. Wood Deadmen: Timbers measuring 8 inches in diameter and 48 inches long, treated with specified wood pressure-preservative treatment.

C. Polyester Ties: ¾" flat woven polyester strap, Abortie Green, or approved equal.

D. Guy and Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1, galvanized-steel wire, 2-strand, twisted, 0.106 inch in diameter.

E. Guy Cable: 5-strand, 3/16-inch-diameter, galvanized-steel cable, with zinc-coated turnbuckles, a minimum of 3 inches long, with two 3/8-inch galvanized eyebolts.

F. Hose Chafing Guard: Reinforced rubber or plastic hose at least 1/2 inch in diameter, cut to lengths required to protect tree trunks from damage.

G. Flags: Standard surveyor's plastic flagging tape, 6 inches long.

2.9 LANDSCAPE EDGINGS

A. Steel Edging: Standard commercial-steel edging, rolled edge, fabricated in sections of standard lengths, with loops stamped from or welded to face of sections to receive stakes.

1. Edging Size: 1/8 inch wide by 6 inches deep.
2. Stakes: Tapered steel, a minimum of 12 inches long.
3. Accessories: Standard tapered ends, corners, and splicers.
4. Finish: Zinc coated.
5. Paint Color: Black.

B. Aluminum Edging: Standard-profile extruded-aluminum edging, ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy 6063-T6, fabricated in standard lengths with interlocking sections with loops stamped from face of sections to receive stakes.

1. Edging Size: 1/8 inch wide by 6 inches deep.
2. Stakes: Aluminum, ASTM B 221, alloy 6061-T6, approximately 1-1/2 inches wide by 12 inches long.
3. Finish: Black anodized.
4. Paint Color: Black.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

A. Wood Pressure-Preservative Treatment: AWPA C2 with waterborne preservative for soil and freshwater use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and containing no arsenic, including ammoniacal copper arsenate, ammoniacal copper since arsenate, and chromated copper arsenate.

B. Root Barrier: Black, molded, modular panels manufactured with 50 percent recycled polyethylene plastic with ultraviolet inhibitors, or herbicide impregnated fabric manufactured for this use.

C. Burlap: Non-synthetic, biodegradable.

D. Mycorrhizal Fungi: Dry, granular inoculant containing at least 5300 spores per lb of vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and 95 million spores per ob of ectomycorrhizal fungi, 33 percent hydrogel, and a maximum of 5.5 percent inert material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive exterior plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, and lawns and existing exterior plants from damage caused by planting operations.

B. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

C. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple exterior plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Architect’s acceptance of layout before planting. Make minor adjustments as required.

3.3 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT

A. Loosen subgrade of planting beds to a minimum depth of 12 inches prior to mixing amendments. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

1. Thoroughly blend planting soil mix before spreading or spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil mix.

    a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
    b. Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.

2. Spread planting soil mix to a depth as indicated on Drawings but not less than required to meet finish grades after natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.

    a. Spread approximately one-half the thickness of planting soil mix over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 6 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil mix.

B. Finish Grading: Grade planting beds to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

C. Restore planting beds if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading and before planting.

3.4 TREE AND SHRUB EXCAVATION

A. Pits and Trenches: Excavate circular pits with sides sloped inward. Trim base leaving center area raised slightly to support root ball and assist in drainage. Do not further disturb base. Scarify sides of plant pit smeared or smoothed during excavation.

1. Excavate approximately three times as wide as ball diameter for all stock or prepare entire planting bed.

2. Pits shall be no deeper than the root flare of the tree or plant which shall be installed at grade, no higher than 2" above grade, and never below grade.

B. Subsoil removed from excavations may be used as backfill provided it meets the specified planting soil mix requirements.

C. Obstructions: Notify Owner if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.

D. Drainage: Ensure tree pits drain within 24 hours. Notify Owner if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub pits.

3.5 TREE AND SHRUB PLANTING

A. Tree Planting in Hardscape Areas – Refer to the requirements in the City of Raleigh Street Design Manual

B. Set balled and burlapped stock plumb and in center of pit or trench with top of root ball 1-2 inches above adjacent finish grades.

1. Remove burlap and wire baskets from tops of root balls and top ½ of root ball, cut off and discard from hole, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.

2. Place planting soil mix around root ball in layers, tamping gently to settle mix and eliminate voids and air pockets. When pit is approximately one-half backfilled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of planting soil mix.

C. Set container-grown stock plumb and in center of pit or trench with root flare at grade, no more than 2 inches above adjacent finish grades, and never below grade.

1. Carefully remove root ball from container without damaging root ball or plant. Gently loosen the roots and cut any girdling roots in at least two places.

2. Place planting soil mix around root ball in layers, tamping to settle mix and eliminate voids and air pockets. When pit is approximately one-half backfilled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of planting soil mix.

D. Organic Mulching: Apply 3-inch average thickness of organic mulch extending 12 inches beyond edge of planting pit or trench. Do not place mulch within 3 inches of trunks or stems. Root flare shall be visible at base of all plant material.

3.6 TREE AND SHRUB PRUNING

A. Prune, thin, and shape trees and shrubs according to standard horticultural practice and ANSI A-300 Pruning Standard. Unless otherwise indicated by Architect, do not cut tree leaders; remove only injured or dead branches from all plant material. Prune shrubs to retain natural character. Shrub sizes indicated are sizes after pruning.

3.7 ROOT PRUNING

A. Area for root pruning shall be approved by Owner's representative.

B. Acceptable methods of cutting are by sharp hand pruners, loppers, hand saw or hydraulic tools. Implement must leave a clean cut.

C. If excavation causes pruned roots over 1.5" in diameter to remain exposed for more than 24 hours, roots on tree side shall be kept moist. Backfill with topsoil, moist mulch, or drape with wet burlap.

D. Where concrete is poured adjacent to pruned roots, approved heavy duty plastic barrier shall be installed against the tree side of the pruned roots to prevent toxic uptake.

3.8 GUYING AND STAKING

A. Upright Staking and Tying: Stake trees as directed by Owner. Stake trees of 2- through 5-inch caliper. Stake trees of less than 2-inch caliper only as required to prevent wind tip-out. Use a minimum of 3 stakes of length required to penetrate at least 18 inches below bottom of backfilled excavation and to extend 72 inches above grade. Set vertical stakes and space to avoid penetrating root balls or root masses. Support trees with two strands of tie wire encased in hose sections or arborist tape at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree. Space stakes equally around trees. No staking required in areas protected from excessive wind.

B. Guying and Staking: Guy and stake trees exceeding 12 feet in height and more than 3 inches in caliper, unless otherwise indicated. Securely attach no fewer than 3 guys to stakes 30 inches long, driven to grade.

1. Provide turnbuckles for each guy wire and tighten securely.

2. Attach flags to each guy wire, one above turnbuckle and one 6 inches above finish grade.

3.9 GROUNDCOVER AND BULB PLANTING

A. Set out and space ground cover and plants as indicated.

B. Dig holes large enough to allow spreading of roots, and backfill with planting soil.

C. Work soil around roots to eliminate air pockets and leave a slight saucer indentation around plants to hold water. Form saucers around shrubs over 36" on center and all trees.

D. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.

3.10 PLANTING BED MULCHING

A. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting beds and other areas indicated.

1. Organic Mulch: Apply 3-inch average thickness of organic mulch, and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch against plant stems.

3.11 EDGING INSTALLATION

A. Wood Edgings: Install wood headers or edgings where indicated. Anchor with wood stakes spaced up to 36 inches apart, driven at least 1 inch below top elevation of header or edging. Use 2 galvanized nails per stake to fasten headers and edging; length as needed to penetrate both members and provide 1/2-inch clinch at point. Predrill stakes if needed to avoid splitting.

B. Steel Edging: Install steel edging where indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Aluminum Edging: Install aluminum edging where indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Plastic Edging: Install plastic edging where indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.12 PLANT MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance Schedule: Weekly site visit, Monthly Report Form due to Owner.

B. Maintain plantings throughout maintenance period by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding (beds and tree rings shall be maintained weed free), fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray or treat as required to keep plants free of insects and disease.

C. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling, rutting or damage by equipment or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.

D. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

E. Watering Instruction: Provide and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and watering equipment to convey water from sources.

1. Schedule watering to comply with the latest City of Raleigh Water Conservation Ordinance.

2. Watering volumes should be based upon delivery of 1 inch of moisture per week to the plant if precipitation does not meet that amount during the active growing season defined as April 1 through November 1.

3. Supplemental water shall be applied during the establishment period as frequently as 3 times per week and during periods of drought or excessive heat.

4. Use a slow flow hose end device and water each tree at the base for several minutes. Commercially available water bags are acceptable to ensure the root ball is soaked. All watering bags shall be removed from trees starting November 1 until April 1 of following year.

F. For maintenance of landscape associated with stormwater devices, refer to Architect’s Best Management Practice operation and maintenance manual.

G. Mulch shall be refreshed at the end of the maintenance period, all stakes, ties, etc. removed at this time as well.

3.13 PESTICIDE AND HERBICIDE APPLICATION

A. Apply pesticides and other chemical projects and biological control agents in accordance with the product label. Coordinate applications with owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide: Apply to tree, shrub and ground-cover areas in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not apply to seeded areas.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicide: Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.14 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. During exterior planting, keep adjacent pavings and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.

B. Protect exterior plants from damage due to landscape operations, operations by other contractors and trades, and others. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged exterior planting.

C. After installation and before Substantial Completion, remove nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, plantings, and Project site. Remove tree stabilization materials at the end of the maintenance period, or as approved by Architect. Nursery tags with species name shall remain until the end of the maintenance period.

3.15 DISPOSAL

A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 329300

SECTION 334100 - SECONDARY STORM DRAINAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe and fittings.
2. Drains.
3. Catch basins.
4. Stormwater inlets.
5. Pipe outlets.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Catch basins, drop inlets, and area drains: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and grates.
2. Stormwater structures and trench drains: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, design calculations, and concrete design-mix reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.

B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

D. Handle catch basins and drop inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Engineer and City (Owner) no fewer than two (2) days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Engineer's or City of Raleigh's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HDPE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. High Density Polyethylene Pipe (HDPE): AASHTO Designation M252 Type S, M294 Type S and MP7-97 Type S, smooth interior/annular exterior. Only permitted when specifically indicated on Drawings. Pipe shall be installed in accordance with pipe manufacturer's installation Guidelines for Culvert Storm Drainage Applications.
   1. Pipe Joints and fittings shall conform to AASHTO M252 and M294.
   2. Acceptable manufacturers: Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc. "ADS N-12", HANCOR, INC. "Hi-Q", or approved equal.

2.2 DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Area Drains:

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements of local governing authority. Available manufactures offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but not limited to, the following:

      a. Josam Company.
      b. MIFAB, Inc.
      c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
      d. Tyler Pipe.
      e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
      f. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

   2. Description: ASME A112.6.3 gray-iron round body with anchor flange and round secured grate. Include bottom outlet with inside calk or spigot connection, of sizes indicated.
   3. Top-Loading Classification(s): Heavy Duty.

B. Area Drains:

   1. Description: 12 by 12 inch square cast iron grate, with black powder coating. Open surface area of 59.9 square inches. ADA compliant.

   2. Description: 24" Nyloplast ADS Catch Basin
      a. 24" Standard Grate Assmebly
      b. 24" Pedestrian Grate Assembly. ADA Complaint
      c. 24" Iron ADS Dome Grate

2.3 CATCH BASINS

A. Standard Precast Concrete Catch Basins:

1. Description: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
2. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 6-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
3. Riser Sections: 6-inch (102-mm) minimum thickness, 48-inch diameter, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
4. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
5. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
6. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
7. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match diameter frame and grate.
8. Steps: Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 15-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than 36 inches.
9. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.

B. Designed Precast Concrete Catch Basins: ASTM C 913, precast, reinforced concrete; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for joint sealants.

1. Joint Sealants: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
2. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
3. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match diameter frame and grate.
4. Steps: Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 15-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than 36 inches
5. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.

C. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.

1. Size: 24 by 24 inches minimum unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 STORMWATER INLETS

A. Curb Inlets: Made with vertical curb opening as shown on Drawing and according to local governing authority.

B. Frames and Grates: Heavy duty and ADA complaint as shown on Drawing and according to local governing authority.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.

D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

E. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
   1. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 14 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
   2. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
   3. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.

3.4 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION

A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.

B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

3.5 STORMWATER INLET INSTALLATION

A. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.

B. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.

C. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.

D. Construct energy dissipaters at outlets, as indicated.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.

1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 or larger, or to underground manholes and structures by cutting into existing unit and creating an opening large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.

    a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.

4. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.8 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:

1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.

B. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:

1. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
2. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least 48 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.

C. Backfill to grade according to Section 312333.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.

1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
2. Defects requiring correction include the following:

    a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.

3. Replace defective piping using new materials and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
4. Submit separate report for each test.
5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:

    a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
    b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
    c. Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924.

C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.10 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with water.

END OF SECTION 334100

SECTION 334100 - STORM DRAINAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

A. Except as otherwise stipulated in this specification, all storm drainage shall be performed in accordance with Divisions 3 and 8 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition. The work of furnishing and installing storm sewer shall consist of performing all work and services necessary to complete the construction of the storm sewer pipe, drainage structures, and outlet dissipation measures in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents.

B. Where proposed storm sewers are to be installed under existing roadways, the construction shall be performed in such a way that half of the roadway will be maintained and available to traffic in accordance with the plans, Contract Documents, the NCDOT "Roadway Standard Drawings," and the MUTCD.

PART 2 - SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall submit shop drawings to the Engineer for all storm drainage materials to be used on this project. Submittals shall be in accordance with Section 02000 of the Contract Documents.

PART 3 - QUALITY STANDARDS AND MATERIALS

A. Procedures for handling, laying, protection and use of pipe shall be in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's recommendations and these specifications. Procedures for construction of drainage structures shall be in accordance with these specifications.

B. Concrete Block or Brick shall conform to Section 1040-2 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition. The block or brick shall be embedded in a mortar bed to form a one-half (1/2) inch mortar joint.

C. Mortar used in brick masonry and joints shall conform to Section 1040-9 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition.

D. Precast Concrete Units shall conform to Section 1077 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition. The standard joint shall be sealed with a flexible joint material meeting Federal specification SS-S-00210 such as Ram-Nek or a butyl rubber sealant.

E. Foundation Conditioning Material shall conform to Section 300-9 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition.

F. Manhole Frames and Covers shall be in accordance with the City of Raleigh Standard Details.

G. Manhole Steps shall be in accordance with the City of Raleigh Standard Details. Steps shall be placed at twelve (12) inches O.C. for the full depth in all structures when they are greater than three (3) feet in depth. Steps shall be designed for a vertical load of 400 pounds and a horizontal pull out load of 1,000 pounds.

H. Yard Inlets, Catch Basins, and Curb Inlets shall be in accordance with the City of Raleigh Standard Details.
   1. Frame & Hood (City streets) shall be in accordance with the City of Raleigh Standard Details as directed by plans.

2. Drop Inlet Grates (City streets) shall be in accordance with the City of Raleigh Standard Detail as directed by plans.
3. Frame, Grates, & Hoods (NCDOT streets) shall be cast iron and conform to Section 1074-7 in the latest edition of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" and the dimensional requirements set forth in the latest edition of the NCDOT "Roadway Standard Drawings." Grates shall be stamped with the appropriate NCDOT specification number as evidence of satisfying the above requirements. Hoods shall be stamped with "Drains to Neuse River" or other wording as confirmed by the Engineer. Lettering shall be ¾" height and shall be clean, crisp, and free of defects.

PART 4 - CONSTRUCTION

A. All storm sewers shall be laid to provide a "true line" between manholes or structures, and they shall be installed at each deflection of line and/or grade.

B. The mortar for brick masonry shall conform to the requirements herein set forth. Excavation shall be made to the required depth and the foundation on which the brick masonry is to be laid shall be approved by the Inspector. The brick shall be laid so that they will be thoroughly bonded into the mortar joints by means of the "shove joint" method: (buttered or plastered joints will not be permitted). The headers and stretchers shall be so arranged as to thoroughly bond the mass. Brickwork shall be of alternate headers and stretchers with consecutive courses in thickness. The joints shall be completely filled with mortar. No spalls or bats shall be used except for shaping round irregular openings or when unavoidable to finish out a course. Competent bricklayers shall be employed on the work and all details of construction shall be in accordance with approved practice and to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

C. Manhole steps shall be set in the masonry as the work is built up, thoroughly bonded, and accurately spaced and aligned.

D. Inverts in storm drainage structures shall be shaped to form a smooth and regular surface free from sharp or jagged edges. They shall be sloped adequately to prevent sedimentation.

E. The castings shall be set in full mortar beds. All castings when set shall conform to the finished grade as established by the Engineer. Any castings not conforming shall be adjusted to the correct grade without extra compensation.

F. All pipes entering catch basins or junction boxes shall enter through a wall and not through a corner of the structure. The pipe shall not project into the drainage structure, but shall be finished flush with the inside of the structure.

G. When necessary, the contractor shall provide for the temporary diversion of water or dewatering in order to maintain the storm sewer foundations in a dry condition, and shall continue to maintain trenches in a dry condition until backfill and compaction activities are complete.

H. The Contractor shall maintain all storm sewers in a condition such that they will function properly from the time the storm sewers are installed until the City of Raleigh accepts the project. The Contractor shall thoroughly clean out all storm sewers at no expense to the owner throughout construction.

END OF SECTION 334100

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS

Historic Yates Mill County Park

4620 Lake Wheeler Road
Raleigh, NC

Wake County Facilities Design and Construction

336 Fayetteville Street
Raleigh, NC 27601

MOBILIZATION

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

A. Except as otherwise stipulated in this specification, mobilization to the site for all site work shall be performed in accordance with Section 800 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition. The work covered by this section consists of preparatory work and operation to mobilize personnel, materials, and equipment to the project site.

B. The Contractor shall submit a detailed mobilization schedule and / or plan to the engineer prior to the pre-construction conference.

C. The Contractor is responsible for route for all deliveries, and area to dispose of excess concrete on-site.

REINFORCED GRAVEL DRIVEWAY

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the labor, material, equipment, fasteners, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of reinforced ABC gravel and compacted ABC gravel maintenance yard. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for complete details of the reinforced ABC gravel and the compacted ABC gravel details. The cost to perform the work associated with the Reinforced Gravel Driveway shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

RELATED PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

Please see the following:

- Storm Drainage
- Concrete Paving
- Concrete Paving Joint Sealants

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified. All ABC gravel surfaces shall be constructed to provide components of consistent quality in appearance, function, and physical properties.

The compacted ABC gravel shall consist of one (1) foot thick standard ABC gravel and Mirafi 500X Geotextile Fabric, or approved equal. The one (1) foot thick ABC gravel layer shall be placed in two (2) equal lifts. The ABC gravel shall be placed on top of Mirafi 500X Geotextile Fabric, or approved equal. The Contractor shall confirm all required materials and product requirements for Geotextile Fabric with the Geotechnical Engineer prior to installation. The Mirafi 500X Geotextile Fabric shall be placed on top of a compacted subgrade base. The compacted subgrade base shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density.

All hardware (nuts, bolts, screw, fasteners, etc.) shall meet the specifications identified by the manufacturer and shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

If existing flatwork or hardscape materials that are to remain are damaged during construction, those sections of flatwork or hardscape materials are to be repaired or replaced to the satisfactory of the Project Landscape Architect. The contractor is required to video or photograph the project site in its entirety before construction begins to document existing site conditions.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit samples and / or mockups to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- ABC Gravel, one (1) gallon size physical sample
- Mirafi 500X Geotextile Fabric (or approved equal), twelve (12) inch by twelve (12) inch physical sample

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project.

GRAVELPAVE2 REINFORCEMENT

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the labor, material, equipment, fasteners, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of reinforced ABC gravel and compacted ABC gravel maintenance yard. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for complete details of the reinforced ABC gravel and the compacted ABC gravel details. The cost to perform the work associated with the GravelPave2 Reinforcement shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

RELATED PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

Please see the following:

- Storm Drainage
- Concrete Paving
- Concrete Paving Joint Sealants

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified. All ABC gravel surfaces shall be constructed to provide components of consistent quality in appearance, function, and physical properties.

The reinforced ABC gravel shall consist of a one (1) foot thick layer of standard ABC placed in two (2) lifts, Mirafi 500X Geotextile Fabric, or approved equal, and GravelPave2 reinforcement filled with 3/16" to 3/8" of angular gravel, or approved equal. The one (1) foot thick ABC gravel layer shall be placed in two (2) equal lifts. The GravelPave2 reinforcement shall be placed on top of the ABC gravel layer and shall be filled with angular gravel meeting the specified size between 3/16" to 3/8". The GravelPave2 reinforcement shall be attached with snap fit fasteners. The Contractor shall ensure that the GravelPave2 is installed per the manufacturer's recommendations. The ABC gravel surface shall be placed on top of Mirafi 500X Geotextile Fabric. The Contractor shall confirm all required materials and product requirements for Geotextile Fabric with the Geotechnical Engineer prior to installation. The Mirafi 500X Geotextile Fabric shall be placed on top of a compacted subgrade base. The compacted subgrade base shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density.

All hardware (nuts, bolts, screw, fasteners, etc.) shall meet the specifications identified by the manufacturer and shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

If existing flatwork or hardscape materials that are to remain are damaged during construction, those sections of flatwork or hardscape materials are to be repaired or replaced to the satisfactory of the Project Landscape Architect. The contractor is required to video or photograph the project site in its entirety before construction begins to document existing site conditions.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit samples and / or mockups to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- GravelPave2 (or approved equal), twelve (12) inch by twelve (12) inch physical sample and all color options for selection
- Mirafi 500X Geotextile Fabric (or approved equal), twelve (12) inch by twelve (12) inch physical sample

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project.

GRASSPAVE2 REINFORCED TURF

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the labor, material, equipment, fasteners, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of reinforced turf. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for complete details of the reinforced turf details. The cost to perform the work associated with the GrassPave2 Reinforced Turf shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

RELATED PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

Please see the following:

- Storm Drainage

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified. All reinforced turf surfaces shall be constructed to provide components of consistent quality in appearance, function, and physical properties.

The reinforced turf shall consist of a layer of compacted sandy, gravel road base, Hyrdrogrow mix, or approved equal, and GrassPave2 reinforcement filled with concrete sand (clean, sharp sand). The compacted sandy, gravel road base layer thickness shall be placed in accordance with the geotechnical engineer's recommendations. The GrassPave2 reinforcement shall be placed on top of the gravel road base layer and shall be filled with concrete sand (clean, sharp sand). The GrassPave2 reinforcement shall be attached with snap fit fasteners. The Contractor shall ensure that the GrassPave2 is installed per the manufacturer's recommendations. The hydrogrow mix shall be placed under the rings of the GrassPave2 reinforcement. Top grassroot mass of sod shall be 6mm above the top of the GrassPave2 rings. The Contractor shall confirm thickness of the gravel road base with the geotechnical engineer prior to installation. The compacted subgrade base shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density.

All hardware (nuts, bolts, screw, fasteners, etc.) shall meet the specifications identified by the manufacturer and shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

If existing flatwork or hardscape materials that are to remain are damaged during construction, those sections of flatwork or hardscape materials are to be repaired or replaced to the satisfactory of the Project Landscape Architect. The contractor is required to video or photograph the project site in its entirety before construction begins to document existing site conditions.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit samples and / or mockups to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- GrassPave2 (or approved equal), twelve (12) inch by twelve (12) inch physical sample and all color options for selection

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project.

DETECTABLE WARNING PANEL

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the labor, material, equipment, fasteners, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of detectable warning panels. Detectable Warning Panels shall be installed in the locations designated on the *Construction Documents* plans. The cost to perform the work associated with the Detectable Warning Panel shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

RELATED PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

Please see the following:

- Concrete Paving
- Concrete Paving Joint Sealants

QUALITY ASSURANCE

Detectable warning panels shall be a cast-in-place detectable / tactile warning surface tile system compliant with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Title III Regulations, 28 CFR Part 36 ADA Standards for Accessible Design, Appendix A, Section 4.29.2 Detectable Warnings on Walking Surfaces. Detectable warning panels shall be Vitrified Polymer Composite (VPC) constructed with an epoxy polymer composition and ultraviolet stabilized coating employing aluminum oxide particles in the truncated domes. The panels shall incorporate an in-line pattern of truncated domes measuring nominal 0.2" height, 0.9" base diameter, and 0.45" top diameter, spaced center-to-center 2.35" as measured in line. For wheelchair safety, the field area shall consist of a non-slip surface with a minimum of (40) 90 degree raised points 0.045" high, per square inch. Detectable warning panels shall be "Armor-Tile" as manufactured by Engineered Plastics Inc., or approved equal. Detectable warning panels shall measure 24" wide and length shall match width of sidewalk. Detectable warning panels shall be black in color.

Water Absorption of Tile when tested by ASTM D570-98 shall not exceed 0.05%.

Slip Resistance of Tile when tested by ASTM C1028-96 the combined Wet and Dry Static Co-Efficient of Friction shall not be less than 0.80 on top of domes and field area.

Compressive Strength of Tile when tested by ASTM D695-02a shall not be less than 28,000PSI.

Tensile Strength of Tile when tested by ASTM D638-03 shall not be less than 19,000PSI.

Flexural strength of Tile when tested by ASTM D790-03 shall not be less than 25,000PSI.

Accelerated Aging and Freeze Thaw Test of Tile and Adhesive System when tested to ASTM D1037-99 shall show no evidence of cracking, delamination, warpage, checking, blistering, color change, loosening of tiles or other detrimental defects.

Salt and Spray Performance of Tile when tested to ASTM B117-03 shall not show any deterioration or other defects after 200 hours of exposure.

Embedment flange spacing shall be no greater than 3.1" center-to-center.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit samples and / or mockups to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- Detectable Warning Panel, twelve (12) inch by twelve (12) inch physical sample

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer's warranties.

HIGH-VISIBILITY CROSSWALK

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the labor, material, equipment, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of all high-visibility crosswalks. A high-visibility crosswalk shall be installed in any location where a pedestrian path of travel is proposed to cross a vehicular travel surface as designated on the *Construction Documents* plans and details. The cost to perform the work associated with the High-Visibility Crosswalk shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

RELATED PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

Please see the following:

- Asphalt Paving

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified. All required materials for the completion of installation for all crosswalks shall be consistent in color, appearance, texture, and finish.

All crosswalk stripes shall be two (2) feet wide and six (6) feet long. All crosswalk stripes shall be spaces evenly from each other at two (2) foot spacing. All crosswalk stripes shall be centered on the centerline of the pedestrian path on both sides of the vehicular zone. All crosswalk stripes shall be placed at the angle of pedestrian travel lanes and traverse the pedestrian crossing. Crosswalk stripes shall be placed to avoid vehicle wheel paths where possible. All crosswalks shall have a maximum cross slope of two (2) percent and a maximum longitudinal slope of five (5) percent. Crosswalk stripes shall be thermoplastic, one-hundred and twenty millimeters (120mm) thick, and white in color.

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer’s warranties.

WHEEL STOP

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the labor, material, equipment, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of all wheel stops. The wheel stops shall be precast concrete and will be manufactured off-site and installed on-site in locations designated in the *Construction Documents* plans and in accordance with the detail drawings. The cost to perform the work associated with the Wheel Stop shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

RELATED PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

Please see the following:

- Reinforced Gravel Driveway

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

All wheel stops shall be precast concrete and shall be six feet (6') long by nine inches (9") wide by six inches (6") tall. Each will stop shall contain a one and one-half (1 ½) inch chamfer on each surface edge located on the top of the wheel stop, as drawn in the *Construction Documents* details. Each wheel stop shall contain reinforcement. The reinforcement shall be two (2) rods of #3 Rebar running the entire length of the wheel stop. The rebar shall be a minimum of two inches (2") from all exposed surfaces. Each wheel stop shall be secured in place with two (2) 5/8" galvanized steel dowels. Each dowel shall be flush with the top of the precast concrete wheel stop once it is anchored into place. All wheel stops shall be installed perfectly perpendicular to the parking space it is serving.

Where a wheel stop is to be installed on an asphalt surface, the galvanized steel dowels shall be located twelve inches (12") from each end of the wheel stop, extending twenty-four inches (24") below the asphalt finished surface.

Where a wheel stop is to be installed on reinforced ABC gravel, the galvanized steel dowel shall be located between twelve inches (12") and thirteen inches (13") from each end of the wheel stop. Steel dowels shall be located within a ring of the circle grid and shall not puncture the reinforcement grid. Any reinforcement grid that is punctured as a result of the installation of a wheel stop shall be replaced at no added cost to the Owner.

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer's warranties.

CONCRETE HEADER CURB

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the labor, material, equipment, excavation, concrete, asphalt, sub-base material, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of all concrete header curbs. In all locations where a concrete header curb shall be installed, a minimum two foot (2') wide asphalt pavement strip shall be repaired to provide a clean, consistent finished along all header curb and asphalt connections. Concrete header curbs shall be installed in locations designated in the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* plans and in accordance with the detail drawings. The cost to perform the work associated with the Concrete Header Curb shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

RELATED PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

Please see the following:

- Concrete Paving
- Concrete Paving Joint Sealants
- Asphalt Paving

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

All concrete shall be obtained from the same plant. Concrete shall not be installed in extreme temperatures. All control joints are to match existing concrete found on-site. Control joints are to be placed every six feet (6'), at all corners and changes in direction, or as needed to prevent all uncontrolled cracking. Every third joint is to be an expansion joint. Expansion joints are to be placed no more than twenty feet (20') apart and at all locations where a header curb meets an existing or proposed concrete surface. All concrete header curbs are to have a medium broom finish. Finish shall be applied perpendicular to the path of travel.

All concrete header curbs shall be cast-in-place concrete, minimum 3,600 PSI at 28 days, measuring six inches (6") wide and eighteen inches (18") tall and shall extend six inches (6") above the adjacent asphalt finished surface. The concrete header curb shall have a one and one-half inch (1 ½") radius on the front and back edges of the top (exposed) side. The six inch (6") section of curb exposed above grade shall also slope at seventy-five degrees (75°) from face-of-curb toward the back of curb as drawn in the *Construction Documents* details.

The concrete curb shall be placed on top of a four inch (4") thick layer of compacted aggregate. The compacted aggregate shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density.

The concrete header curb shall be reinforced with #3 rebar with 12" overlap. The rebar shall be minimum two inches (2") from all exposed edges of the concrete header curb as drawn in the *Construction Documents* details.

The compacted aggregate shall be placed on top of a compacted subgrade base. The compacted subgrade base shall meet 95% standard proctor density.

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer's warranties.

EXPOSED AGGREGATE PAVEMENT

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the labor, material, equipment, excavation, concrete, granite aggregate, sub-base material, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of all exposed aggregate concrete surfaces. The cost to perform the work associated with the Exposed Aggregate Pavement shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

RELATED PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS

Please see the following:

- Concrete Paving
- Concrete Paving Joint Sealants

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

Concrete shall not be installed in extreme temperatures. All joints shall be placed in the locations designated on the plans and as specified in the details. All control joints are to be saw cut to match existing concrete found on-site. In all instances where exposed aggregate concrete meets a concrete curb or another surface, such as a building face or existing paved area, an expansion joint shall be placed.

All granite aggregate shall be obtained from the same locations. Aggregate size, color, and appearance shall be consistent across all exposed aggregate applications. Concrete color mix shall be obtained from a single manufacturer, and an equal amount shall be applied to the concrete mix prior to pouring in order to create a consistent color finish. The aggregate shall be thoroughly mixed into the concrete as to avoid aggregate pieces from separating from the concrete surface after installation.

All standard-duty concrete shall be minimum 3,000 PSI at 28 days. All heavy-duty concrete shall be minimum 3,600 PSI at 28 days. The aggregate mix shall be #3 granite aggregate. The aggregate shall be mixed into the concrete prior to pouring the concrete slab. The finished surface of the concrete should be visually composed of approximately 70% aggregate.

The concrete color mix shall be Sika Color – 140 SG Buff or approved equal. Color mixture shall be incorporated into the concrete mix per the manufacturer's recommendations.

The standard-duty exposed aggregate concrete shall be four inches (4") thick and shall have a consistent finish and shall be meet proposed grades as designated in the *Construction Documents* plans. The concrete shall be placed on top of four inches (4") of compacted aggregate. The compacted aggregate shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density. The compacted aggregate layer shall be placed on top of compacted subgrade. The compacted subgrade shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density.

The heavy-duty exposed aggregate concrete shall be six inches (6") thick and shall have a consistent finish and shall be meet proposed grades as designated in the *Construction Documents* plans. The concrete shall be placed on top of six inches (6") of compacted aggregate. The compacted aggregate shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density. The compacted aggregate layer shall be placed on top of compacted subgrade. The compacted subgrade shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit samples and / or mockups to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- #3 Granite Aggregate, one (1) gallon physical sample
- Concrete Color Mix, physical color chip sample
- Exposed Aggregate Concrete, four (4) foot by four (4) foot mockup

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project.

STONE MASONRY RETAINING WALL

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of a cast-in-place concrete retaining wall with stone masonry veneer. All labor, material, equipment, excavation, concrete, timber, sub-base material, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of the seat wall with the mounted timber bench shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Stone Masonry Retaining Wall shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

The concrete retaining wall shall be cast-in-place, minimum 3,600 PSI at 28 days. The height of the concrete retaining wall will vary based on the proposed Grading and Drainage plans in the project *Construction Documents*. The retaining wall shall be connected to a concrete footer with a wall key as demonstrated in the details provided in the *Construction Documents.* The wall and footer shall be reinforced with #4 rebar. The rebar shall be spaced twelve inches (12”) on center each way and shall maintain a minimum three inch (3”) clearance from all exposed surfaces. The concrete footer shall be minimum 3,600 PSI at 28 days. The footer shall be twelve inches (12”) thick and forty inches (40”) wide. The top of the footer shall be a minimum of eighteen inches (18”) below the adjacent finished surface. The footer shall extend twelve inches (16”) from both the front and back sides of the concrete wall. The concrete footer shall be placed on top of a six inch (6”) thick layer of compacted aggregate. The compacted aggregate shall be compacted to meet 95% standard proctor density. The compacted aggregate shall be placed on top of compacted subgrade. The compacted subgrade shall meet 95% standard proctor density.

A 4” drain system shall be installed at the base of the seat wall on top of the concrete footer. The four inch (4”) drain system shall include a four inch (4”) perforated HDPE Pipe (with sock) to run the entire length of the landscape planter created by the seat wall. The perforated pipe shall be connected to the storm drain system. The contractor shall verify that connection of the perforated drainpipe and the storm drain system in installed properly. A four inch (4”) clean out pipe with cap shall be located at all bends in the concrete seat wall, extending up from the perforated pipe located at the bottom of the seat wall. The perforated drainpipe with sock shall be surrounded by #57 washed drainage stone. The washed drainage stone shall be surrounded by non-woven permeable geotextile fabric, overlap minimum eighteen inches (18”). Compacted subgrade shall be placed outside of the geotextile fabric on the side opposite of the concrete seat wall. The compacted subgrade shall not extend above the height of the geotextile fabric and the drainage stone. The compacted subgrade shall be compacted to meet 75% standard proctor density.

The concrete retaining wall shall have a stone masonry veneer. The stone masonry veneer shall be grouted to the cast-in-place concrete retaining wall and shall not be visible. The stone masonry veneer shall match the existing stone veneer walls found on-site in size, color, and pattern.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit samples and / or mockups to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- Stone Masonry Veneer
- Stone Masonry Retaining Wall, forty-eight inches (48”) tall by thirty-six inches (36”) long physical mockup.

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer’s warranties.

ACCESSIBLE PARKING SIGNAGE

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of all accessible parking signs proposed in all locations identified in the Historic Oak View County Park *Construction Documents.* All labor, material, equipment, excavation, footings, sub-base material, related services, fees, and supervision required for the installation of all accessible parking signs shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Accessible Parking Signage shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

All parking lot striping, symbols, arrows, crosswalks, and stop bars are to be thermoplastic. Striping shall be ninety millimeters (90mm) thick. Symbols, arrows, and crosswalks shall be one-hundred and twenty millimeters (120mm) thick. All thermoplastic materials shall be white in color unless noted otherwise in the *Construction Documents*.

All signage shall follow the standards found in the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD). All accessible signage shall be installed in grade. Each accessible parking space shall have an accessible parking sign installed behind the concrete sidewalk. All van accessible parking spaces shall be designated using a van accessible parking sign. All associated hardware (nuts, bolts, screw, fasteners, etc.) shall be stainless steel, concealed, and tamper-proof.

If existing flatwork or hardscape materials that are to remain are damaged during construction, those sections of flatwork or hardscape materials are to be repaired or replaced to the satisfactory of the Project Landscape Architect. The contractor is required to video or photograph the project site in its entirety before construction begins to document existing site conditions.

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, or workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer’s warranties.

LIGHT POLE

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the relocated light pole identified in the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents.* All labor, material, equipment, excavation, footings, sub-base material, related services, fees, and supervision required for the relocation of the light pole shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Light Pole shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

The relocated light pole shall be installed, complete with, but not limited to, housings, energy efficient ballasts, starters and wiring. Fixtures shall have the manufacturer's name, trademark, model number, serial number, date of manufacture (month-year), and lot number as identification permanently marked inside each unit and the outside of each packaging box. The Contractor is responsible for providing this information on the relocated light pole if it is not already present. Operating characteristics shall be permanently marked inside each unit, including rated voltage and power in Watts and Volt-Ampere.

Contractor shall provide electrical wiring within fixture suitable for connection to branch circuit wiring as follows:

- NEC Type SF-1 for 120 Volts, minimum No. 18 AWG.
- NEC Type SF-2 for 277 Volts, minimum No. 18 AWG.

Contractor shall examine areas and conditions under which lighting fixtures are to be installed, and substrate for supporting lighting fixtures. Notify A-E in writing of conditions detrimental to proper completion of the work. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

Contractor shall coordinate with Duke Energy to have proper model, style, footing sizes and design, and all other related services required for the complete installation of the light pole. The Contractor is responsible for the sizing and design of the footing if this is not provided by Duke Energy.

If the existing light pole being relocated is damaged in any way during construction, the Contractor shall replace the light pole and all necessary materials and equipment at no cost to the owner.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit materials, samples, and / or mockups to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- Light Pole, product cut sheets

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, and workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer’s warranties.

CONCRETE STAIRCASE

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of all proposed concrete staircases identified in the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents.* All labor, material, equipment, excavation, concrete, handrails, sub-base material, related services, and supervision required for the installation of the concrete staircases shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Concrete Staircase shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

All concrete shall be obtained from the same plant. Concrete shall not be installed in extreme temperatures. All control joints are to be saw cut to match existing concrete found on-site. All concrete is to have a medium broom finish. Finish shall be applied perpendicular to the path of travel.

All staircase risers shall be six inches (6”) in height. All treads shall be twelve inches (12”) in length.

The staircase shall be reinforced with #4 rebar spaced 12” on center, each way.

All standard-duty concrete shall be minimum 3,600 PSI at 28 days. The staircase shall be reinforced with #4 rebar. The rebar shall be spaced twelve inches (12”) on center each way and shall maintain a minimum three-inch (3”) clearance from all exposed surfaces. The concrete staircase shall adjoin all adjacent surfaces and landings with one-half inch (1/2”) expansion joints at the top and bottom of each staircase.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit detailed shop drawings to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) for each of the following:

- Staircase

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, or workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer’s warranties.

THREE-SLAT WOOD FENCE

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of a three-slat wood fence around the additional parking spaces located in the northeast corner of the existing visitor center parking lot and connecting to the existing adjacent three-slat wood fence. All labor, material, equipment, hardware, fasteners, excavation, concrete, sub-base material, related services, and supervision required for the installation of the wood access gate shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Three-Slat Wood Fence shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

The three-slat wood fence shall consist of three slat boards that are one and one-half inch (1-1/2”) thick by six inch (6”) tall by eight foot (8’) long and six inch (6”) by six inch (6”) by seven feet (7’) tall wood post on each side of all slat board sections.

Both ends of all three slat boards shall be centered on the six-inch (6”) by six-inch (6”) fence post. A one and one-half inch (1-1/2”) thick by six-inch (6”) wide by fifty-four-inch (54”) tall wood face board shall be placed on top of each end of the slat boards and connected to the slat board and the wood post using three (3) one-quarter inch (¼”) diameter by four-inch (4”) long screw. Each face board shall be connected to with three (3) screws at each slat board, totaling nine (9) screws per face board. The face board shall be flush with the top of the wood post and top of the highest slat board. The face board shall be centered on the six-inch (6”) by six-inch (6”) wood post.

The top of the highest slat board shall be flush with the top of the wood post. Each slat board shall be spaced as to leave an eighteen-inch (18”) gap between the slat boards. The bottom of the lowest slat board shall be six inches (6”) from the finished grade and fifty-four inches (54”) from the top of the wood post.

Each wood post shall consist of a concrete footer. Each concrete footer shall be minimum 4,500 PSI at 28 days. The wood post shall extend twenty-two inches (22”) into the concrete footer and shall be a minimum of six inches (6”) from the bottom of the concrete footer. The concrete footer shall be minimum 2” below finished and the top of each footer shall be sloped a minimum of two percent (2%) away from the wood post as to promote positive drainage. Each concrete footer shall be placed on top of a six-inch (6”) thick layer of aggregate base course compacted to 95% standard proctor. Each concrete footer shall be two feet (2’) wide by two feet (2’) wide by two feet (2’) tall.

The Three-Slat Wood Fence shall match the adjacent wood fence on-site in color, style, height, and appearance.

All screws shall be one-quarter inch (¼”) diameter by four-inch (4”) long, outdoor-rated screws and shall not rust. Screws shall be black in color and shall be embedded one-eight inch (1/8”) minimum into the face board.

The Three-Slat Wood Fence shall be installed to completion per the *Construction Documents* details and plans.

If hardscape materials that are to remain are damaged during construction, those sections of flatwork or hardscape materials are to be repaired or replaced to the satisfactory of the Project Landscape Architect. The contractor is required to video or photograph the project site in its entirety before construction begins to document existing site conditions.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit detailed product information to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- Gate Latch with Padlock Eyes and all fasteners
- Cane Bolt and with receivers for open and closed positions

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, or workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer's warranties.

CONCRETE RIBBON CURB

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of a concrete ribbon curb that will border the reinforced ABC gravel area. All labor, material, equipment, excavation, concrete, sub-base material, related services, and supervision required for the installation of the concrete ribbon curb shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Concrete Ribbon Curb shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

All concrete and aggregates shall be obtained from a single manufacturer to provide components of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

The concrete ribbon curb shall be cast-in-place concrete, twelve inches (12”) in width, eight inches (8”) thick, minimum 4,000 PSI strength at 28 days. Concrete band shall include broom finish and reinforcing. Reinforcing to be #4 rebar spaced twelve inches (12”) on center. Control joints shall be spaced equally approximately six feet (6’) on center and at all corners / changes in direction. Expansion joints shall be placed between all instances where the ribbon curb meets proposed header curb, heavy-duty concrete parking pad, exposed aggregate concrete sidewalk, and at every third control joint.

Fabrication and installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents*, this special provision, and the manufacturer’s recommended method of installation.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit samples and / or mockups to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- Concrete Ribbon Curb

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, or workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer’s warranties.

DECORATIVE STONE DRAINGE FEATURE

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of two decorative stone drainage features and the related drainage structure that are proposed at the Mill Pond Pavilion under the roof gutter outlet. All labor, material, equipment, excavation, drainage structures, decorative stone, sub-base material, related services, and supervision required for the installation of the decorative stone drainage features shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Decorative Stone Drainage Feature shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

The decorative stone shall be stone boulders placed to cover the iron dome grate from view. The boulders shall be sized adequately such that the total number of boulders needed per feature does not exceed ten (10) stone boulders. The drain inlet shall be surrounded by a twelve-inch (12”) wide by six-inch (6”) thick rock mulch strip. The rock mulch strip shall be placed on top of non-woven geotextile filter fabric separator.

The rock mulch strip shall be #3 Pennsylvania Blend River Rock, or approved equal. The catch basin shall be surrounded by six inches (6”) of the same river rock material. The Catch Basin shall be a twenty-four (24”) inch Nyloplast ADS Catch Basin, or approved equal. The dome grate shall be a twenty-four (24”) Iron ADS Dome Grate, or approved equal.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit detailed product information to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- Decorative Stone Boulders
- 24” ADS Dome Grate
- 24” ADS Catch Basin
- 3” Pennsylvania Blend River Rock, or approved equal

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, or workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer’s warranties.

OBSERVATION DECK

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of the observation deck, all guardrails, the backwall and wingwalls, decking boards, and all components necessary to construction the observation deck. All labor, materials, equipment, delivery, pile drive setup, pile testing, dewatering, and other incidentals as necessary for construction and installation of the overlook deck shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Observation Deck shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work. Contractor to provide geotechnical recommendations for total length of all wood piles. Geotechnical engineer shall be licensed in the State of North Carolina. Contractor's price shall be all encompassing to fully complete geotechnical testing, determine recommended pile length, and construct the observation deck with pile length incorporated.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

Framing, decking, nailers, and pedestrian rail components shall be Pressure Treated Southern Yellow Pine (No. 1) Surface Dry (SS4S) with a moisture content of 19% or less, meeting the requirements of Section 1082 of the standard specifications unless noted otherwise. Composite railing/decking shall be MoistureShield 'Vantage' Composite Decking or approved equal.

All timber piles shall be Southern Yellow Pine (No. 2) conforming to ASTM D25. Where piles are cut off at top of pile cap, minimum butt diameter shall be no less than 8 inches.

Timber and lumber shall be treated with waterborne preservatives (CCA or ACO) in accordance with AWPA Standard U1, Commodity Specification A, to the requirements of the following use categories:

a. Piles: UC4C
b. Backwalls, wingwalls, cap beams and stringers: UC4B
c. Decking, pedestrian railing components, all other lumber: UC3B

Each decking member shall be installed bark side up to prevent cupping. When joints are required for decking members, stagger the joint along boardwalk alignment.

Maximum spacing between decking members shall be 1/8".

All vertical members shall be plumb.

All saw cuts, bolt holes, and other holes shall be treated with appropriate preservation solution prior to installing bolts.

Unless noted otherwise, mechanical wood connections shall be installed per manufacturer’s recommendations, with all fastener holes fully populated.

All connectors shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

All fasteners, connectors, and bolts shall be hot-dip galvanized and conform to ASTM F3125 grade A325, with Nuts conforming to ASTM A563 and washers conforming to ASTM F436, unless otherwise noted.

All bolted connections shall include oversided ogee washers installed between the wood and the bolt head and between the wood and the nut.

Attach blocking to joist using two (2) #12 x 5" hot-dip galvanized wood screws, conforming to ASTM A153, at each side of blocking. Predrill as required to avoid splitting.

Attach floor decking to each joist using two (2) #12 x 5" hot-dip galvanized wood screws, conforming to ASTM A153, at each joist. Predrill as required to avoid splitting.

Attach side rail to post using two (2), and top rail to post using four (4) #8 x 3-1/2" hot-dip galvanized wood screws, conforming to ASTM A153, at each post. Predrill as required to avoid splitting.

All longitudinal railing members shall span a minimum of two rail post spacings.

Approach railings shall be provided.

Contractor shall use extreme care and take any measures necessary to ensure that no debris is dropped into the waterway. Any debris which is allowed to drop on the banks shall not be allowed to enter the pond and shall be removed and disposed of by the contractor. Cost of removal and disposal of debris shall be included in the Contractor's bid.

Contractor's bid shall include all labor, materials, equipment, delivery, pile drive setup, pile testing, dewatering, and other incidentals as necessary for construction and installation of the overlook deck.

All work shall conform to the latest editions of the North Carolina State Building Code (2018), the ACI Building Code (318), the AISC Code, the AWS Code, OSHA, and all applicable ASTM standards. In case of conflict, the most stringent requirement shall govern.

Construction methods, procedures, and sequences are the Contractor's responsibility, and the Contractor shall take all the necessary means to maintain and protect the structural integrity of all construction at all stages.

The Contractor shall verify all dimensions and elevations before proceeding with fabrication and construction.

The Contractor shall provide temporary bracing and shoring against wind, water, and construction loads throughout the work. The observation deck as indicated is designed as a complete assemblage. Temporary erection or construction loads and/or construction sequence have not been included in the design. The Contractor shall store materials and construct the deck in a manner that will not overstress the deck structure.

Any discrepancies between the construction documents and the field conditions shall be reported to the project engineer and project landscape architect immediately.

Contractor shall use the manufacturer's certified drawings and specifications for equipment anchorage and details.

The use or reproduction of these contract drawings by any contractor, subcontractor, erector, or material supplier in lieu of preparation of shop drawings signifies his or her acceptance of all information shown herein as correct, and obligates him to any job expense, real or implied, arising due to any errors that may occur herein. In addition, all references to Kimley-Horn and Associates, Inc., including all professional seals, are to be removed if these contract drawings are to be used as shop drawings.

All guardrails shall be ADA compliant.

Governing code for design loads is the 2018 North Carolina State Building Code (IBC 2018 with North Carolina Amendments).

All connection hardware and fasteners shall be ASTM-A449 and hot-dip galvanized.

All wood making ground contact shall be Southern Yellow Pine (No. 2) Preservative Pressure Treated.

Contractor to provide geotechnical recommendations for total length of all wood piles. Geotechnical engineer shall be licensed in the State of North Carolina. Contractor's price shall be all encompassing to fully complete geotechnical testing, determine recommended pile length, and construct the observation deck with pile length incorporated.

SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall submit detailed product information to be approved by the Project Landscape Architect (prior to fabrication and installation) of each of the following:

- MoistureShield 'Vantage' Composite Decking, or approved equal.
- Pipe Picket Panel

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, or workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer's warranties.

WOOD BACKLESS OVERLOOK BENCH

PSP (Kimley-Horn)

DESCRIPTION

This item consists of one wood backless bench and the related material associated with the construction and installation of the bench at the natural surface overlook. All labor, material, equipment, excavation, delivery, related services, and supervision required for the installation of the wood backless overlook bench shall be included as part of the specification listed below. Refer to the Historic Yates Mill County Park *Construction Documents* for additional details. Construction and/or installation shall be in complete accordance with the *Construction Documents.* The cost to perform the work associated with the Wood Backless Overlook Bench shall be a lump sum value. The lump sum price will include all labor, equipment, rental fees, temporary field office setup, general conditions, fees, overhead, profit, and all other incidentals required to complete the full scope of work.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

The wood backless overlook bench shall be constructed of Southern Yellow Pine, pressure-treated boards and posts. All wood boards shall be two inches (2”) thick by six inches (6”) wide. The support beams shall be constructed from two inch (2”) thick by six inch (6”) wide boards notched as to be four inches (4”) wide at connection to face boards and six inches (6”) wide at wood support post. The wood bench shall be five feet (5’) wide and two feet (2’) tall.

All screws shall be one-quarter inch (1/4”) diameter by four inch (4”) long outdoor-rated, hot-dipped galvanized steel screws. Screws shall be black in color and embedded one-eight inch (1/8”) into boards.

The wood bench shall consist of three (3) seat boards spaced one-eight inch (1/8”) apart to allow water pass through. Each seat board shall be secured to each wood support beam with two (2) screws.

The wood bench shall consist of four (4) wood support beams total. Two (2) wood support beams shall be secured to each support post using two (2) one-half inch (1/2”) diameter by twelve-inch (12”) long bolts with hex head. All bolts shall be imbedded one-eight inch (1/8”) into wood support beams.

Wood face boards shall be secured on the front, back, and both sides of the bench seat. The face boards shall be secured to each support beam and each end face board with two (2) one-quarter inch (1/4” diameter by four inch (4”) long screw.

The wood bench shall consist of two (2) six-inch (6”) by six-inch (6”) wood support post. Each wood support post shall be embedded into a concrete footing. The wood support post shall be a minimum of six inches (6”) from all exposed edges of the concrete footing.

The concrete footing shall be constructed of 4,500 psi concrete @ 28 days and shall be set a minimum of 4” below finished grade. The top of each concrete footing shall slope away from the wood support post to ensure positive drainage. Each concrete footing shall be placed on top of six inches (6”) of aggregate base course compacted to 98% standard proctor.

DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored at a secure location in original undamaged packages and containers until ready for installation to protect against damage, weather, moisture, vandalism, and theft.

WARRANTY

The Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty against defects in materials, installation, or workmanship. This warranty period shall begin at substantial completion of the project and is in addition to any manufacturer’s warranties.